



Cayenne

Owner's Manual

WKD 948 021 11

03/10

Porsche, the Porsche Crest, Cayenne, PCCB, PCM, PSM, Tiptronic and Tequipment are registered trademarks and the distinctive shapes of Porsche automobiles are trademarks of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

All rights reserved.

Printed in Germany.

Orientation guides in the Owner's Manual

The orientation guides in the Owner's Manual are highlighted in yellow.

Overall Table of Contents

At the start of the Owner's Manual you will find an overview of the overall contents of the Owner's Manual.

Section Contents

There is a summary of topics with the corresponding page numbers at the beginning of each main chapter.

Index

There is a detailed, alphabetical index at the end of this Owner's Manual.

Cayenne S Hybrid

Information on the Cayenne S Hybrid can be found in the separate additional instructions. Pay particular attention to the warning and safety instructions.

Safety instructions in the Owner's Manual

For your own protection and longer service life of your car, please heed all operating instructions and special warnings. These special warnings contain important messages regarding your safety and/or the potential for damage to your Porsche. Ignoring them could result in serious mechanical failure, serious personal injury or death.

Various types of safety instructions are used in this Owner's Manual.

DANGER

Serious Injury or Death

Failure to observe safety instructions in the "Danger" category will result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Possible Serious Injury or Death

Failure to observe safety instructions in the "Warning" category could result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION

Possible Moderate or Minor Injury

Failure to observe safety instructions in the "Caution" category can result in moderate or minor injury.

NOTICE

Possible vehicle damage.

Failure to observe instructions in the "Notice" category could result in damage to the vehicle.



Information

Additional information, tips and instructions are indicated by the word "Information". Please read this information carefully and follow the instructions.

Dear Owner,

We would like to thank you for your purchase of a Porsche Cayenne. Judging by the car you have chosen, you are a motorist of a special breed, and you are probably no novice when it comes to automobiles.

Remember however, as with any vehicle, you should take time to familiarize yourself with your Porsche and its performance characteristics. Always drive within your own unique capabilities as a driver and your level of experience with your Porsche. Ensure that anyone else driving your Porsche does the same. To prevent or minimize injury, always use your safety belts. Never consume alcohol or drugs before or during the operation of your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual contains a host of useful information. Please take the time to read this manual before you drive your new Porsche. Become familiar with the operation of your Porsche car for maximum safety and operating pleasure. The better you know your Porsche, the more pleasure you will experience driving your new car.

Always keep your Owner's Manual in the car, and give it to the new owner if you ever sell your Porsche.

A separate Maintenance Booklet explains how you can keep your Porsche in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly.

A separate Warranty and Customer Information Booklet contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Porsche.

For U.S. only:

If you believe that your vehicle has a fault which could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Porsche Cars North America, Inc. (Porsche Cars N.A.).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety problem exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you and your dealer, or Porsche Cars N.A.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Your car has thousands of parts and components which have been designed and manufactured in accordance with Porsche's high standards of engineering quality and safety.

WARNING

Alteration or Misuse of Vehicle

Any alteration of the vehicle may negate or interfere with those safety features built into the vehicle. Modifications may be carried out on your vehicle only if approved by Porsche.

Your Porsche is intended to be used in a safe manner obeying the local laws and in the light of driving conditions faced by you, and in accordance with the instructions provided in this Owner's Manual.

- ▷ Do not misuse your Porsche by ignoring those laws and driving conditions, or by ignoring the instructions in this manual.
- ▷ Do not alter your Porsche. Any alteration could create dangerous conditions or defeat safety engineering features built into your car.

Regularly check your vehicle for signs of damage.

Damaged or missing aerodynamic components such as spoilers or underside panels affect the driving behavior and therefore must be replaced immediately.

Your car may have all or some of the components described in this manual.

Should you have difficulty understanding any of the explanations of features or equipment installed in your vehicle, contact your authorized Porsche dealer. He/She will be glad to assist you. Also check with your dealer on other available options or equipment.

Throughout this booklet, left is designated as the driver's side of the vehicle, and right as the passenger's side of the vehicle.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the information available at the time of printing.

It has always been Porsche's policy to continuously improve its products. Porsche, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specification, and to make additions or improvements in its product without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

We wish you many miles of safe and pleasurable driving in your Porsche.

Note to owners

In Canada, this manual is also available in French. To obtain a copy contact your dealer or write to:

Note aux propriétaires

Au Canada on peut se procurer un exemplaire de ce Manuel en français auprès du concessionnaire ou du:

Porsche Cars Canada, Ltd.
Automobiles Porsche Canada, LTEE

5925 Airport Road
Suite 420
Mississauga, Ontario
Canada, L4V 1W1

Telephone number for customer assistance:
1-800-PORSCHE / Option 3

Setting and operating vehicle components when driving

WARNING Operating Components While Driving

Setting or operating the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving could distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Operate the components while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only with the vehicle stationary.

Engine Exhaust

WARNING Engine Exhaust Inhalation

Engine exhaust is dangerous if inhaled. Engine exhaust fumes have many components which you can smell. They also contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is a colorless and odorless gas.

Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

- ▷ Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area.
It is not recommended to sit in your car for prolonged periods with the engine on and the car not moving.

WARNING California Proposition 65

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

WARNING Hot Exhaust Pipes

The exhaust pipe is hot when the vehicle is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- ▷ To prevent injury, make a point of noting where your vehicle's exhaust pipe is, avoid placing your legs near the exhaust pipe when loading and unloading cargo in the rear, and closely supervise children around the vehicle during time when the exhaust pipe could be hot.
A hot exhaust pipe can cause serious burns.

⚠ DANGER Portable Fuel Container Leaks

Portable fuel containers may leak, whether they are full or partially empty. Fuel leaking from a portable container carried in your vehicle could, in case of an accident, cause a fire or explosion.

- ▷ Never carry additional fuel in portable containers in your vehicle.

Vehicles with SportDesign package

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle due to lower ground clearance.

On vehicles with SportDesign package, front, rear, and side member trim are painted and located lower on the vehicle. Off-road driving can seriously damage these trim parts.

- ▷ When driving off-road, make sure these parts are not damaged.
 - ▷ Make sure there is sufficient clearance between obstacles and the underside of the vehicle.
 - ▷ Avoid driving through water.
 - ▷ Do not use side member trim as a running board.
-

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

- ▷ Please see the chapter "BRAKES" on page 155.

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (such as temperature and humidity) therefore might cause brake noises.

Wear on the different components and braking system, such as brake pads and brake disks, depends to a great extent on the individual driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road. The values communicated by Porsche are based on normal operation adapted to traffic. Wear increases considerably when the vehicle is driven on race tracks or through an aggressive driving style.

Please consult an authorized Porsche dealer about the current guidelines in effect before such use of your vehicle.

Dear Porsche Owner,

a lot has gone into the manufacture of your Porsche, including advanced engineering, rigid quality control and demanding inspections. These engineering and safety features will be enhanced by you...

the safe driver...

- who knows her/his car and all controls,
- who maintains the vehicle properly,
- who uses driving skills wisely and always drives within her/his own capabilities and the level of familiarity with the vehicle.

You will find helpful hints in this manual on how to perform most of the checks listed on the following pages. If in doubt, have these checks performed by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Before driving off...

Check the following items first

- ▷ Turn the engine off before you attempt any checks or repairs on the vehicle.
- ▷ Be sure the tires are inflated correctly. Check tires for damage and tire wear.
- ▷ See that wheel bolts are properly tightened and not loose or missing.
- ▷ Check engine oil level, add if necessary. Make it a habit to check the engine oil with every refueling.
- ▷ Check all fluid levels such as windshield washer and brake fluid levels.
- ▷ Be sure the vehicle battery is well charged and cranks the engine properly.
- ▷ Check all doors and lids for proper operation and latch them properly.
- ▷ Check and if necessary replace worn or cracked wiper blades.

- ▷ See that all windows are clear and unobstructed.
- ▷ Check air intake slots and area between engine compartment lid and windshield. Ensure that these areas are free of snow and ice, so the heater and the windshield wipers work properly.
- ▷ If a child will be riding in the vehicle, check child seat/child seat restraint system to ensure that restraints are properly adjusted.
- ▷ Check all exterior and interior lights for operation and that the lenses are clean.
- ▷ Check the headlights for proper aim, and if necessary, have them adjusted.
- ▷ Check under the vehicle for leaks.
- ▷ Be sure all luggage is stowed securely.

Emergency equipment

It is good practice to carry emergency equipment in your vehicle.

Some of the items you should have are: window scraper, snow brush, container or bag of sand or salt, emergency light, small shovel, first-aid kit, etc.

In the driver's seat...

- ▷ Check operation of the horn.
- ▷ Position seat for easy reach of foot pedals and controls. To reduce the possibility of injury from the airbag deployment, you should always sit back as far from the steering wheel as is practical, while still maintaining full vehicle control.
- ▷ Adjust the headrest so that the upper edge of the headrest is brought to eye level or higher.
- ▷ Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
- ▷ Buckle your safety belts.
- ▷ Check operation of the foot and electric parking brake.
- ▷ Check all warning and indicator lights with ignition on and engine not running.
- ▷ Start engine and check all warning displays for warning symbols.
- ▷ Never leave an idling car unattended.
- ▷ Lock doors from inside, especially with children in the car to prevent inadvertent opening of doors from inside or outside. Drive with doors locked.

On the road...

- ▷ Never drive after you have consumed alcohol or drugs.
- ▷ Always have your safety belt fastened.
- ▷ Always drive defensively. Expect the unexpected.
- ▷ Use signals to indicate turns and lane changes.
- ▷ Turn on headlights at dusk or when the driving conditions warrant it.
- ▷ Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, depending on traffic, road and weather conditions.
- ▷ Reduce speed at night and during inclement weather. Driving in wet weather requires caution and reduced speeds, particularly on roads with standing water, as the handling characteristics of the vehicle may be impaired due to hydroplaning of the tires.
- ▷ Always observe speed limits and obey road signs and traffic laws.
- ▷ When tired, get well off the road, stop and take a rest. Turn the engine off. Do not sit in the vehicle with engine idling. Please see the chapter "ENGINE EXHAUST" on page 2.
- ▷ When parked, always put the electric parking brake on **and** put the gearshift lever in neutral or the Tiptronic selector lever in position **P**. On hills also turn the front wheels toward the curb.

- ▷ When emergency repairs become necessary, move the vehicle well off the road. Turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel or other flammable material.
- ▷ Make it a habit to check the engine oil with every refueling.

Break in hints for the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers)

The following tips will be helpful in obtaining optimum performance from your new Porsche. Despite the most modern, high-precision manufacturing methods, the moving parts must still wear in with each other. This wearing-in occurs mainly in the first 2000 miles (3000 km).

Therefore:

- ▷ Preferably take longer trips.
- ▷ Avoid frequent cold starts with short-distance driving whenever possible.
- ▷ Avoid full throttle starts and abrupt stops.
- ▷ Do not exceed maximum engine speed of 4200 rpm (revolutions per minute).
- ▷ Do not run a cold engine at high rpm either in Neutral or in gear.
- ▷ Do not let the engine labor, especially when driving uphill. Shift to the next lower gear in time (use the most favorable rpm range).
- ▷ Never lug the engine in high gear at low speeds. This rule applies at all times, not just during the break-in period.
- ▷ Do not participate in motor racing events, sports driving schools, etc. during the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers).

There may be a slight stiffness in the steering, gear-shifting or other controls during the break-in period which will gradually disappear.

Break in brake pads and brake disks

New brake pads and disks have to be “broken in”, and therefore only attain optimal friction when the car has covered several hundred miles or km. The slightly reduced braking ability must be compensated for by pressing the brake pedal harder. This also applies whenever the brake pads and brake disks are replaced.

New tires

New tires do not have maximum traction. They tend to be slippery.

- ▷ Break in new tires by driving at moderate speeds during the first 60 to 120 miles (100 to 200 km). Longer braking distances must be anticipated.

Engine oil and fuel consumption

During the break-in period oil and fuel consumption may be higher than normal.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “ENGINE DATA” on page 308.

As always, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of oil, the speed at which the engine is operated, the climate and road conditions, as well as the amount of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant.

- ▷ Make a habit of checking engine oil with every refueling, add if necessary.

Table of Contents

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Overview Illustrations..... 9 | Automatic Anti-Dazzle Interior Mirror56 | Lights, Turn Signals and Windshield Wipers 90 |
| Driver's Cockpit 10 | Steering Wheel57 | Light Switch91 |
| Steering Wheel and Instrument Cluster 11 | Heated Steering Wheel57 | Automatic Driving Light Assistant91 |
| Dashboard12 | Steering Wheel Adjustment58 | Instrument Lighting93 |
| Front Center Console13 | Multi-Function Steering Wheel.....59 | Turn Signal/High Beam/Headlight Flasher |
| Overhead Operating Console14 | Sun Visors.....60 | Stalk94 |
| Rear15 | Make-up Mirror60 | Emergency Flasher94 |
| | Roll-Up Sunblinds, Rear Side Windows61 | Light Fault or Failure.....95 |
| Opening and Locking 16 | Air Conditioning, Parking Heater and Heated Rear Window 62 | Interior Lighting.....96 |
| Never invite car theft!.....17 | Brief Overview – | Brief Overview – Windshield Wipers98 |
| Notes on the Key and Central Locking System 18 | Front Control Panel63 | Windshield Wiper/Washer Stalk99 |
| Central Locking System19 | Brief Overview – | |
| Brief Overview – Opening and Locking From | Rear Control Panel (4-Zone Air-Conditioning) ...64 | Instrument Panel and Multi-Purpose Display..... 102 |
| Outside20 | Overview of Air Conditioning65 | Instrument Panel USA Models103 |
| Opening and Locking From Outside21 | General Functions66 | Instrument Panel Canada Models.....104 |
| Tailgate.....24 | Automatically Controlled Air-Conditioning.....70 | Compass on the Dashboard.....108 |
| Opening and Locking From Inside.....29 | Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating.....76 | Operating the Multi-Purpose Display on the |
| Opening and Closing the Engine | Windshield Heating.....76 | Instrument Panel108 |
| Compartment Lid.....31 | Parking Heater.....77 | Vehicle Information.....112 |
| Malfunctions When Opening and Locking32 | | Audio Menu116 |
| | Windows and Sliding Roofs 79 | Navigation Menu116 |
| Seats, Mirrors, Steering Wheel and Sun Protection 34 | Power Windows80 | Map Menu117 |
| Seat and Headrest Adjustment.....35 | Sliding/Lifting Roof83 | Phone Menu117 |
| Front Seats37 | Panorama Roof System85 | Trip Information118 |
| Storing Vehicle Settings38 | Emergency Operation of Sliding/Lifting Roof | Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM)119 |
| Easy Entry Function40 | or Panorama Roof System.....88 | Vehicle Settings on the Multi-Purpose Display 126 |
| Rear Seats40 | | Overview of Warning Messages 139 |
| Fire Extinguisher42 | | |
| Seat Heating and Ventilation43 | | |
| Safety Belts.....44 | | |
| Airbag Systems46 | | |
| Child Restraint Systems50 | | |
| LATCH Child Seat System.....53 | | |
| Door Mirrors.....54 | | |

Driving and Driving Safety 147

Ignition Lock, Steering Lock 148
Starting and Stopping the Engine 150
Auto Start Stop Function 152
Electric Parking Brake 154
Brakes 155
Cruise Control 158
Adaptive Cruise Control 160
Lane Change Assist (LCA) 170
Car Audio Operation/Tips 176
Porsche Communication Management (PCM) 178
USB/iPod® and AUX 178
Voice Control 179
Manual Transmission, Clutch 179
Tiptronic S 180
Selector-Lever Positions 181
Driving Programs for On-Road and Off-Road
Driving 184
Transmission and Chassis Control Systems .. 188
Air Suspension with Leveling System and
Height Adjustment 195
Porsche Active Suspension Management
(PASM) 197
Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC) 198
Off-Road Driving 198
Driving Systems for Off-Road Driving 199

**Storage, Luggage Compartment and Roof
Transport System 203**

Loadspace 204
Cargo Management System 205
Luggage Compartment Cover 208
Luggage Safety Net 209
Ski Bag 211
Roof Transport System 212
Storage 215
Cupholder 216
Front Ashtray/Storage Compartment 217
Rear Ashtray 218
Cigarette Lighter 218

Trailer Hitch 219

Trailer Coupling 220
Loading Information 221

Parking 225

ParkAssist 226
Rearview Camera 228
Swivelling Down Mirror Glass as Parking Aid .. 229
Garage Door Opener 229

Alarm System and Theft Protection .. 233

Alarm System and Passenger Compartment
Monitoring 234
Immobilizer 237
Steering Column Lock 237
Theft Protection 237

Maintenance and Car Care 238

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working
on your vehicle 239
Engine Oil 241
Checking Engine Oil Level 242
Topping Up Engine Oil 242
Checking Coolant Level and Adding Coolant . 244
Brake Fluid 245
Washer Fluid 246
Power Steering 247
Changing Air Cleaner 248
Changing Particle Filter 248
Wiper Blades 248
Emission Control System 249
How Emission Control Works 249
Fuel Economy 250
Operating Your Porsche in other Countries... 251
Fuel 251
Fuel Can 253
Fuel Recommendations 254
Fuel Evaporation Control 254
Car Care Instructions 255

Minor Repairs261

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working
on your vehicle 262
Warning triangle..... 263
First aid kit..... 264
Tool kit 264
Tires and Wheels 265
Jack 274
Spacers 274
Wheel Bolts 275
Changing Wheels 275
Fixing a Flat Tire 276
Inflating Tires..... 285
Electrical System..... 286
Battery..... 290
External Power Supply, Emergency Starting
with Jumper Cables..... 292
Changing the Remote Control Battery..... 294
Replacing Bulbs 294
Headlight Adjustment 301
Towing..... 302

Tire Pressure and Technical Data 306

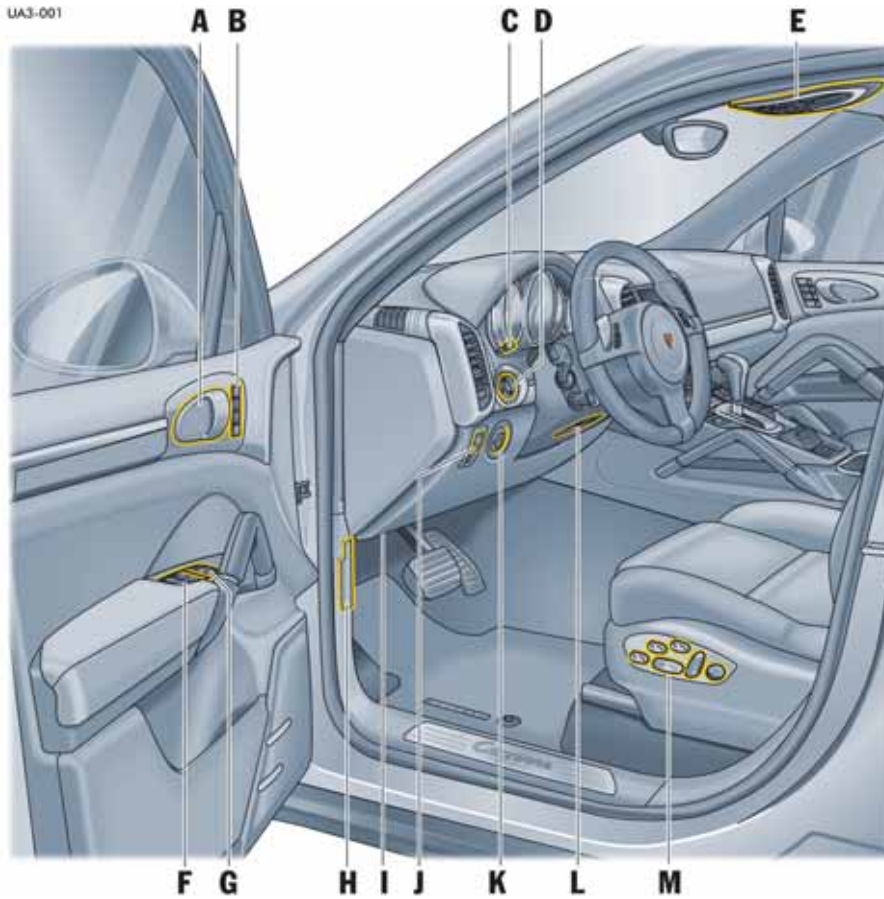
Vehicle Identification Data 307
Engine Data..... 308
Wheels, Tires..... 309
Tire Pressure for Cold Tires 68 °F (20 °C) 310
Weights..... 312
Filling Capacities 313
Driving Performance 314
Dimensions 314

Index..... 316

Overview Illustrations

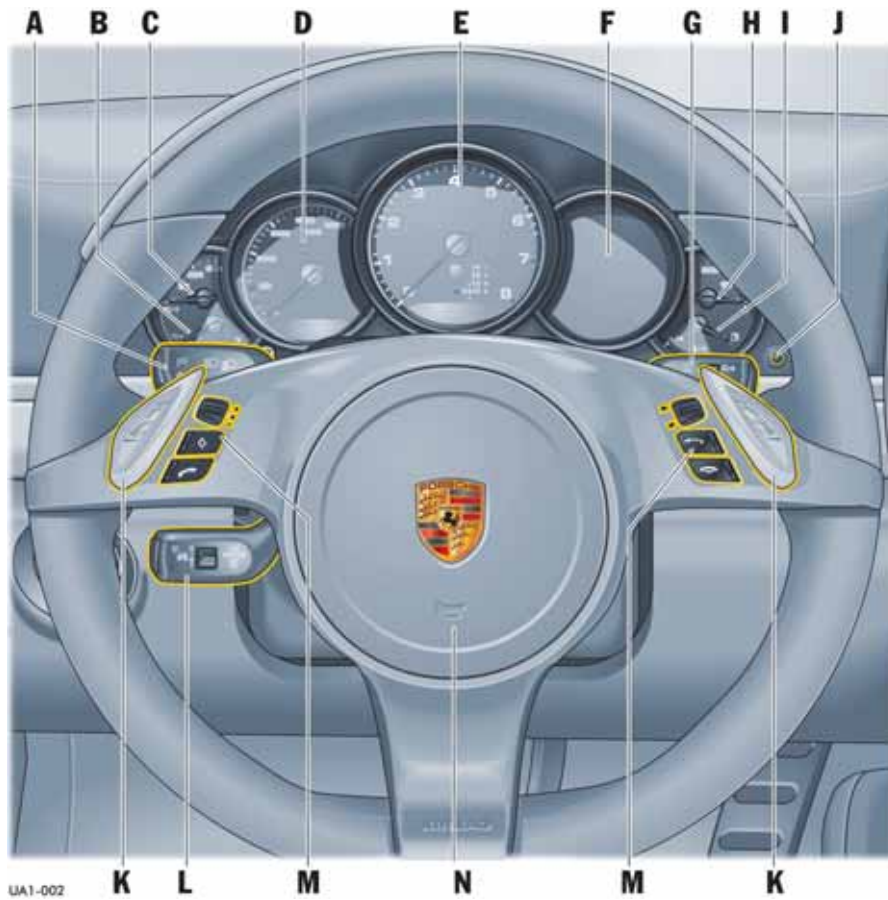
| | |
|--|----|
| Driver's Cockpit | 10 |
| Steering Wheel and Instrument Cluster..... | 11 |
| Dashboard..... | 12 |
| Front Center Console | 13 |
| Overhead Operating Console..... | 14 |
| Rear..... | 15 |

UA3-001



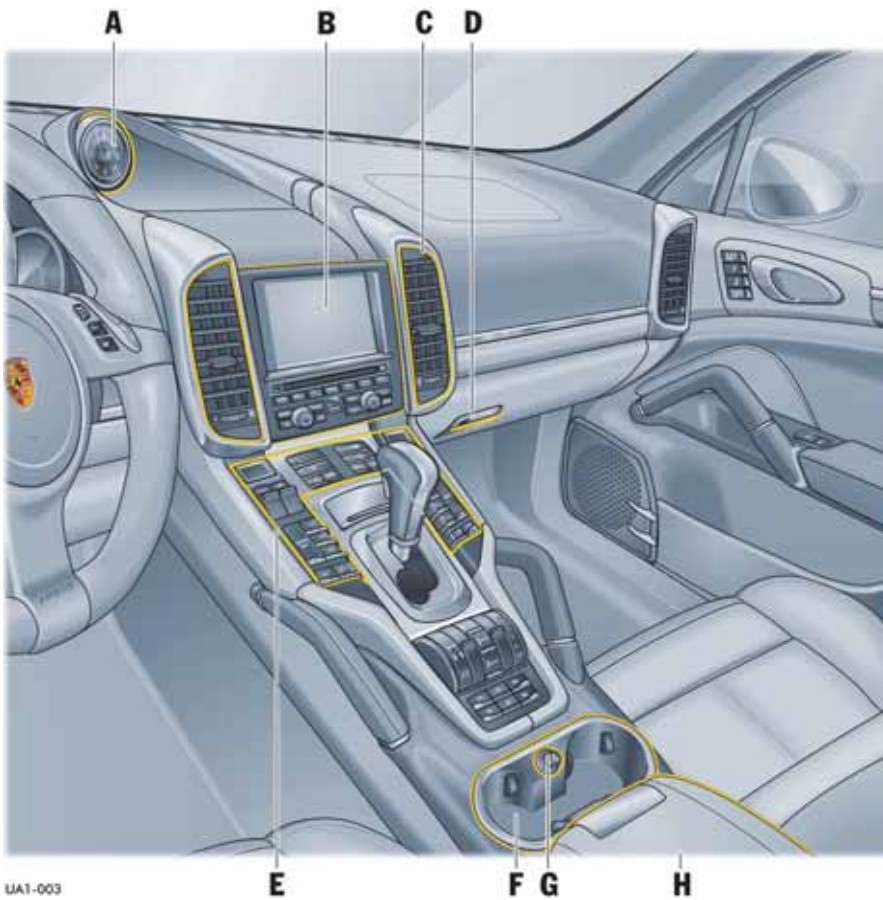
Driver's Cockpit

- A** Inner door handle
See page 30.
- B** Vehicle setting memory buttons
See page 38.
- C** Reset button for trip counter display/
Dimming of instrument illumination
See page 106.
- D** Ignition lock/steering lock
See page 148.
- E** Overhead operating console
See page 14.
- F** Power windows
See page 80.
- G** Door mirror adjustment
See page 55.
- H** Engine compartment lid release
See page 31.
- I** Diagnostic socket (OBD)
- J** Electric parking brake
See page 154.
- K** Light switch
See page 91.
- L** Steering wheel adjustment
See page 58.
- M** Seat adjustment
See page 37.



Steering Wheel and Instrument Cluster

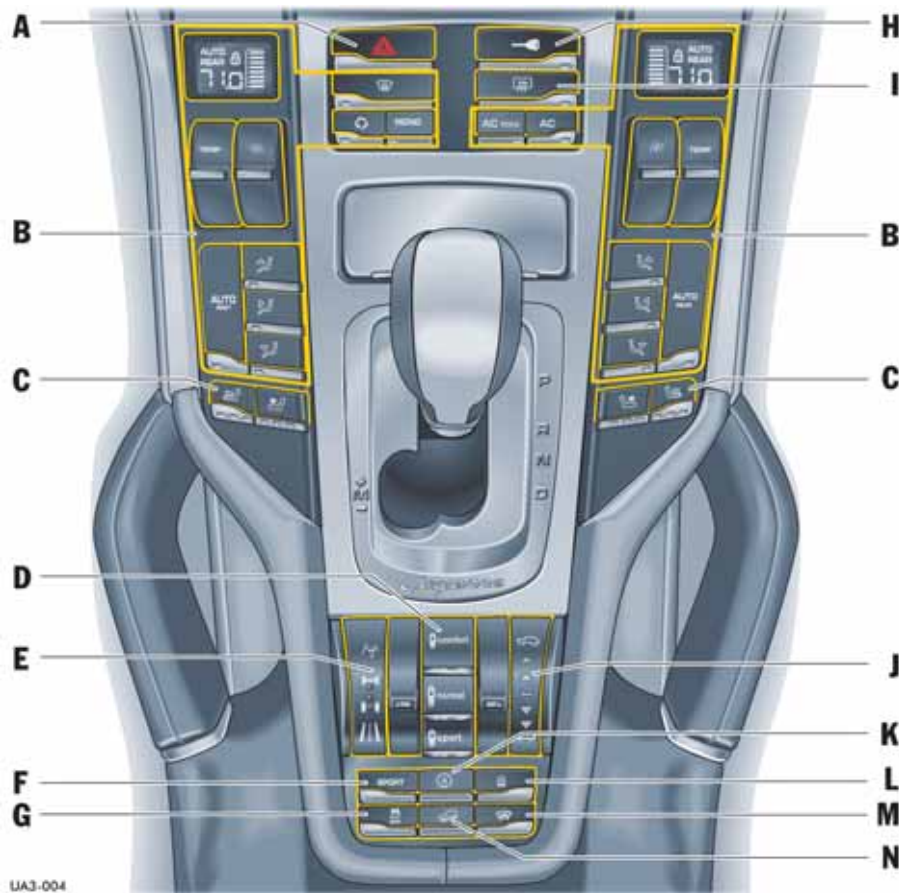
- A** Turn signals
See page 94.
- B** Engine oil pressure gauge
See page 106.
- C** Engine oil temperature gauge
See page 105.
- D** Speedometer
See page 105.
- E** Tachometer
See page 105.
- F** Multi-purpose display
See page 108.
- G** Windshield wipers
See page 99.
- H** Coolant temperature gauge
See page 105.
- I** Fuel gauge
See page 107.
- J** Interior temperature sensor for air conditioning
See page 65.
- K** Tiptronic shift buttons
See page 180.
- L** Adaptive cruise control
See page 160.
- M** Telephone controls,
multi-purpose display
See page 109.
- N** Horn
See page 57.



UA1-003

Dashboard

- A** Compass
See page 108.
- B** Porsche Communication Management (PCM)
See page 178.
- C** Air vents
See page 75.
- D** Glove box
See page 215.
- E** Front center console
See page 13.
- F** Front cupholder
See page 216.
- G** Cigarette lighter
See page 218.
- H** Armrest, storage compartment
See page 216.



Front Center Console

- A** Emergency flasher
See page 94.
- B** Air conditioning, left/right
See page 65.
- C** Seat heating/seat ventilation, left/right
See page 43.
- D** Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) chassis setup
See page 197.
- E** Driving programs, differential locks
See page 184.
- F** Sport mode
See page 186.
- G** Porsche Stability Management (PSM)
See page 189.
- H** Central locking
See page 29.
- I** Heated rear window/door mirror heating
See page 76.
- J** Height adjustment, air suspension
See page 195.
- K** Auto Start Stop function
See page 152.
- L** Parking heater
See page 77.
- M** Windshield heating
See page 76.
- N** Porsche Hill Control (PHC)
See page 193.



Overhead Operating Console

- A** Rear interior lighting
See page 96.
- B** Dimming ambient lighting
See page 97.
- C** ParkAssist off button
See page 226.
- D** Passenger compartment monitoring
See page 234.
- E** Sliding/lifting roof
See page 83.
Panorama roof system
See page 85.
- F** Roll-up sunblind for Panorama roof system
See page 87.
- G** Hands-free microphone
- H** Reading light, left/right
See page 96.
- I** Orientation lighting
See page 97.
- J** Front interior lighting
See page 96.
- K** Interior lighting when door/tailgate is open
See page 97.
- L** "Passenger Airbag Off" warning light
See page 49.
- M** Garage door opener/HomeLink®
See page 229.

UA1-006



Rear

- A** Air vents
See page 75.
- B** Air conditioning
See page 65.
- C** Seat heating/seat ventilation
See page 43.
Central locking
See page 29.
- D** Reading light
See page 96.
- E** Inner door handle
See page 30.
- F** Rear ashtray
See page 218.
- G** Map pocket
- H** Rear cigarette lighter
See page 218.
- I** Rear seat: Fore-and-aft adjustment
See page 40.
- J** Rear seat: Backrest angle adjustment
See page 41.

Opening and Locking

| | |
|--|----|
| Never invite car theft! | 17 |
| Notes on the Key and Central Locking System | 18 |
| Central Locking System | 19 |
| Brief Overview – Opening and Locking From | |
| Outside | 20 |
| Opening and Locking From Outside | 21 |
| Tailgate..... | 24 |
| Opening and Locking From Inside..... | 29 |
| Opening and Closing the Engine | |
| Compartment Lid | 31 |
| Malfunctions When Opening and Locking | 32 |

Never invite car theft!

An unlocked car with the key in the ignition lock invites car theft.

A steering wheel lock and a **gong alarm** are standard equipment in your Porsche. The gong alarm will sound if you open the driver's door while the key is still in the ignition lock. It is your reminder to pull the key out of the ignition lock and to lock the doors.

WARNING

Unattended Vehicle

Never leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock, especially if children and/or pets are left unattended in the vehicle. They can operate power windows and other controls. If the engine is left running, they may accidentally engage the shift lever. Serious personal injury or death could result from loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Always remove the ignition key.
 - ▷ Always set the electric parking brake.
 - ▷ Lock the doors with the key or with the remote control.
-

WARNING

Steering Column Lockup

The steering column will lock when you remove the key while you are driving or as the car is rolling to a stop. You will not be able to steer the car. Serious personal injury or death could result from loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Never remove the key from the steering lock while you are driving.
-

To protect your vehicle and your possessions from theft, you should always proceed as follows when leaving your vehicle:

- ▷ Apply the electric parking brake.
- ▷ Close windows.
- ▷ Close sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system.
- ▷ Remove ignition key (switch ignition off in vehicles that have Porsche Entry & Drive).
- ▷ Remove valuables (e.g. car documents, radio control module, cell phones, house keys) from the car.
- ▷ Lock the glove compartment.
- ▷ Close storage trays.
- ▷ Lock doors.
- ▷ Cover luggage compartment with the luggage compartment cover.
- ▷ Close the tailgate.

Notes on the Key and Central Locking System

Key

You are provided with two car keys with integrated emergency key. These keys operate all the locks on your vehicle.

- ▷ Be careful with your car keys: do not part with them except under exceptional circumstances.
- ▷ Remove and take the ignition key with you, even if leaving the vehicle only briefly. Do not leave the ignition key in the vehicle.
- ▷ Inform your insurance company of any loss or theft of car keys or if extra or replacement keys have been cut.
- ▷ Third parties can still operate the mechanical locks with a lost key.

Information

Different vehicle settings are stored on the respective key when the vehicle is locked, provided the vehicle is fitted with the relevant equipment.

For information on storing vehicle settings on the key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “STORING VEHICLE SETTINGS” on page 38.

Emergency operation

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY OPERATION – UNLOCKING THE IGNITION KEY” on page 149.

Replacement keys

Car keys can only be ordered through an authorized Porsche dealer. Sometimes, this may take a long time.

You should therefore always keep a spare key on your person. Keep it in a safe place, but under no circumstances in or on the vehicle.

The key codes of new keys have to be “reported” to the vehicle control module by an authorized Porsche dealer. All keys belonging to the vehicle must also be reported again.

Information

Third parties can continue to operate the mechanical locks using the lost key.



UMA3 343

Panic button

In dangerous situations or when one's own safety is threatened, it is possible to draw attention to the situation by triggering an alarm.

To trigger an alarm

- ▷ Press button.
The horn sounds and the emergency flasher flashes.

To stop the alarm

- ▷ Press button again.
The horn becomes silent and the emergency flasher goes out.

UA3 292



Emergency key

Removing emergency key

1. Push the release button to the side.
2. Pull out the key.

Inserting emergency key

- ▷ Slide in the key until the release button audibly engages.

Central Locking System

USA: KR55WK50138

Canada: 7812D-5WK50138

This device complies with:
Part 15 of the FCC Rules
RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.



Information

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Such modification could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Porsche could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Your vehicle is equipped with a central locking system. The following are unlocked or locked together:

- Doors
- Tailgate
- Filler flap

The central locking system is always activated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

On the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel, you can set different variants for locking and unlocking the doors and tailgate. You can open all doors irrespective of the setting made.

The vehicle cannot be locked if the driver's door is not completely closed.

If one of the following components is not completely closed when you try to lock the vehicle the door/lid is not locked:

- vehicle doors
- tailgate
- engine compartment lid

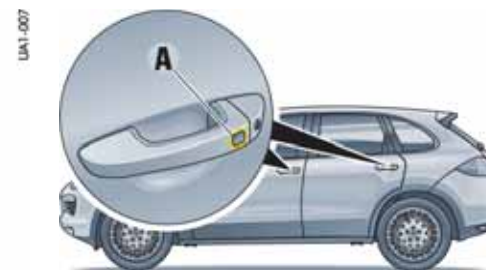
The indication by the emergency flasher and by the acoustic signal will be provided after all doors, the tailgate and the engine compartment lid are closed.

Brief Overview – Opening and Locking From Outside





The Porsche Entry & Drive option can be recognized by the buttons **A** in the door handles. This brief overview does not replace the information provided under “Opening and Locking From Outside”. Warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Key



Porsche Entry & Drive

| What do I want to do? | What do I have to do? | What happens? |
|---|---|---|
| Unlocking | Using the key: Press button  on the key once . | The emergency flasher flashes once. The driver's doors can be opened. |
| | Press button  on the key twice . | All vehicle doors and the tailgate can be opened. |
| Locking | With Porsche Entry & Drive: Grip the door handle fully. | The doors and the tailgate can be opened. |
| | Using the key: Press button  on the key. | The emergency flasher flashes twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice. The doors are locked. |
| Locking if persons/animals are remaining in vehicle (switching off passenger compartment monitoring and the inclination sensor of the alarm system) | With Porsche Entry & Drive: Press button A on the door handle. | |
| Locking if persons/animals are remaining in vehicle (switching off passenger compartment monitoring and the inclination sensor of the alarm system) | Please see the chapter “TEMPORARILY DEACTIVATING PASSENGER COMPARTMENT MONITORING SYSTEM AND INCLINATION SENSOR” on page 235. | |
| Switching off alarm | Press button  on the key. | |

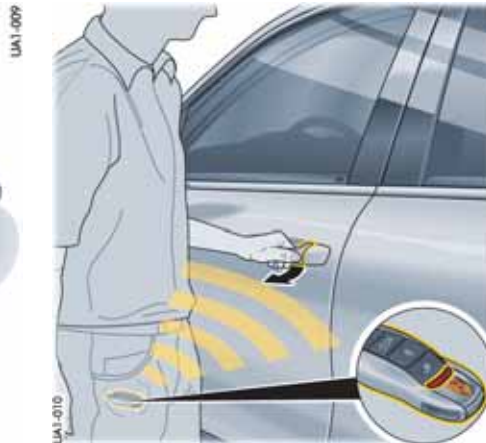


Opening and Locking From Outside

Depending on your vehicle equipment, you can unlock and lock the vehicle either with the car key or without a key by means of Porsche Entry & Drive.

With the key

Use the buttons on the key to unlock and lock the vehicle.



With Porsche Entry & Drive

On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, you can unlock, lock and start the vehicle without using the key. You simply have to carry the key with you, e.g. in your pocket.

- ▷ Do not expose the car key to a high level of electromagnetic radiation. This could adversely affect Porsche Entry & Drive.

Information

The factory settings of the vehicle are described in this section.

In the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel, you can change the settings and store them on the respective key for vehicles with comfort memory.


For information on modifying the opening and locking settings:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING SETTINGS" on page 134.



Unlocking and opening doors

Unlocking driver's door with the key

1. Press button  **once**.
The emergency flasher flashes once.
The driver's door is unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.

Unlocking all vehicle doors with the key

1. Press button  **twice**.
The emergency flasher flashes once.
The doors are unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.



Unlocking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

Either door can be unlocked if you position yourself on the side of the vehicle (driver's side, passenger's side) that you wish to open together with the key.

1. Grip the door handle fully.
The emergency flasher flashes once.
The doors are unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.

Information

The vehicle is locked automatically after 30 seconds if none of the doors or the tailgate is opened. The alarm system is not activated.

If the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor have been switched off (restricted anti-theft protection), this also remains the case after automatic relocking.

As a result, the doors can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.

- ▷ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

When locked again, the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor are activated once more.

Switching off operational readiness (for vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive)



Operational readiness of Porsche Entry & Drive is switched off after 96 hours for the driver's door and after 36 hours for the passenger doors if the vehicle is not unlocked within this time.

In this case:

1. Pull the door handle **once** to activate the system again.
2. Pull the door handle **again** to open the door.

Locking doors

Locking with the key

1. Close the door.
2. Press button  once.
The emergency flasher flashes twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice.
The doors cannot be opened from outside.
or
If persons or animals are remaining in the vehicle, press button  twice.
The emergency flasher flashes twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice.
The doors can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.
3. Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Information

- ▷ The vehicle cannot be locked if the driver's door is not completely closed.
The emergency flasher indicates that the vehicle has been locked successfully only when all the doors, the engine compartment lid and the tailgate are closed.



Locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

You must carry the key with you.

1. Close the door.
2. Briefly press the Porsche Entry & Drive locking button **A** on the door handle.
The emergency flasher flashes twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice.
The doors cannot be opened from outside.
or
If persons or animals are remaining in the vehicle, press the Porsche Entry & Drive locking button **A** on the door handle twice.
The emergency flasher flashes twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice.
The doors can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.
3. Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Information

- ▷ The vehicle cannot be locked if any of the doors or the tailgate are not completely closed.
A warning signal sounds in the passenger compartment and a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display.
- ▷ The key must be outside the vehicle when locking the vehicle doors, otherwise the vehicle doors cannot be locked.
- ▷ If the key is out of range, the vehicle doors can no longer be opened after they are locked.

Automatic door locking and automatic door unlocking

 **WARNING** Emergency Auto Lock Override

In an emergency situation where you need to exit the car through an automatically locked door, remember the following procedure to open the door.

- ▷ Unlock the doors by pressing the central locking button.
or
- ▷ Pull the inner door handle on the front door once or on the rear door twice to open the door.

In the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel, you have the option of selecting diverse variants of automatic door locking and automatic door unlocking.

For information on modifying the opening and locking settings:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING SETTINGS" on page 134.

Tailgate

WARNING Exhaust Gas Inhalation

Exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment when the tailgate is open and render the occupants unconscious if longterm exposure occurs, resulting in an accident. In a stopped vehicle, carbon monoxide can also lead to death.

- ▷ Always keep the tailgate closed when the engine is running.
- ▷ Always keep the tailgate closed while driving.


Information

- When the tailgate is unlocked, the vehicle doors are also unlocked.
- The vehicle is locked again automatically after 30 seconds if none of the vehicle doors or the tailgate is opened.
- For information on the powerlift tailgate: Please see the chapter “POWERLIFT TAILGATE” on page 25.



Vehicles without powerlift tailgate

Unlocking with the key

1. Press button .
2. Press the unlocking handle (**arrow**) on the tailgate and open the tailgate.

Unlocking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

Information

Risk of being locked out of vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.

- ▷ Do not leave the key in the vehicle if the vehicle is locked and the vehicle is accessed via the tailgate. The vehicle is automatically locked when the tailgate is closed. If the key is left in the vehicle, the emergency flasher flashes once **and** a horn signal sounds. Within approx. 30 seconds, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the unlocking handle (**arrow**). After 30 seconds have elapsed, the vehicle can be unlocked again only with the second key.

If you are in the rear area of the vehicle with the key and press the unlocking handle, the tailgate is unlocked.

- ▷ Press the unlocking handle (**arrow**) on the tailgate and open the tailgate.



Locking the tailgate

1. Pull down the tailgate with the handle (**arrow**) and allow it to fall into the lock.
2. Briefly press button  on the key once. The vehicle is locked.

Information

On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, the tailgate can no longer be opened when the car key is out of range.

Powerlift tailgate

The tailgate has an electric drive mechanism (powerlift and closing aid).

Opening and closing tailgate automatically

WARNING Exhaust Gas Inhalation

Exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment when the tailgate is open and render the occupants unconscious if longterm exposure occurs, resulting in an accident. In a stopped vehicle, carbon monoxide can also lead to death.

- ▷ Always keep the tailgate closed when the engine is running.
- ▷ Always keep the tailgate closed while driving.

WARNING Uncontrolled Tailgate Use

Body parts could become trapped or crushed between the closing tailgate and fixed parts of the vehicle.

- ▷ Do not leave children in the car unattended.
- ▷ Open or close the tailgate only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Open or close the tailgate only when there are no persons, animals or objects within its movement range.
- ▷ Always observe the opening and closing operation so that movement can be stopped at any time in the event of danger.

NOTICE

Risk of damage if the tailgate is automatically opened or closed in an uncontrolled way!

- ▷ Do not leave children in the car unattended.
- ▷ Open or close the tailgate only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Make sure there is sufficient clearance behind and above the vehicle (e.g. roof transport systems, garage ceiling).
- ▷ Remove rear rack systems before opening the tailgate automatically.
- ▷ Always observe the opening and closing operation so that movement can be stopped at any time in the event of danger.

For information on interrupting the opening and closing operation:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "INTERRUPTING THE OPENING/CLOSING OPERATION IN THE EVENT OF DANGER" on page 28.

Acoustic indication during opening/closing of the tailgate

Opening and closing of the tailgate are indicated by warning tones.

You can have the warning tones activated/deactivated at your authorized Porsche dealer.



Opening tailgate automatically


There are **three** ways of opening the tailgate:

Variant 1

- ▷ Use the unlocking handle (**arrow**) on the tailgate. The vehicle must be unlocked for this. The vehicle need not be unlocked on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive. You simply have to carry the car key with you, e.g. in your pocket.



Variant 2


- ▷ When the ignition is switched off, press button  on the key for approximately 1 second. If the vehicle is locked, either the driver's door or the entire vehicle will be unlocked, depending on the settings on the multi-purpose display.

For information on locking and unlocking settings on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING SETTINGS" on page 134.

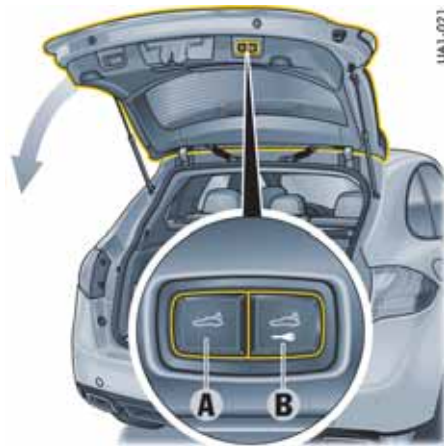


Variant 3

- ▷ With the ignition switched on, press and hold button  in the driver's door until the tailgate has opened fully. Opening is interrupted if the button is released prematurely.

Information

The tailgate can be opened only with the release button on the tailgate when the vehicle is pulling a trailer.



UA1-021

A - Closing the powerlift tailgate without Porsche Entry & Drive

A and B - Closing and locking the powerlift tailgate with Porsche Entry & Drive

Closing tailgate automatically

⚠ WARNING

Closing Tailgate

The tailgate closes automatically and is pulled into the lock and locked. Body parts could become trapped or crushed between the closing tailgate and fixed parts of the vehicle.

- ▷ Make sure that your fingers are not under the tailgate.
- ▷ Keep foreign objects or limbs away from moving parts (lock striker) of the power closing mechanism.
- ▷ Children must be kept away from the tailgate when closing. Children could be killed or severely injured by such a closing.

- ▷ Make sure that the load is not in the area of the tailgate when the tailgate is closed, otherwise the closing operation will be interrupted after contact with the load and the tailgate will open again.

1. Press button **A** in the trim panel on the tailgate. The tailgate is closed.
2. Briefly press button **B** on the key once. The vehicle is locked.

Closing the tailgate automatically and locking with Porsche Entry & Drive.

- ▷ Press button **B** in the trim panel on the tailgate. The tailgate is closed and the vehicle is locked.

In order to close and then lock the tailgate on the vehicle automatically, the key must be located:

- in the rear area **and**
- outside the vehicle.

A warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if these conditions have not been met.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

i Information

On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, the tailgate can no longer be opened when the car key with remote control is out of range.

i Information

Risk of being locked out of vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.



- ▷ Do not leave the key in the vehicle. If locking button **B** is pressed after the tailgate has closed, the vehicle is locked automatically. If the key is left in the vehicle, the emergency flasher flashes once **and** a horn signal sounds. Within approximately 30 seconds, the tailgate can be opened again. After 30 seconds have elapsed, the vehicle can be unlocked again only with the second key.



UA1-018

Interrupting the opening/closing operation in the event of danger

The opening or closing operation is interrupted immediately if one of the following buttons is operated:



- ▷ Press button  on the key
- or**
- Release button  in the driver's door
- or**
- Briefly press button **A** or **B** in the trim panel on the tailgate
- or**
- Briefly press the release button on the tailgate.

Automatic operation can be continued again at any time. To do this, press the corresponding button.

Detection of obstacles during opening

The tailgate will stop moving and close slightly if opening is blocked by an obstacle. A warning signal then sounds.

The opening operation can continue once the obstacle is removed and after one of the following buttons is operated:

- ▷ Press button  on the key
- or**
- Press button  in the driver's door
- or**
- Press the release button on the tailgate.

Detection of obstacles during closing

WARNING Closing Tailgate

The tailgate closes automatically and is pulled into the lock and locked. Body parts could become trapped or crushed between the closing tailgate and fixed parts of the vehicle.

- ▷ Despite the presence of this detection system, you are still responsible for keeping yourself and others entirely out of the way of the tailgate as it is closing.

The closing operation is interrupted if closing of the tailgate is blocked by an obstacle.

A warning signal sounds and the tailgate opens again slightly.

When the obstacle has been removed, the tailgate can be closed by pressing the button in the trim panel on the tailgate or close it slowly by hand.

Automatic stop in the event of unintentional tailgate movement


If the tailgate is moved too abruptly or lowers unaided immediately after opening, e.g. due to the weight of snow, an electrical mechanism brakes the tailgate and a series of brief warning signals sounds until the tailgate stops moving.

- ▷ Bring the tailgate to rest for approx. 1 second. The braking function is deactivated.

Adjusting the opening height of the tailgate

The opening height of the tailgate can be individually adjusted so that the tailgate does not hit the garage ceiling, for example.

On vehicles with level control, the vehicle height changes according to the level control setting.

- ▷ Always adjust the tailgate on vehicles with level control with the vehicle at the highest level setting so that the tailgate cannot accidentally hit the garage ceiling, for example.
1. Stand behind the vehicle and open the tailgate.
 2. Press button  on the key to stop the automatic opening operation at around 2/3 of the opening height.
 3. Now move the tailgate up by hand until the desired opening height is reached. Make sure that there is a sufficient minimum clearance from any obstacle.
 4. Press button **A** in the trim panel on the tailgate for approximately 3 seconds. An acknowledgement signal sounds. The opening height of the tailgate has now been programmed. The tailgate can now be closed by briefly pressing the button.

This setting cannot be deleted. If a different setting is required, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Malfunctions of the tailgate drive

The automatic function is not active if the vehicle battery voltage is too low.

If a button is pressed, the tailgate lock is unlocked and three brief warning signals sound. The tailgate can now be opened by hand.

- ▷ Charge the vehicle battery.

Emergency operation of tailgate

If the automatic opening or closing operation is interrupted by a fault:

- ▷ Slowly open or close the tailgate by hand.

Overload protection

If overloading of the tailgate drive is detected, three brief warning signals sound.

The tailgate cannot be operated automatically for approx. 30 seconds.

Opening and Locking From Inside

The factory settings of the vehicle are described in this section.

In the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel, you can change the settings and store them on the respective key for vehicles with comfort memory.

For information on modifying the opening and locking settings:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING SETTINGS" on page 134.



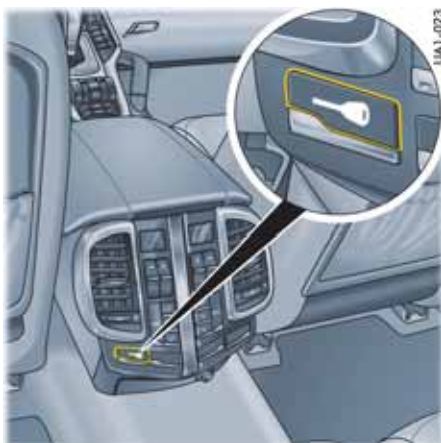
Front central locking button

🔑 Locking doors

- ▷ Press the front or rear central locking button. When the ignition is switched on, the indicator light in the button lights up.

All vehicle doors will be locked.

The doors can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.



Rear central locking button

Automatic with Auto Lock

If this function is activated, the vehicle is locked automatically when a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded.

For information on modifying the opening and locking settings:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING SETTINGS" on page 134.

Unlocking doors

- ▷ Press the front or rear central locking button. The indicator light on the button goes out. **All** vehicle doors will be unlocked.

Automatic with Auto Unlock

The vehicle is automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed.

Information

If the vehicle was locked using the car key or the emergency key, it cannot be unlocked with the central locking button.



Opening doors

Opening unlocked doors

- ▷ Pull inner door handle (**arrow**) once.

Opening locked doors

- ▷ Pull once on the front inner door handle (**arrow**) or pull twice on the rear inner door handle.

Securing rear doors

You can prevent passengers from accidentally pulling the inner door handle and opening the rear doors from inside.



Activating and deactivating child lock

The child locks are fitted in the lock area of the rear doors.

The doors cannot be opened from inside when the child locks are on.

- ▷ To engage: Turn the child lock in direction of travel using the emergency key.
- ▷ To disengage: Turn the child lock away from the direction of travel using the emergency key.

For information on the emergency key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY KEY" on page 19.

Opening and Closing the Engine Compartment Lid

Opening



DANGER

Unsecured Engine Compartment Lid

If the engine compartment lid is not secured properly, it could fly up, blocking your vision and causing loss of control.

- ▷ Should you notice at any time while driving that one of the lids is not secured properly, please stop immediately in a suitable place and close it.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to engine compartment lid or windshield wipers.

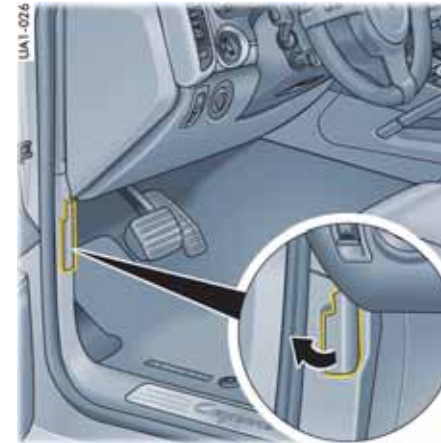
If the windshield wipers are pulled forward when you open the engine compartment lid, the wipers or the engine compartment lid could be damaged.

- ▷ Make sure that the windshield wipers are not pulled forward when opening the engine compartment lid.
- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers before opening the engine compartment lid (wiper switch in position **O**). If the wiper arms are not in their end position, they will automatically move to this position when the engine compartment lid is opened, even if the ignition is switched off.

The wiper arms remain at this position until the lid is closed and the wiper system is switched off and then on again.

For information on windshield wipers:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "FRONT WIPER AND HEADLIGHT WASHER SYSTEM" on page 99.



1. Open the driver's door.
2. Pull the release lever (**arrow**).
The engine compartment lid is now unlocked.

UA1-027



3. Actuate the unlocking handle (arrow).
4. Open the engine compartment fully.

Closing

1. Lower lid and let it fall into the lock. If necessary, push the lid closed with the palm of your hand in the area of the lock.
2. Check that the lid has engaged correctly in the lock.

When the vehicle is in motion, a message will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the lid is not closed properly.

Malfunctions When Opening and Locking

Emergency operation of tailgate

If the tailgate cannot be opened with the car key (e.g. if the remote control battery is dead), the emergency operation must be performed:


1. Unlock and open the driver's door with the emergency key.
2. Switch on the ignition **within 10 seconds** to prevent the alarm system from triggering.
3. Press the central locking button on the front or rear center console.
The tailgate is now unlocked and can be opened with the unlocking handle.

For information on the emergency key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY KEY" on page 19.

Only one door is unlocked

On the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel, you can set different variants for locking and unlocking the doors and tailgate. You can open all doors irrespective of the selected setting.

- ▷ Press button  on the key twice within 2 seconds.

UA1-029



The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked

The remote control of the key may

- not function correctly due to radio waves (also radio contact between remote control and vehicle in the case of Porsche Entry & Drive),
- fail due to a fault,
- fail due to a flat key battery.

The vehicle cannot be locked

This is recognizable by the fact that the emergency flasher doesn't flash and there is no locking noise.

Lock the vehicle with the emergency key in the door lock:

1. Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and remove the cover of the lock.
2. Lock the driver's door with the emergency key in the door lock.

For information on the emergency key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY KEY” on page 19.

If the central locking system is defective, operating the lock cylinder in the driver’s door will lock all functioning locking elements of the central locking system.

For information on locking the doors by means of the emergency operation:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “NOT ALL VEHICLE DOORS ARE LOCKED” on page 33.
- ▷ Have faults in the central locking system repaired at an authorized Porsche dealer.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked

Unlock the driver’s door with the emergency key in the door lock:

1. Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and remove the cover of the lock.
2. Unlock and open the driver’s door with the emergency key.
3. Switch on the ignition **within 10 seconds** to prevent the alarm system from triggering.

For information on the emergency key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY KEY” on page 19.



Not all vehicle doors are locked

The central locking system has failed. The doors must be locked using the emergency locking procedure.

1. Open the passenger’s door.
2. Turn the lock outward using the emergency key.
3. Repeat procedure at the rear doors.
4. Close all doors.



5. Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and remove the cover of the lock.
6. Lock the driver’s door with the emergency key in the door lock.

The doors can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

For information on the emergency key:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY KEY” on page 19.

Seats, Mirrors, Steering Wheel and Sun Protection

| | |
|--|----|
| Seat and Headrest Adjustment..... | 35 |
| Front Seats | 37 |
| Storing Vehicle Settings | 38 |
| Easy Entry Function | 40 |
| Rear Seats | 40 |
| Fire Extinguisher | 42 |
| Seat Heating and Ventilation | 43 |
| Safety Belts..... | 44 |
| Airbag Systems | 46 |
| Child Restraint Systems | 50 |
| LATCH Child Seat System..... | 53 |
| Door Mirrors..... | 54 |
| Automatic Anti-Dazzle Interior Mirror..... | 56 |
| Steering Wheel | 57 |
| Heated Steering Wheel..... | 57 |
| Steering Wheel Adjustment | 58 |
| Multi-Function Steering Wheel..... | 59 |
| Sun Visors..... | 60 |
| Make-up Mirror | 60 |
| Roll-Up Sunblinds, Rear Side Windows | 61 |

Seat and Headrest Adjustment

DANGER

Improper Safety Belt Use

Safety belts only offer protection when the backrest is upright and the belts are properly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts or safety belts worn by passengers in an excessively reclined position can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- ▷ Do not operate the car with the driver or passenger backrests excessively reclined.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "SEAT POSITION" on page 37.

WARNING

Seat Adjustment While Driving

The seat may move further than desired if you adjust it when driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Do not adjust seats while the vehicle is in motion. The backrest locks must be engaged at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

CAUTION

Seat Adjustment

If persons or animals are in the movement range of the seat during seat adjustment, parts of the body could get trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.
- ▷ Do not activate the comfort memory button if there is any risk of the seat crushing the occupant.
- ▷ Cancel automatic adjustment by pressing any of the seat adjustment buttons.
- ▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, since they may depress the comfort setting button and crush themselves or another occupant.

Your vehicle is equipped with a total of five headrests in the backrests of the front and rear seats. The height of the headrests for the front seats and the outer headrests for the back seat is adjustable. Only the middle headrest of the rear seat is removable.

WARNING

Failure to Adjust Head and Backrests

All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the headrests and backrests are placed in their proper positions so that the risk of neck injuries is minimized in the event of a crash.

- ▷ Adjust the backrest's inclination such that the headrest is in an upright position. Adjust the headrest so that the upper edge of the headrest is brought to eye level or higher.
- ▷ Driver and passengers should be seated upright and in the center of their seats.

Adjusting headrests

DANGER

Removing Headrests

Driving with removed headrests will cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- ▷ Do not drive the vehicle without the headrest in place and properly adjusted.



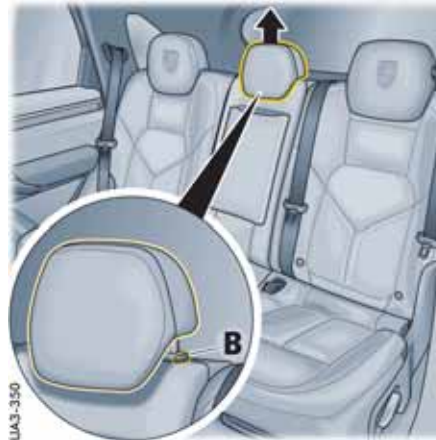
Example: driver's seat

Raising

- ▷ Push headrest upwards until the desired position is reached.

Lowering

- ▷ Press button **A** and, at the same time, push the headrest downwards until the desired position is reached.



Middle headrest of the rear seat

Removing and installing the middle headrest of the rear seat

i Information

If you want to fold the backrest on the middle rear seat forward when the rear seats are in the front position (e.g. in order to make the loadspace bigger or transport bulky objects), the headrest can be removed to prevent it from hitting against the center console.

- ▷ Re-install the headrest when using the middle seat.

Removing

- ▷ Press button **B** and, at the same time, pull the headrest completely out.

⚠ DANGER

Removal of or Failure to Adjust Headrest

Driving with removed headrests, improperly positioned headrests or improperly installed headrests can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- ▷ Adjust the headrests so that the upper edge of the headrest is brought to eye level or higher.
- ▷ Do not drive the vehicle without the headrest in place and properly adjusted.

Installing

- ▷ Insert the headrest into the guides and push it down fully until it is engaged.

Front Seats

Seat position

An ergonomically correct sitting position is important for safe and fatigue-free driving. We recommend the following procedure for adjusting the driver's seat to suit individual requirements:

1. Adjust the seat height to give yourself enough headroom and an unobstructed view outside the vehicle.
2. Adjust the seat in fore-and-aft direction so that your leg is not fully straight and your entire foot is on the pedal when pressing the brake pedal fully.
3. Grip the top half of the steering wheel. Set the backrest angle and the steering wheel position so that your arms are almost outstretched. However, your shoulders must still rest on the backrest.
4. Adjust the seat fore-and-aft setting if necessary.
5. Adjust the height of the headrest so that the upper edge is at eye level or higher.

Adjusting the seat

⚠ WARNING

Seat Adjustment While Driving

The seat may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Do not adjust the seat while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Seat Adjustment

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the seat, they could become trapped or crushed when you adjust the seat.

- ▷ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.



- A** Seat angle adjustment.
- B** Seat height adjustment.



- C** Seat cushion depth adjustment.
 - D** Seat cushion side bolster adjustment.
 - E** Backrest side bolster adjustment.
 - F** Fore-and-aft adjustment.
 - G** Backrest angle adjustment.
 - H** Lumbar support adjustment (backrest curvature for pelvic and spinal column support).
- ▷ Press each control in the direction indicated by the **arrows** until the desired setting is reached.



Driver's door memory buttons (driver memory or comfort memory)

Storing Vehicle Settings

Driver memory

The current seat and door mirror settings are stored automatically on the car key when the vehicle is locked.

Personal position settings for the driver's seat and door mirrors can also be stored on the person buttons **1** and **2** in the driver's door and retrieved at any time by pressing these buttons.



Passenger's door memory buttons (comfort memory)

Comfort memory

On vehicles with the comfort memory package, different vehicle settings, such as the multi-purpose display, are stored on the car key and the person buttons **1** and **2** in the driver's door in addition to the driver memory settings.

Personal position settings for the passenger seat can be stored on the person buttons **1** and **2** in the passenger's door.

The passenger seat settings are not stored on the car key.

⚠ CAUTION Memory Seat Activation

If persons or animals are in the movement range of the seat during seat adjustment, parts of the body could get trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Do not activate the memory button if there is any risk of the seat crushing the occupant.
- ▷ Cancel automatic adjustment by pressing any seat adjustment button, one of the person buttons **1** or **2** or button **OFF**.
- ▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, since they may depress the memory button and crush themselves or another occupant.

Preventing automatic storage of settings on car key

Deactivating automatic storage

- ▷ Press button **OFF** before leaving the vehicle. The indicator light on the button lights up. The current settings are stored on the car key. An acknowledgement signal sounds to indicate that the settings have been stored.

All other settings that are modified when the **OFF** function is active are not stored on the car key.

Activating automatic storage

- ▷ Press button **OFF** briefly.
or
Press and hold the button **OFF** until the settings last stored on the car key are retrieved. The indicator light on the button goes out. Automatic storage is activated.

Storing settings on person buttons 1 and 2

Seat and mirror settings cannot be stored when driving.


Storing settings

1. Set the mirror and seat positions according to your individual needs.
2. Press memory button **SET**.
The indicator light on the button lights up.
3. Press one of the person buttons **1** or **2** within 10 seconds.
The indicator light on the memory button **OFF** goes out and an acknowledgement signal sounds. The settings are now stored on the desired person button.

Retrieving settings using the car key or on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive

- ▷ Open the driver's door.
The seat positions that were last set are restored automatically.

Canceling settings

Automatic settings can be canceled by pressing the button **OFF** or the button  on the car key.

Retrieving settings with person buttons 1 and 2

Driver's side

1. Open the door.
2. Press person button **1** or **2**.
or
Once the door is closed or the ignition key is inserted and the ignition is switched on (on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive), press and hold the person button **1** or **2** until the stored positions have been reached.

Passenger's side

- ▷ Press and hold the person button **1** or **2** on the passenger's side until the stored positions have been reached.

Canceling settings

Automatic settings can be canceled by releasing the person button **1** or **2** or by pressing the button **OFF**.

Easy Entry Function

The Easy Entry function makes it easier for you to get in and out of the vehicle.

CAUTION Easy Entry Function

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the seat, they could be trapped or crushed when you adjust the seat.

- ▷ Switch off the Easy Entry function if persons are behind the driver's seat.

NOTICE

Risk of damage if the rear seat is folded forward when settings are retrieved.

The seat could move back and become damaged when it contacts the folded rear seat.

- ▷ Switch off the Easy Entry function if the rear seat is folded forward.

Prerequisite

- Function must be activated on the multi-purpose display.

For information on switching the Easy Entry function on and off:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SWITCHING COMFORT ENTRY ON AND OFF" on page 135.

Entering the vehicle

When the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel and driver's seat move upwards or to the rear depending on the position of the seat when the driver left the vehicle.

Once the driver's door is closed and the ignition key is inserted or, in the case of vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, the ignition is switched on, the seat and steering wheel move to the stored position.

Exiting the vehicle

The steering wheel moves upwards:

- After the ignition key is removed.
- or**
- After the ignition is switched off **and** the driver's door is opened on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.

The driver's seat moves to the rear:

- After the driver's door is opened.



Rear Seats

CAUTION Seat Adjustment and Rear Seat Occupants

If persons or animals are in the movement range of the seat during seat adjustment, parts of the body could get trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.

Fore-and-aft adjustment

- ▷ Pull up lever **A** and slide the seat forward or back.



Backrest angle adjustment

1. Sit on the seat.
2. There are three backrest angle positions available. Pull up lever **B** and adjust the released backrest by pressing it into a less steep seat position or by easing it into a more upright seat position. The backrest engages in the current position when you release the lever.



Folding rear seat backrests forward

The rear seat backrests are divided and can be folded forward individually to make the luggage compartment larger.

i Information

The backrests on the left and middle seats are joined together. When you fold the left backrest forward, the middle backrest will also fold over. The backrest on the middle seat can also be folded forward separately.

- ▷ To fold the backrests forward, the rear seats should be moved back by adjusting the fore-and-aft position.

Folding outer seat backrests forward

1. Slide the headrest down.
Please see the chapter "ADJUSTING HEADRESTS" on page 35.
2. Disengage retractable cover from the seat.
Please see the chapter "RETRACTABLE COVERS" on page 208.
3. Pull up release lever **B** and fold the backrest forward.
The backrests must engage audibly in the lowered position. Adjust the fore-and-aft position of the seats to do this if necessary.

Adjusting outer seat backrests to vertical position

1. Pull up release lever **B** and fold the backrest back.
2. Make sure that the safety belts are not trapped.
Fold up the backrest until it locks with an audible click.



Folding middle seat backrest forward

i Information

If you want to fold the backrest on the middle rear seat forward when the rear seats are in the front position (e.g. in order to make the loadspace bigger or transport bulky objects), the headrest can be removed to prevent it from hitting against the center console.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE MIDDLE HEADREST OF THE REAR SEAT" on page 36.
 - ▷ Re-install the headrest when using the middle seat.
-
- ▷ Press the release button **C** and fold the backrest forward.

Adjusting middle seat backrest to vertical position

1. Fold up the backrest until it locks with an audible click.
2. If the red marking on the release button is still visible, the seat is not locked properly.
3. Make sure that the middle safety belt is not trapped.



Fire Extinguisher

In vehicles with a fire extinguisher, the extinguisher is attached at the front of the passenger's seat.

- ▷ To remove the fire extinguisher in case of an emergency, hold the extinguisher with one hand and press the **PRESS** button on the fire extinguisher holder with the other hand (**arrow**).

i **Information**

- ▷ Check the final inspection date on the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after its inspection interval has elapsed, it may not work properly.
 - ▷ Always read the operating instructions on the fire extinguisher.
 - ▷ The fire extinguisher should be checked to ensure correct operation by a specialist workshop every 1–2 years.
 - ▷ Have the fire extinguisher refilled after use.
-



A - Seat heating, front
B - Seat ventilation, front

Seat Heating and Ventilation

Seat heating and ventilation is ready for operation when the engine is running. The heating power or seat ventilation can be adjusted to one of three settings by repeatedly pressing the button.

Switching on seat heating

- ▷ Press button **A** (repeatedly).
The number of illuminated lights indicates the selected heat setting.



Seat heating, rear

Switching off seat heating

- ▷ Press button **A** (repeatedly) until all the indicator lights go out.

Switching on front seat ventilation

- ▷ Press button **B** (repeatedly).
The number of illuminated lights indicates the selected ventilation setting.

Switching off front seat ventilation

- ▷ Press button **B** (repeatedly) until all the indicator lights go out.

i **Information**

- Seat heating is not available when the interior temperature is high.
 - Seat ventilation is not available when the interior temperature is low.
-

Safety Belts



DANGER

Failure to Use Safety Belts

Safety belts cannot protect the body if they are not fastened. Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.

Always make sure your and your passengers' safety belts are properly fastened when seated in the vehicle.

- ▷ For you and your passengers' protection, use safety belts at all times while the vehicle is in motion.
- ▷ Use appropriate child restraint systems for all small children.
- ▷ Safety belts must be positioned on the body as to restrain the upper body and lap from sliding forward. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in case of an accident.
- ▷ The shoulder belt should always rest on your upper body. The shoulder belt should never be worn behind your back or under your arm.
- ▷ For maximum effectiveness, the lap belt should be worn low across the hips.
- ▷ Pregnant women should position the belt as low as possible across the pelvis. Make sure it is not pressing against the abdomen.
- ▷ Belts should not be worn twisted.
- ▷ Do not wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc. as these may cause injury.
- ▷ Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with proper positioning of belts.
- ▷ Belts must not rub against sharp objects or damage may occur to the belt.

- ▷ Two occupants should never share the same belt at the same time.



DANGER

Using Damaged Safety Belts

Damaged, heavily stressed or worn safety belts cannot protect the body sufficiently in the event of an accident.

- ▷ Keep belt buckles free of any obstruction that may prevent a secure locking.
- ▷ Belts that have been subjected to excessive stretch forces in an accident must be inspected or replaced to ensure their continued effectiveness in restraining you. The same applies to belt tensioner systems which have been triggered. In addition, the anchor points of the belts should be checked.
- ▷ If safety belts do not work properly, see your authorized Porsche dealer immediately.
- ▷ If the belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles or retractors, they should be replaced to ensure safe operation.
- ▷ Do not modify or disassemble the safety belts in your vehicle.
- ▷ The belts must be kept clean or the retractors may not work properly. Please see the chapter "CLEANING THE SAFETY BELTS" on page 260.
- ▷ Never bleach or dye safety belts.
- ▷ Do not allow safety belts to retract until they are completely dry after cleaning or this may cause damage to the belt.

Belt tensioner

Depending on the force of a collision, fastened safety belts are automatically tightened in an accident.

The belt tensioners are triggered in:

- Front and rear impacts of sufficient severity
- Side impacts
- In cases of vehicle rollover



Information

The belt tensioner system can be triggered only once; the system must be replaced afterwards. If there is a fault in the belt tensioner system, the airbag warning light lights up.

Work may be performed on the belt tensioner system only by an authorized Porsche dealer. Smoke is released when the belt tensioners are triggered.

This does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.



Safety belt warning system

An **audio-visual warning** system is interconnected with the driver's safety belt.

Every time the ignition is turned on, the gong will sound for about 6 seconds to remind driver and passenger to buckle up.

In addition, the gong will sound for approximately 90 seconds if vehicle speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h).

The safety belt warning lights in the instrument panel and multi-purpose display will go off as soon as the driver has buckled up.



Fastening the safety belt

1. Assume a comfortable sitting position.
2. Adjust the seat backrest so that the belt always rests on your upper body and runs across the middle of your shoulder.
3. Grasp the belt tongue and pull the belt in a slow, continuous motion across your chest and lap.

Information

The belt can be blocked if the vehicle is standing at an angle or the belt is pulled out using a jerking movement.

The belt cannot be pulled out while accelerating and slowing down, when cornering and when driving uphill.

4. Insert the belt tongue into the appropriate buckle on the inboard side of the seat until it locks securely with an audible click.
5. Make sure that belts are not trapped or twisted and that they are not rubbing on sharp edges.
6. The horizontal section of the belt should always fit snugly across the pelvis. Therefore, after fastening the belt, always pull the diagonal part of the belt upward. Pregnant women should position the belt as low as possible across the pelvis, and ensure that it is not pressing against the abdomen.
7. Pull on the diagonal section of the belt now and again during the journey to ensure that the horizontal section remains tight.
8. Make sure that the belts and buckles fit correctly on the rear seat bench.

Releasing the safety belt

1. Hold the belt tongue.
2. Press the red button (**arrow**).
3. Guide belt tongue to the reel.



Safety belt height adjustment

The height of the belt deflectors on the front seats can be adjusted.

- ▷ Adjust the height of the safety belt so that it runs across the middle of the shoulder, not against the neck.

Adjusting the belt height

- ▷ Upward – push belt deflector up.
- ▷ Downward – press locking button **A** and move belt deflector.

Airbag Systems

The vehicle is equipped with airbag and lap/shoulder belt at both front seating positions. The airbags are a supplemental restraint at those seating positions.

The airbags in combination with the safety belts make up a safety system which offers the driver and the passenger the greatest known protection from injuries in case of accident.

Your vehicle is equipped with occupant sensing for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208.

Even if your vehicle is equipped with airbags, **the safety belts must be worn at all times**, because the front or side airbags deploy depending on the force and angle of impact.

Below the deployment threshold of the airbag system, and during types of collisions which do not cause the actuation of the system, the safety belts provide the primary protection to the occupants when correctly worn. **Therefore, all persons within the vehicle must wear safety belts at all times** (in many states, state law requires the use of safety belts) to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SAFETY BELTS" on page 44.

The **front airbags** are located under the padded steering wheel panel on the driver's side and in the dashboard on the passenger's side.

The **side airbags** of the front seats (optional for rear seats) are installed in the side of the seat backrests.

The **head airbags** are installed above the doors in the roof area.

The **knee airbag** is installed in the knee area on the driver's side.



Information

To minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash, all occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an airbag is also provided at their seating position.

DANGER

Safety Belts and Positioning

Airbags only can offer protection, if all occupants fasten their safety belts and retain a proper sitting position.

To provide optimal occupant protection, airbags must inflate at very high speed. If you are not wearing your safety belt or are too close to the airbag when it is deployed, inflating airbags can result in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ **Always fasten safety belts.**
 - ▷ Make sure there are no people, animals or objects between the driver or passenger and the area into which the airbags inflate.
 - ▷ Sit back as far from the dashboard or steering wheel as is practical, while still maintaining full vehicle control.
 - ▷ Always hold the steering wheel by the outer rim. Never rest your hands on the center of the steering wheel where the airbag module is located.
 - ▷ Always keep feet in the footwell while driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat area. Do not lean against the inside of the door or outside the window while the vehicle is moving.
-

DANGER

Safe Storage of Objects

Objects and load have to be stored securely to keep from causing injury.

- ▷ Do not transport heavy objects on or in front of the passenger seat. These could impair the function of the airbags, the safety belts, and occupant sensing.
- ▷ Do not hang objects (e.g., jackets, coats, coat hangers) over the backrest.
- ▷ Objects must not protrude out of the door storage compartment.

- ▷ Do not add any additional coverings or stickers to the steering wheel or in the area of the passenger airbag, side airbags, knee airbags, and head airbags. Doing so may adversely affect the functioning of the airbag system or cause harm to the occupants if the airbag system should deploy.
- ▷ No objects should be placed over or near the airbag on the instrument panel, because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbag to inflate.
- ▷ Give your passenger all of the information in this chapter.



Modification to Airbag System

A modified airbag system cannot offer protection. They may not trigger or could trigger in an uncontrolled way. An uncontrolled triggering of the airbag system can result in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not modify the seat coverings, since such changes can block the seat-mounted side airbag. Do not attach additional cushions, protective coverings, or pillows to the passenger's seat. Do not affix things to the passenger's seat or cover it with other materials. Do not cover the back of the backrest. Do not make changes to the passenger's seat, the cushion or foam, the occupant sensor, and to the seat base frame.
- ▷ No changes must be made to the wiring or components of the airbag system.
- ▷ Do not install any wiring for electrical accessory equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring harnesses. Doing so may disable the airbag system or cause inadvertent inflation.

- ▷ If the warning light comes on, the airbag system should be repaired immediately by your authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Using accessories not approved by Porsche can cause the occupant sensing to be impaired.
- ▷ Do not squeeze objects, such as the fire extinguisher, or first aid kit under the seat.
- ▷ Only have seats removed and installed by an authorized Porsche dealer so that occupant sensing components will not be damaged.

Information

Airbag components (e.g. steering wheel, seats) may be disassembled only by an authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▷ When disposing of a used airbag unit, our safety instructions must be followed. These instructions can be obtained at any authorized Porsche dealer.

Function of the airbag system

Airbags are a supplemental safety system. Your primary protection comes from your safety belts. The front airbags are triggered during a frontal collision of sufficient force and direction. In the event of a side impact of corresponding force, the side airbag on the impact side is triggered.

The inflation process generates the amount of gas required to fill the airbags at the necessary pressure in fractions of a second.

Airbags help to protect the head and body, while simultaneously damping the motion of the driver and passenger in the impact direction in the event of a frontal impact or side impact.

In order to help provide protection in severe collisions which can cause death and serious injury, airbags must inflate extremely rapidly. Such high speed inflation has a negative but unavoidable side effect, which is that it can and does cause injuries, including facial and arm abrasions, bruising and broken bones. You can help minimize such injuries by always wearing your safety belts.

There are many types of accidents in which airbags are not expected to deploy. These include accidents where the airbags would provide no benefit, such as a rear impact against your vehicle. Other accidents where the airbags are designed not to deploy are those where the risk of injury from the airbag deployment could exceed any protective benefits, such as in low speed accidents or higher speed accidents where the vehicle decelerates over a longer time. Since airbag deployment does not occur in all accidents, this further emphasizes the need for you and your passengers to always wear safety belts.

Your Porsche vehicle is equipped with electronically controlled systems that help to ensure your vehicle operates properly. These systems monitor the operation of various systems and electronically store information that is useful to service technicians when they need to diagnose and repair these systems.

Your vehicle is equipped with crash-sensing and diagnostic devices that may record information at the time of a collision, including whether the airbag and seatbelt pretensioners deployed and whether the safety belt was in use.

To retrieve this information, special equipment is needed and access to the vehicle or feature that stores that data is required. Some states only allow access to such information under restricted circumstances, including:

- In response to a request of police or other government office; or
- with the consent of the registered owner, or if the vehicle is leased, with the lessee, or
- through a discovery process in litigation; or as otherwise permitted or required by law.

Your rights with respect to the information discussed above may vary from state to state. Check your state law for further information.

Advanced airbag

Your vehicle is equipped with occupant sensing for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. Depending on the weight, body positioning and shape acting on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag will automatically be switched on and off.

Depending on the angle and force of impact, the passenger's airbag which is switched-on will be triggered during a collision.

Precondition for switching the passenger's airbag on and off, depending on weight, body positioning and shape:

- ▷ Ignition is switched on.

WARNING Improper Front Passenger Seating

Improper seating can unintentionally impair operation of occupant sensing of the passenger's airbag.

If the weight of an adult on the passenger's seat is not properly maintained, the passenger's airbag may be switched off.

- ▷ Select an upright seat position, and do not support weight on the armrests or center console, or lean out of the window while driving.
- Always keep feet positioned on the floor in the footwell while driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat area.

Seat adjustment for the passenger's seat

WARNING Reclining Passenger Seatback

Safety belts only offer protection when the backrest is positioned at an upright seating angle and the belts are properly positioned on the body.

- ▷ Do not operate the car with the passenger backrest excessively reclined.

Vehicle modifications to accommodate persons with disabilities

Because modifications to your vehicle could compromise your advanced airbag system, please call 1-800-PORSCHE prior to having your vehicle modified.

Automatic deactivation of the passenger airbag

Before transporting a child on the passenger seat:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on page 50.
- When an **up to one-year old child** is seated in the child restraint system, the front airbag is automatically deactivated on the passenger side.
- When an adult is seated in the passenger's seat the front airbag is automatically activated.

DANGER

To reduce risk of injury or death to a child from an inflating airbag in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

- ▷ Under all normal circumstances, the child seat must be placed in the rear.
- Do not use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat.
-



PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp

i Information

Depending on the weight, body positioning and shape acting on the passenger's seat, it can occur in the case of heavier children that the passenger airbag is active or, in the case of very light adults or young persons, that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

The condition of the passenger airbag system is shown by the indicator lamp in the overhead operating console.

- ▷ If in doubt, fasten the child restraint system on the rear bench or transport the passenger on the rear bench.

i Information

- ▷ After switching on the ignition, the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF warning light lights up for a few seconds as a check.

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up

The passenger airbag is switched off.

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp does not light up

The passenger airbag is active and ready for operation.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of serious personal injury or death due to the passenger airbag triggering unintentionally.

When the ignition is on and the up to one-year old child is seated in the child restraint system on the passenger seat the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be on.

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp does not light up, it could indicate a fault in the system, and the airbag could inflate in a collision, placing the child at risk of death or severe injury from the inflating airbag.

In this case:

- ▷ Fasten the child restraint system on the rear bench immediately.
- ▷ Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

🚨 Warning light

Faults are indicated by a warning light on the tachometer.

The airbag warning light illuminates when the electronic monitoring of the airbag system detects a malfunction of the sensors, safety belt system, occupant detection system, PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp, related wiring, airbag modules and control units.

- ▷ **In the following cases you should immediately consult an authorized Porsche dealer in order to assure the airbag system is functioning properly:**
 - If the warning light does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
 - or**
 - If the warning light does not go out once the engine is running.
 - or**
 - If the warning light appears while driving.

i Information

If you sell your Porsche, notify the purchaser that the vehicle is equipped with airbags, and refer them to the chapter „Airbag systems“ in the owner's manual (safety and disposal rules).

Further information on the airbag system can be found on stickers attached to the sun visors, as well as on all airbag components.

For special recommendations on the use of child restraints:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on page 50.

Child Restraint Systems

Porsche recommends that all infants and children be restrained in child restraint systems at all times while the vehicle is in motion in accordance with applicable laws.

When possible, use only child restraint systems recommended by Porsche. These systems have been tested and adjusted to the interior of your Porsche and the appropriate child weight groups. Other systems have not been tested and could entail an increased risk of injury.

The use of infant or child restraints is required by law in all 50 US states and the Canadian provinces. The child restraint system should be one that complies with U.S. Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and should be secured by a lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt or for child seats equipped with the LATCH system (**L**ower **A**nchorage and **T**ether for **C**hildren, also known as ISOFIX) to the LATCH anchorages.

You can obtain child seats that are LATCH compatible at your authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▷ Always observe the separate installation instructions for your child seat.

A statement by the seat manufacturer of compliance with this federal standard can be found on the instruction label on the restraint and in the instruction manual provided with the restraint.

DANGER

Improper Use of Child Restraint

- ▷ Follow all child restraint instructions and warnings in this manual.

- When using an infant or child restraint system, be sure to follow all manufacturer's instructions on installation and use.
- Infants and small children should neither be held on the lap, nor should they share a safety belt with another occupant while the vehicle is in motion.
- Children too big for child restraint systems must use regular safety belts. A shoulder belt can be used providing it does not cross the face or the neck of the child.
- Choose a child restraint system according to the weight of the child.
- Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been heavily stressed in an accident must be replaced immediately.
- Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in vehicle.
- Do not affix objects to child restraint systems or cover them with other materials.
- ▷ For maximum safety and protection, do not use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

Direction of installation for child restraint systems

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

Under all normal circumstances, the child seat must be placed in the rear.

- ▷ Do not use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

Group 0 and 0+: Children up to 29 lbs (13 kg)

Children of this weight must be transported in a restraint system which is fitted **facing backwards**.

Group I: Children in between 20 lbs (9 kg) and 40 lbs (18 kg)

Children of this weight are transported in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Group II: Children in between 33 lbs (15 kg) and 55 lbs (25 kg)

Children of this weight are transported in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Group III: Children in between 49 lbs (22 kg) and 80 lbs (36 kg)

Children of this weight are transported in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Using child restraint systems in the front passenger seat



DANGER

Child Restraint in Front Seat

The use of a child restraint system in the front passenger seat can result in serious personal injury or death to the child from an airbag deployment.

To reduce risk of injury from an inflating airbag in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

- ▷ Under all normal circumstances, the child seat must be placed in the rear.

Do not use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

However, there may be serious situations where it might be necessary to place a child in the front seat so that he/she can be kept under direct observation to prevent an immediate risk to the child (for example, while driving to the doctor or hospital). The following instructions are provided to you solely for that purpose.

- ▷ Seek appropriate advice from your authorized Porsche dealer about the possible installation of a Porsche child restraint system.
- ▷ If a child restraint system must be fastened to the passenger's seat, adjust the passenger's seat as far away from the airbag as possible.
- ▷ If emergency or other serious conditions require a child to be placed in the front seat, exercise extreme caution and defensive driving of your vehicle.

Child restraint system for up to one-year old children

If the child restraint system must be fastened to the passenger's seat in exceptional cases:

- When an **up to one-year old child** is seated in the child restraint system, the front airbag is automatically deactivated on the passenger side.
- ▷ Make sure that the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp lights up.
- ▷ Adjust the passenger's seat as far away from the airbag as possible.



DANGER

Child Seat Detection Fault

The indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be on when a child restraint occupied by a child is in the front passenger seat.

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp does not light up, it could indicate a fault in the system.

In this case:

- ▷ Move the child restraint system to a rear seat immediately.
- ▷ Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Occupant size sensing

Your vehicle is equipped with occupant sensing for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. Depending on the weight, body positioning and shape acting on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag will automatically be switched on or off.

- ▷ In case of doubt, fasten the child restraint system on a rear seat.

Small adult passengers

Some smaller adults may not turn off the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp. If the lamp is lit when an adult occupies the seat, they should reposition their body properly, centered in the seat with feet on the floor and not leaning on adjacent body parts. If the lamp still does not turn off, the person should move to a rear seat for better protection, and the vehicle should be taken to a authorized Porsche dealer for evaluation.



CAUTION

Adult Use of Front Seats

When the ignition is on and the small adult passenger is seated on the passenger seat, the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be off.

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp lights up, it could indicate a fault in the system.

In this case:

- ▷ Have the system evaluated and if necessary, remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Automatic locking retractor

The safety belts for the front passenger and the rear bench are equipped with an automatic locking retractor for securing the child restraint system. When activated, this retractor allows you to securely fasten the child restraint system in place so that inadvertent movements will not occur.

⚠ DANGER

Child Seat in Front

The use of a child restraint system on the front passenger seat can result in serious personal injury or death to the child from an airbag deployment.

To reduce risk of injury from an inflating airbag in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

- ▷ Under all normal circumstances, the child seat must be placed in the rear.

Do not use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

If there are emergency reasons for transporting a child in the front passenger seat, use the automatic locking retractor function and follow the other safety instructions on the previous pages in this section.



PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp

⚠ DANGER

Adjusting Childseat After Fastening

- ▷ After fastening the child restraint system, do not adjust the seat in any direction.

Moving the seat could pull the safety belt against the child restraint, applying increased pressure to the seat, and cause the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp to go off and activate the airbag system.

- ▷ Check the condition of the passenger airbag system shown by the indicator lamp in the overhead operating console.

Activating the automatic locking retractor

1. If a child restraint system must be fastened to the passenger's seat, adjust the passenger's seat as far away from the airbag as possible.
2. Position child seat according to the child seat's manufacturer instructions.
3. Pull the safety belt retractor completely out. At this point the locking mechanism is activated.
4. Insert the safety belt tongue into the buckle and make certain that it is properly latched. Make no more adjustments to the seat.
5. Allow the safety belt to retract until it is tight on the child restraint system. You may further tighten the belt by pulling on it to allow more of it to retract.
Make sure that excessive safety belt forces do not occur by moving the seat with the child seat installed.

Releasing the safety belt

- ▷ Unbuckle the safety belt latch.

Then make certain that the belt has fully retracted. At this point the automatic locking feature will be disengaged.

Seek appropriate advice from your authorized Porsche dealer about the possible installation of a Porsche child restraint system.



LATCH Child Seat System

LATCH child seats are the best option for mounting a child seat in your Porsche. Such LATCH child seats can be installed only using the LATCH system in the rear seats.

Use only child restraint systems with the LATCH system (**L**ower **A**nchorage and **T**ether for **C**hildren) recommended by Porsche.

These systems have been tested and adjusted to the interior of your Porsche and the appropriate child weight groups. Other systems have not been tested and could entail an increased risk of injury.

You can obtain child seats that are LATCH-compatible at your authorized Porsche dealer.

Always observe the separate installation instructions for your child seat.

Using a LATCH child seat system

The outer rear seats are equipped with the LATCH system (lower anchorage and anchor points for tether straps on the back of the backrests).

Markings on the right and left for the LATCH child seat anchorage can be found on the backrests of the outer rear seats.

The anchor bars **A** for the LATCH child seat anchorage can be found directly under the markings between backrest and seat cushion.

Child Restraint Anchorages

 **WARNING** Misuse of Rear Childseat Restraint Anchorages

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adults safety belts or harnesses.

- ▷ Do not misuse the child restraint anchorages. Only attach **one** child seat tether per anchorage.
- ▷ They are not designed to withstand loads imposed by adults.



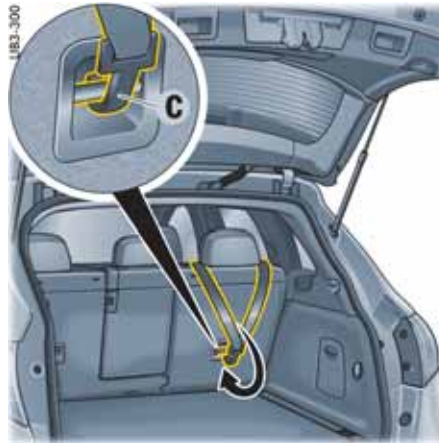
- ▷ Please see the chapter "AUTOMATIC LOCKING RETRACTOR" on page 52.

If your child restraint seat or seats require the use of a tether strap, you will want to use the anchor points **B** provided behind the rear bench backrest. To ensure proper installation, see your authorized Porsche dealer.



Installing a LATCH child seat system

- ▷ Always observe the separate installation instructions for your child seat.
- 1. Secure the child seat to retaining lugs **A** as outlined in the operating manual for the child seat.
- 2. Pull the child seat to check that both fastening points are engaged correctly.
- 3. If the child restraint seat or seats require the use of a tether strap, lay the tether strap **C** above the headrest.



- 4. Attach the tether strap **C** to the anchor point behind the backrest and pull it tight.

Door Mirrors

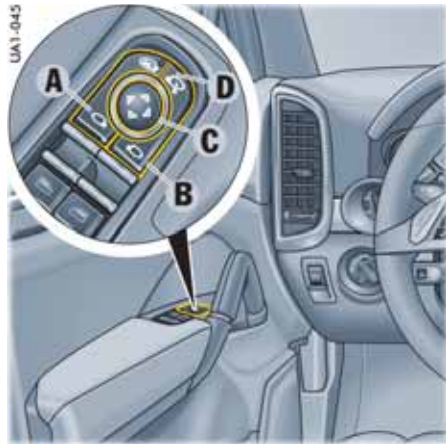
The convex mirror glass on the passenger's side and the aspherical mirror glass on the driver's side provide a larger field of view.

⚠ WARNING Judging Distance in Convex Side Mirror

- Vehicles or objects appear smaller in convex mirrors and further away than they are in reality.
- ▷ Bear this distortion in mind when estimating the distance of vehicles behind you and when reversing into a parking space.
 - ▷ Also make use of the interior mirror for judging distance.

NOTICE

- Risk of damage to the door mirrors when washing the vehicle in a car wash.
- ▷ Fold in door mirrors before using the car wash.

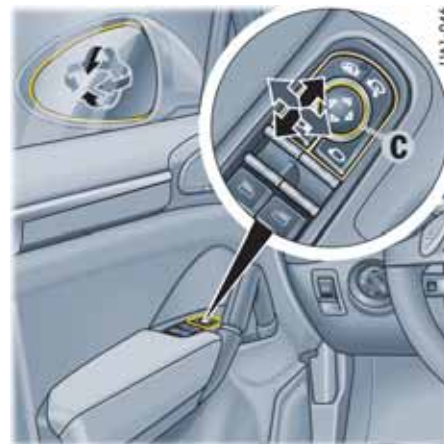


- A - Door mirror selection – driver's side
- B - Door mirror selection – passenger's side
- C - Adjusting door mirrors
- D - Folding door mirrors in and out

Adjusting door mirrors

The electrical door mirror adjuster is ready for operation:

- With ignition switched on.
- After the ignition is switched off and before the driver's or passenger's door is first opened, but for a maximum of 10 minutes.



1. Press selection button **A** for the driver's side and selection button **B** for the passenger's side.
The indicator light on the pressed button lights up.
2. Move the door mirrors to the correct position by pressing the adjustment button **C**.

If the electrical adjustment facility fails

- ▷ Adjust the mirror by pressing on the mirror face.

Folding in door mirrors

- ▷ Press button **D**.
Both door mirrors fold in automatically.

If the electrical adjustment facility fails

- ▷ Fold in mirrors manually.


Folding out door mirrors

- ▷ Press button **D**.
Both door mirrors unfold automatically.

Folding door mirrors in and out automatically

The door mirrors can be folded in automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Folding door mirrors in automatically

- ▷ Press and hold the button  on the car key for at least 1 second.
- or**
- On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, press and hold the locking button in the handle on the driver's door for at least 1 second.
The door mirrors fold in.

Folding door mirrors out automatically

- ▷ Switch on ignition.
The door mirrors fold out.

Information

The door mirrors do not fold out automatically after the ignition is switched on if they were folded in manually using the button **D**.

If the electrical adjustment facility fails

- ▷ Unfold mirrors manually.

Storing door mirror settings

On vehicles with driver or comfort memory, individual door mirror settings can be stored on the person buttons on the driver's side and on the car key.

For further information on retrieving and storing vehicle settings:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "STORING VEHICLE SETTINGS" on page 38.

Door mirror heating

Door mirror heating is activated automatically when the heated rear window is switched on while the engine is running.

For information on switching on the heated rear window:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “HEATED REAR WINDOW/DOOR MIRROR HEATING” on page 76.

Automatic anti-dazzle door mirrors

The door mirrors change to anti-dazzle position automatically in synchronisation with the interior mirror.

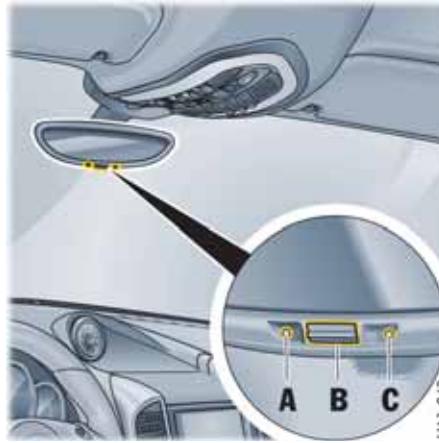
For information on the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “AUTOMATIC ANTI-DAZZLE INTERIOR MIRROR” on page 56.

Swivelling down mirror glass as parking aid

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror on the **passenger's side** swivels down slightly to show the curb area.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “SWIVELLING DOWN MIRROR GLASS AS PARKING AID” on page 229.



Automatic Anti-Dazzle Interior Mirror

Sensors on the front and rear sides of the interior mirror measure the incident light. The mirrors automatically change to anti-dazzle position or revert to their normal state, depending on the light intensity.

Information

The incidental light within the detection area of the light sensor **C** must not be restricted (e.g. by stickers on the rear window or items of luggage in the luggage compartment or on the luggage compartment cover). Likewise, the incidental light coming through the windshield to the front light sensor must not be restricted by stickers.

Switching off automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▷ Press button **B**.
The indicator light **A** goes out.
- The anti-dazzle function switches off automatically if:
- Reverse gear is engaged **or**
 - Interior lighting is switched on.

Switching on automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▷ Press button **B**.
Indicator light **A** lights up.

 **CAUTION** Broken Mirror
Electrolytes

Electrolyte fluid may escape from broken mirror glass. This fluid irritates the skin and eyes.

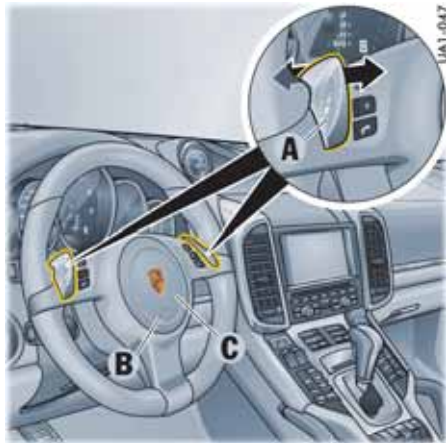
- ▷ If the electrolyte fluid should come into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse it off immediately with clean water.
Seek medical attention if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic components and clothing.

Electrolyte fluid can be removed only while it is still wet.

- ▷ Clean the affected parts with water.



Airbag unit

The airbag unit **C** is located behind the padded steering wheel boss.

In conjunction with the safety belts, the airbag is a safety system designed to provide the driver with maximum protection from injury in an accident.

For information on the airbag system:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "AIRBAG SYSTEMS" on page 46.

Steering Wheel

Tiptronic S shift buttons

Porsche Tiptronic S is an eight-speed transmission with an automatic and a manual selection mode.

You can change temporarily to manual mode or shift gear in manual mode with the shift buttons **A** on the steering wheel.

For information on using Tiptronic S:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "TIPTRONIC S" on page 180.

Horn

- ▷ Press button **B** to operate the horn.



Heated Steering Wheel

The steering wheel heating can be switched on and off with the button on the rear of the steering wheel when the ignition is switched on.

Switching steering wheel heating on/off

- ▷ Press button.

The message "Heated steering wheel on" or "Heated steering wheel off" appears on the multi-purpose display for 2 seconds.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted manually or electrically in four directions depending on the vehicle equipment.

⚠ WARNING

Steering Wheel Adjustment While Driving

The steering wheel may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it when driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

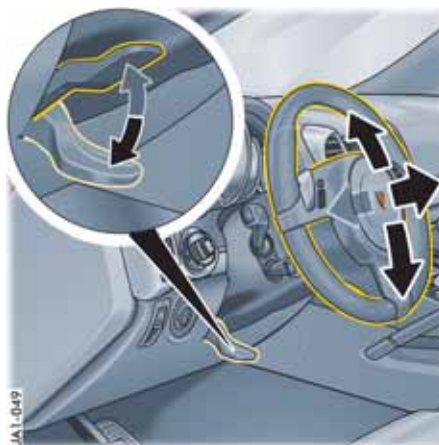
- ▷ Do not adjust the steering wheel when driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Memory Steering Wheel Movement

If persons or animals are in the movement range of the steering wheel during adjustment, parts of the body could get trapped or crushed.

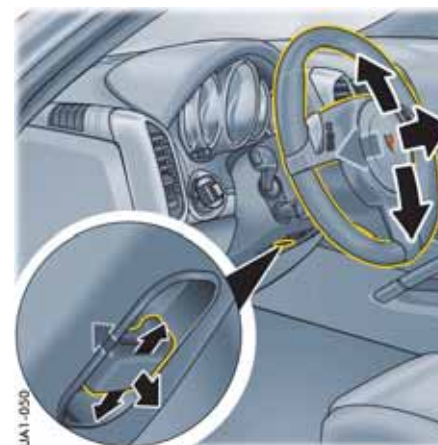
- ▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.



Manual steering wheel adjustment

Adjusting steering wheel manually

1. Insert the ignition key fully into the ignition lock.
2. Push locking lever downwards.
3. Adjust steering wheel to suit the chosen backrest angle and your seat position by moving the steering wheel up or down and longitudinally.
4. Swivel locking lever back until you feel it engage.
If necessary, move the steering wheel slightly in a longitudinal direction.



Electric steering wheel adjustment

Adjusting steering wheel electrically

- ▷ Press control switch under the steering column in the relevant direction until the desired setting is reached.

Multi-Function Steering Wheel



WARNING

Distraction from
Steering Wheel
Functions

Setting or operating the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving could distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Operate the equipment while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only when the vehicle is stationary.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, you can use the function keys of the multi-function steering wheel to operate the following Porsche communication systems:

- Telephone
- PCM
- CDR-31
- Multi-purpose display of the instrument panel



Operational readiness of the multi-function steering wheel

- With ignition switched on
- ▷ Please observe the operating instructions supplied for the Porsche communication systems before operating the function keys.



Information

The Porsche communication systems cannot be switched on and off using the multi-function steering wheel.

Function buttons on the multi-function steering wheel

The rotary knobs at the top left and right of the steering wheel can also be pressed.



Turn volume control

Upwards – increase volume
Downwards – decrease volume

Press volume control

Switch volume/mute on and off.



Turn rotary knob

Select/highlight the main menu or a menu item in the multi-purpose display by turning the rotary knob up or down.

Press rotary knob

Go to submenu or activate selected function.



Press MFS button

Call up the stored function.
The button can be assigned the desired function in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel.



Press Back button

Return to the menu.



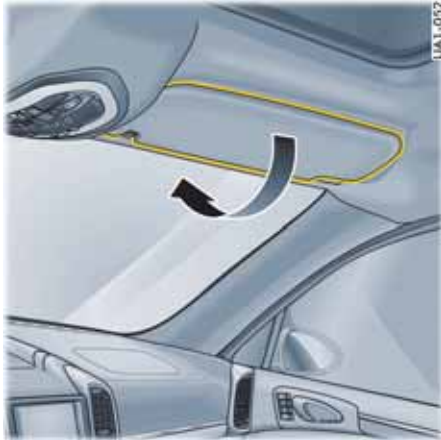
Press Handset Pickup button

Accept a telephone call.



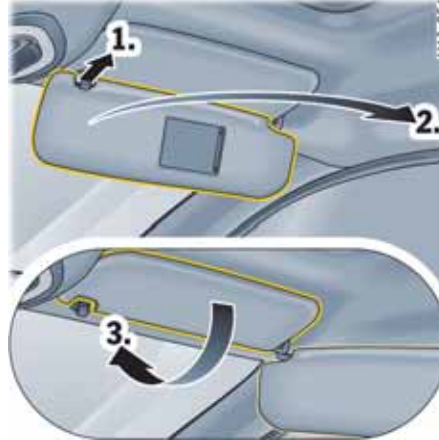
Press Handset Hangup button

End or refuse a telephone call.



Sun Visors

- ▷ Swivel the sun visor down to prevent dazzle from the front.

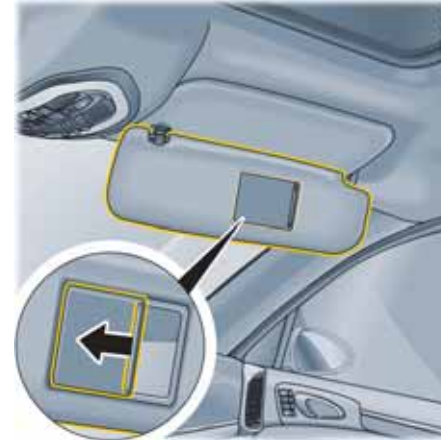


If you are dazzled from the side:

1. Unclip the sun visor from the inner bracket.
2. Swivel the sun visor around so that it is in front of the door window.
3. You can also swivel the second sun visor down.

Information

Please note that the second sun visor must be swivelled up before swivelling the first sun visor back. Otherwise, you will no longer be able to swivel the first sun visor up.



Make-up Mirror

The make-up mirror on the rear of the sun visor is closed with a sliding cover.

CAUTION Exposed Make-up Mirror

The mirror glass could break in an accident and splinters could injure passengers if the sliding cover is open.

- ▷ Keep the sliding cover closed while driving.
- ▷ The make-up mirror lighting is switched on automatically when the sliding cover is opened (**arrow**).

Roll-Up Sunblinds, Rear Side Windows

i Information

The roll-up sunblinds on the rear side windows can be raised or lowered only when the rear side windows are closed.

The roll-up sunblinds move automatically to the correct end position.

If child protection is activated, the roll-up sunblinds on the rear side windows can only be operated using the power window buttons in the driver's door.

For information on child protection:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "DISABLING THE CONTROLS IN THE REAR" on page 82.



Rear power window/roll-up sunblind button

Raising roll-up sunblind on rear side windows

- ▷ Pull up the corresponding power window button on the inside of the rear door or the driver's door.



Power windows/roll-up sunblind button on driver's door

Lowering roll-up sunblind on rear side windows

- ▷ Push down the corresponding power window button on the inside of the rear door or the driver's door.

Air Conditioning, Parking Heater and Heated Rear Window

Brief Overview –

Front Control Panel 63

Brief Overview –

Rear Control Panel (4-Zone Air-Conditioning).... 64

Overview of Air Conditioning 65

General Functions 66

Automatically Controlled Air-Conditioning 70

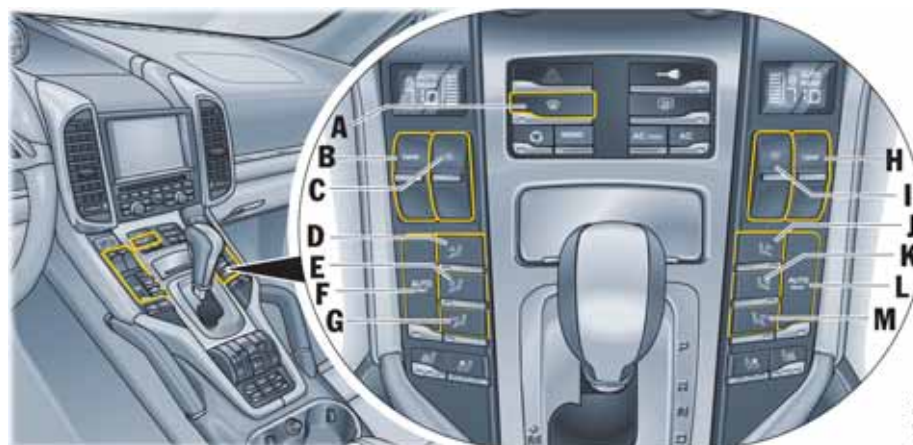
Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating 76

Windshield Heating..... 76

Parking Heater 77

Brief Overview – Front Control Panel

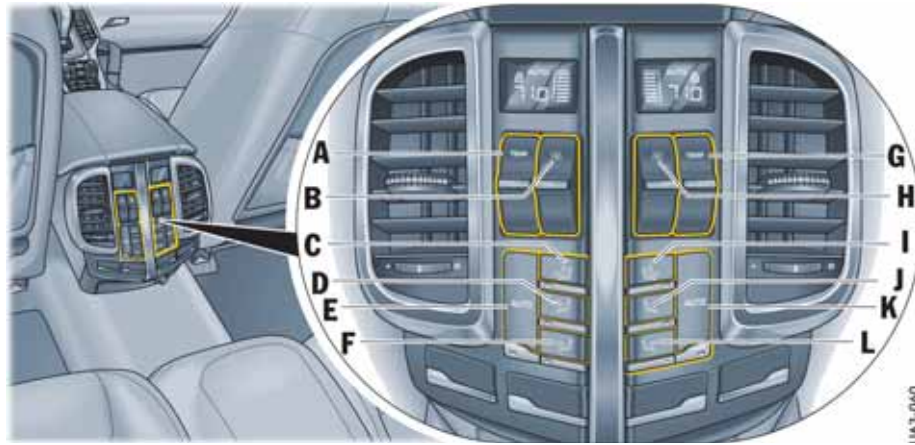
This brief overview does not replace the information provided under “Automatically Controlled Air-Conditioning”. Warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



| What do I want to do? | What do I have to do? |
|---|---|
| Switch on automatic air-conditioning | Press button F for the left side or button L for the right side. |
| Set temperature | Left vehicle side: Press button B up (warmer) or down (colder). Right vehicle side: Press button H up (warmer) or down (colder). |
| Set air quantity manually | Left vehicle side: Press button C up (more) or down (less). Right vehicle side: Press button I up (more) or down (less). |
| Set air distribution manually | Air to windshield for left or right side: Press button D or J . Air to central and side vents for left or right side: Press button E or K . Air to footwell for left or right side: Press button G or M . |
| Defrost windshield | Press button A . |

Brief Overview – Rear Control Panel (4-Zone Air-Conditioning)

This brief overview does not replace the information provided under “Automatically Controlled Air-Conditioning”. Warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



| What do I want to do? | What do I have to do? |
|---|---|
| Switch on automatic air-conditioning | Press button E for the left side or button K for the right side. |
| Set temperature | For left side: Press button A up (warmer) or down (colder). For right side: Press button G up (warmer) or down (colder). |
| Set air quantity manually | For left side: Press button B up (more) or down (less). For right side: Press button H up (more) or down (less). |
| Set air distribution manually | Air to door vents, central vents and to footwell for left or right side: Press button C or I . Air to door vents and central vents for left or right side: Press button D or J . Air to door vents and footwell for left or right side: Press button F or L . |



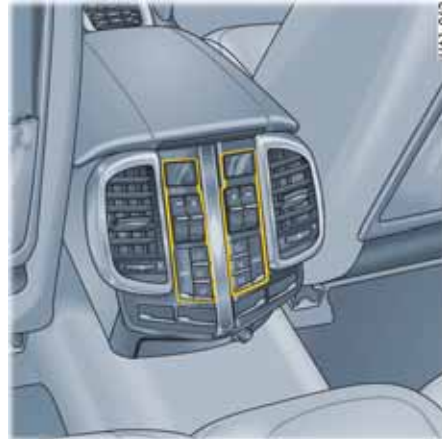
Overview of Air Conditioning

The following air-conditioning system types may be installed, depending on your vehicle equipment:

Automatic 2-zone air-conditioning

The air-conditioning system controls the preselected interior temperature completely automatically.

The temperature, air quantity and air distribution can be set individually for the **left** and **right** air-conditioned areas.



Rear air-conditioning control panel
(4-zone air-conditioning)

Automatic 4-zone air-conditioning

The air-conditioning system controls the preset interior temperature completely automatically. Temperature, air quantity and air distribution can be set individually for the **front left**, **front right**, **rear left** and **rear right** air-conditioned areas.

Vehicles with 4-zone air-conditioning have an additional control panel on the rear center console.



Interior temperature sensor

Sensors

To avoid impairing the performance of the air-conditioning system:

- ▷ Do not cover or tape over the interior temperature sensor for the air-conditioning system.

General Functions

i Information

Additional settings relating to the climate type and extended ventilation panel can be adjusted in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “AIR-CONDITIONING SETTINGS ON THE MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY” on page 76.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “SETTING AIR CONDITIONING” on page 135.

All air-conditioning system settings are stored on the respective car key when the vehicle is locked on vehicles with comfort memory.



Deactivating the function

- ▷ Press button **AUTO REST** on the front control panel. The indicator light on the button goes out.
or
Switch on ignition. The indicator light on the button indicates the previous setting.

i Information

If the battery voltage is too low, REST mode is restricted initially and then switched off.

REST mode

Using engine residual heat

The residual heat of the engine can be used to heat the interior for up to 20 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

- ▷ When the ignition is switched off, press button **AUTO REST** on the front control panel. The indicator light on the button lights up. The air-conditioning settings cannot be changed in REST mode.



AC mode

In automatic mode, AC mode is always activated. The power of the compressor from the air-conditioning system is regulated fully automatically according to requirements. The air-conditioning compressor is switched off automatically at outside temperatures of less than approx. 38 °F (3 °C).

For information on switching automatic mode on and off:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SWITCHING AUTOMATIC MODE ON/OFF" on page 71.

Switching on AC mode

If you wish to cool the passenger compartment to a temperature lower than the outside temperature, AC mode must be activated.

- ▷ Press button **AC**.

The indicator light on the button lights up. The air-conditioning compressor is switched on.

or

Press button **AUTO** for the left or right climate zone.

Switching off AC mode

AC mode can be switched off manually to save fuel, for example.

- ▷ Press button **AC**.

The indicator light on the button goes out. The air-conditioning compressor is switched off. The cooling function is deactivated.



AC MAX mode

In AC MAX mode, the interior of the passenger compartment is cooled at maximum power. The interior temperature is not adjusted automatically.

Switching AC MAX mode on

- ▷ Press button **AC MAX**.
The indicator light on the button lights up.


Switching AC MAX mode off

- ▷ Press button **AC MAX**.
The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or**
- Press button **AUTO** for the left or right climate zone.




Defrosting the windshield

Activating defrosting function

- ▷ Press button .
 - The indicator light on the button lights up.
 - The air flows to the windshield and the front side windows.
 - The windshield is demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

Deactivating defrosting function

- ▷ Press button .
 - The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or**
- Press button **AUTO** for the left or right climate zone.

Information on 4-zone air-conditioning

The air flows to the windshield and the front side windows.
 A lock symbol appears in the displays on the operating unit for the rear air-conditioned areas.
 Air-conditioning settings cannot be modified.



Accepting settings for driver's side for the entire vehicle

The MONO function allows the air-conditioning settings for the driver's side to be accepted for the entire vehicle.

Switching on MONO mode

- ▷ Press button **MONO**.
 - The indicator light on the button lights up.
 - The display indicator values for the other areas adopt the same values as the driver's settings.

Switching off MONO mode

- ▷ Press button **MONO**.
 - The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or**
- The settings for one of the other air-conditioned areas change.



Setting automatic air-recirculation mode

In automatic air-recirculation mode, the fresh air supply is adjusted depending on the air quality. Automatic air-recirculation mode can be switched on and off on the multi-purpose display. Air-recirculation mode is deactivated automatically to prevent the windows from misting at outside temperatures of less than approx. 41 °F (5 °C). For information on adjusting automatic air-recirculation mode on the multi-purpose display:


- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING AIR CONDITIONING" on page 135.

i Information

The recommended operating mode is automatic air-recirculation mode (default setting).

Air-recirculation mode

Switching on air-recirculation mode

- ▷ Press button . The indicator light on the button lights up. The outside-air supply is interrupted and only the inside air is recirculated.

Switching air-recirculation mode off

- ▷ Press button . The indicator light on the button goes out.

i Information

If the air-conditioning compressor is switched off manually or automatically, air-recirculation mode ends after approx. 3 minutes.

Information on air-conditioning compressor

The air-conditioning compressor:

- Can switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling if the engine is operating under extreme load.
- Switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 38 °F (3 °C) and cannot be switched on, even manually.
- Operates most effectively with the windows closed.

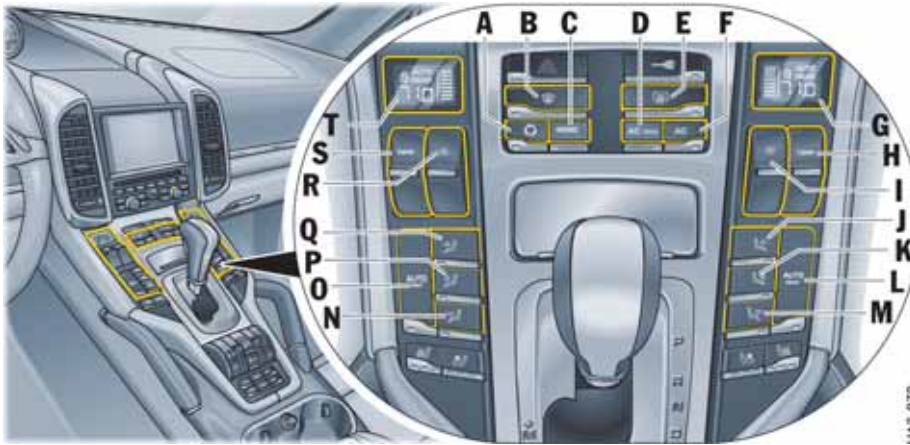
If the vehicle has been in the sun for a long time, it is a good idea to ventilate the interior briefly with the windows open.

- Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can drip from the evaporator and form a pool under the vehicle. This is normal and not a sign of leaks.

Information on automatic load switch-off

If the charging condition of the battery is critical, the following air-conditioning or heating functions are restricted initially and then switched off.

- Seat heating
- Heated rear window/External mirror heating
- Windshield heating
- Fresh-air blower
- Air-conditioning compressor



Front control panel (2-zone and 4-zone air-conditioning)

Automatically Controlled Air-Conditioning

Depending on various factors (e.g. sunlight, air quality, ambient temperature, misted windows), the air-conditioning system adjusts the preset interior temperature, air distribution and air quantity fully automatically.

Automatic mode is deactivated as soon as the settings are adjusted manually. In this case, automatic air-conditioning still regulates the air-conditioning functions that have not been modified manually.

Please read the information on:

- **REST mode**, see page 66.
- **AC mode**, see page 67.
- **AC MAX mode**, see page 67.
- **MONO mode**, see page 68.
- **Defrosting the windshield**, see page 68.
- **Air-recirculation mode**, see page 69.
- **Air-conditioning compressor**, see page 69.

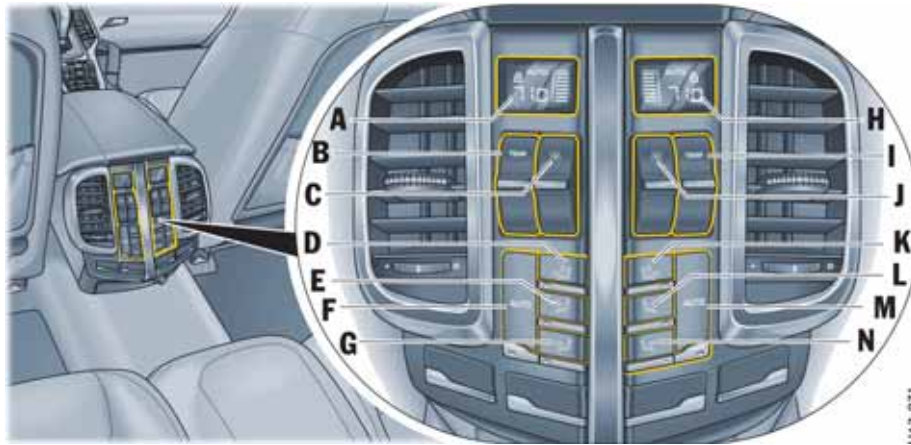
- A** - Air-recirculation mode
- B** - Defrost windshield
- C** - MONO mode
- D** - AC MAX mode
- E** - Heated rear window/door mirror heating
- F** - AC mode

Front control panel, right air-conditioned area

- G** - Air-conditioning display, right side
- H** - Temperature, right side
- I** - Air quantity, right side
- J** - Air to windshield, right side
- K** - Air to central and side vents, right side
- L** - AUTO mode, right side (automatic mode)/ REAR mode, adjust rear air-conditioned area using the front control panel (4-zone air-conditioning)
- M** - Air to footwell, right side

Front control panel, left air-conditioned area

- N** - Air to footwell, left side
- O** - AUTO mode, left side (automatic mode)/ REST mode, using engine residual heat.
- P** - Air to central and side vents, left side
- Q** - Air to windshield, left side
- R** - Air quantity, left side
- S** - Temperature, left side
- T** - Air-conditioning display, left side



Rear control panel, left air-conditioned area

- A - Air-conditioning display, left side
- B - Temperature, left side
- C - Air quantity, left side
- D - Air to door vents, central vents and to footwell, left side
- E - Air to door vents and central vents, left side
- F - AUTO mode, left side (automatic mode)
- G - Air to door vents and footwell, left side

Rear control panel, right air-conditioned area

- H - Air-conditioning display, right side
- I - Temperature, right side
- J - Air quantity, right side
- K - Air to door vents, central vents and to footwell, right side
- L - Air to door vents and central vents, right side
- M - AUTO mode, right side (automatic mode)
- N - Air to door vents and footwell, right side

Rear control panel (4-zone air-conditioning)

Switching automatic mode on/off

The front and rear air-conditioned areas can be switched to automatic mode independently of one another.

- ▷ Press button **AUTO** for the relevant air-conditioned area on the front or rear control panel.

The indicator light on the button and the AUTO indicator on the air-conditioning display light up.

Temperature, air quantity and air distribution are adjusted automatically for the relevant air-conditioned area.

i Information

If necessary, the automatic system can be controlled manually.

The manual setting is retained until the appropriate function button is pressed again or the button **AUTO** is pressed.



Temperature and air quantity, front control panel

Setting temperature

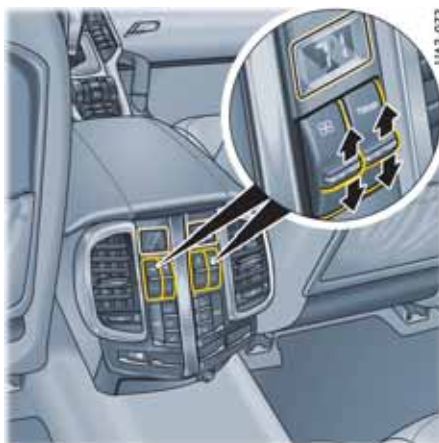
For personal comfort, the interior temperature can be adjusted individually between 61 °F (16 °C) and 86 °F (29.5 °C).

Recommendation: 72 °F (22 °C).

The selected temperature is shown on the display above the button **TEMP**.

Increasing temperature

- ▷ Press button **TEMP** for the relevant air-conditioned area upwards.
The preset temperature value is shown on the air-conditioning display.



Temperature and air quantity, rear control panel (4-zone air-conditioning)

Reducing temperature


- ▷ Press button **TEMP** for the relevant air-conditioned area downwards.
The preset temperature value is shown on the air-conditioning display.

If **LO** or **HI** appears on the display, the system is operating at maximum cooling or heating power. Automatic mode is switched off.


i Information

- If one air-conditioned area is set to **LO** or **HI**, the other air-conditioned areas are also set to **LO** or **HI**.
Pressing the button **AUTO** for the relevant air-conditioned area selects the preset temperature.
- The air-conditioning system always cools and heats the passenger compartment to the preset temperature at maximum cooling or heating temperature.
Setting the temperature temporarily to a lower or higher value does **not** cool or heat the passenger compartment to the desired temperature more quickly.


Setting air quantity

The selected air quantity is shown in a bar display above the button . The more bars that are displayed, the more air flows into the passenger compartment.


Increasing air quantity

- ▷ Press button  for the air quantity to the relevant air-conditioned area upwards.

Reducing air quantity

- ▷ Press button  for the air quantity to the relevant air-conditioned area downwards.
- Press button **AUTO** for the relevant air-conditioned area to switch back to automatic mode.
- If the air quantity was reduced so much that **OFF** appears on the air-conditioning system display, the supply of air from the outside is interrupted.

WARNING Air Shut-off Impairing Vision




- The windows can mist up if the air quantity setting is "OFF".
- ▷ Only select air quantity setting OFF for short periods.
 - ▷ If windows mist up, press  for the left and right vehicle side on the front control panel upwards (increase air quantity).



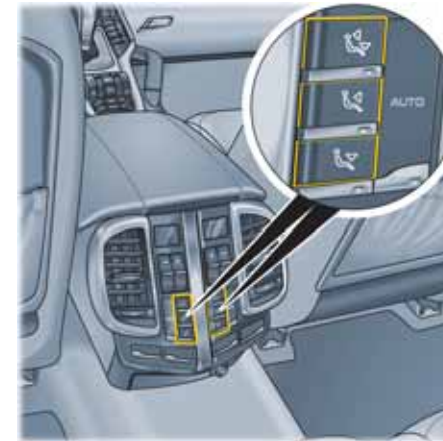
Air distribution, front control panel

Setting air distribution manually

Front control panel




- ▷ Press button .
The air flows to the windshield and the side windows.
- ▷ Press button .
The air flows from the central and side vents. The air vents must be open.
- ▷ Press button .
The air flows to the footwell.

The indicator light on the button lights up.



Air distribution, rear control panel (4-zone air-conditioning)

Rear control panel (4-zone air-conditioning)

- ▷ Press button .
The air flows from the central vents, into the footwell and from the vents in the door pillars. The air vents must be open.
- ▷ Press button .
The air flows from the central vents and from the vents in the door pillars. The air vents must be open.
- ▷ Press button .
The air flows into the footwell and from the vents in the door pillars. The indicator light on the button lights up.



Canceling manual air distribution


- ▷ Press the relevant air distribution button again. The indicator light on the button goes out.

or

- Press button **AUTO** for the relevant air-conditioned area. The indicator light on the button lights up. Air quantity and distribution are controlled automatically and variations are compensated.

Air distribution in the rear air-conditioned areas when MONO or REAR mode is activated (4-zone air-conditioning)

If the button  or  is pressed on the front control panel, air flows from the central and side vents in the rear of the vehicle.

If the button  is pressed on the front control panel, air flows into the footwells in the rear of the vehicle.

For information on MONO mode:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ACCEPTING SETTINGS FOR DRIVER'S SIDE FOR THE ENTIRE VEHICLE" on page 68.

For information on REAR mode:


- ▷ Please see the chapter "ADJUSTING REAR AIR-CONDITIONED AREAS WITH THE FRONT CONTROL PANEL – REAR MODE (4-ZONE AIR-CONDITIONING)" on page 74.



Disabling control panel for rear air-conditioned areas (4-zone air-conditioning)

The power window buttons on the rear doors and the control panel on the rear center console, except the rear central locking button, can be disabled by pressing the safety button in the control panel on the driver's door.

Switching child protection on/off

- ▷ Press the safety button . The indicator light on the button lights up when the child protection is on. A lock symbol appears in the displays on the operating unit for the rear air-conditioned areas.



Adjusting rear air-conditioned areas with the front control panel – REAR mode (4-zone air-conditioning)

The rear air-conditioned areas can be controlled using the relevant front control panels for the air-conditioning system on vehicles with 4-zone air-conditioning.

Switching on REAR mode

- Press button **AUTO REAR** and keep it pressed for approx. **2 seconds**. REAR appears on the air-conditioning display. The rear air-conditioned areas can be controlled from the front control panel.

Switching off REAR mode

- ▷ Press button **AUTO REAR** and keep it pressed for approx. 2 seconds. REAR disappears from the display.

i Information

The function is ended automatically approximately 4 seconds after the last settings are adjusted. REAR disappears from the display.

Recommended air-conditioning settings for lone drivers

MONO mode is recommended for maximum passenger compartment comfort.

For information on activating MONO mode:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ACCEPTING SETTINGS FOR DRIVER'S SIDE FOR THE ENTIRE VEHICLE" on page 68.

Reducing the air quantity in the rear air-conditioned areas does not improve passenger comfort in the front areas (4-zone air-conditioning only).

For information on adjusting the air quantity:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING AIR QUANTITY" on page 73.

Extended ventilation panel

The extended ventilation panel on top of the dashboard can be activated or deactivated separately in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel.

The air flow in the passenger compartment is more diffuse and less direct.

The automatic control on the air-conditioning system adjusts the air flow quantity automatically.

For information on activating the extended ventilation control:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING AIR CONDITIONING" on page 135.

Air vents

Opening air vents

- ▷ Turn rotary knob clockwise.

Closing air vents

- ▷ Turn rotary knob counter-clockwise.



Cooled glove compartment

Cooled air is directed into the glove compartment via a separate air vent.

The air vent can be opened and closed manually. Cold air may flow around the glove compartment lid and into the passenger compartment.

- ▷ If the outside temperature is low, close the air vents in the glove compartment to ensure the passenger compartment is heated as efficiently as possible.

Air-conditioning settings on the multi-purpose display

Additional settings relating to vehicle air-conditioning can be adjusted in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel.

For information on air-conditioning settings on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “SETTING AIR CONDITIONING” on page 135.

Air flow

Three air flow settings are available in automatic mode:

- **“Soft”**:
Recommended for passengers sensitive to drafts with a preference for gentle air-conditioning.
- **“Normal”**:
Default setting.
- **“Strong”**:
Stronger ventilation in the passenger compartment.
The air flow is clearly noticeable.

Extended ventilation panel

For information on the extended ventilation panel:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXTENDED VENTILATION PANEL” on page 75.

Automatic air-recirculation

For information on automatic air-recirculation mode:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “AIR-RECIRCULATION MODE” on page 69.




Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating

The heated rear window/door mirror heating is ready for operation when the engine is running.

Switching on

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Switching off


- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button goes out.



Windshield Heating

Windshield heating is ready for operation when the engine is running.

Switching on

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button lights up.
Depending on the outside temperature, the heating switches off automatically after approx. 1 to 4 minutes.

Switching off

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button goes out.

Parking Heater

The parking heater can be used to heat the interior of the vehicle and defrost the windshield without having the engine running.



DANGER

Fire Hazard / Parking Heater

The combustion exhaust gases released during operation of the parking heater are very hot and will ignite flammable materials near the underside of the car body.

- ▷ Turn off the parking heater before refueling or entering a gasoline station.
- ▷ Do not park the vehicle near flammable materials of any type. Make sure that there is good airflow under the vehicle which will allow the hot exhaust gases to escape freely at the underside of the body.



WARNING

Parking Heater in Enclosed Areas

The parking heater burns fuel. This produces toxic exhaust gases, which are released under the floor of the vehicle.

- ▷ Do not operate the parking heater in enclosed spaces (e.g. in a garage).

Operational readiness

The parking heater can be used regardless of the ignition lock position:

- When the engine is not running.
- When outside temperatures are less than approx. 15 °C.
- When there is sufficient fuel in the tank (reserve not reached).
- When the battery is sufficiently charged.



Information

When the parking heater is activated for the first time after not being used for a long time, e.g. after the summer, it may take two attempts to switch it on in rare cases if the parking heater does not start at the first attempt.

Operating the parking heater

The parking heater is operated using the parking heater button in the center console or using the “Auxiliary heater” menu in the multi-purpose display.

When the ignition is switched off, the parking heater prevents the windshield from misting up and frosting over and automatically maintains a comfortable interior temperature independently of the air-conditioning settings.


When the ignition is switched on, the air quantity, air distribution and temperature can be adjusted individually while the parking heater is on.

The parking heater switches off automatically when the engine is started or after max. 30 minutes.



Switching parking heater on/off at the control panel in the center console


Switching on

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button lights up when the parking heater is activated.

Information

Once the parking heater is activated, it can sometimes take several minutes for the interior to warm up.


Switching off

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button goes out.

Switching parking heater on/off in the multi-purpose display

The parking heater can be switched on and off in the multi-purpose display when the ignition is switched on.


- ▷ Please see the chapter “OPERATING PARKING HEATER ON THE MULTI-FUNCTION DISPLAY” on page 115.

The indicator light on the parking heater button  in the center console lights up when the parking heater is activated.

Programming a timer in the multi-function display

A switch-on time for automatic activation of the parking heater can be programmed in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “PROGRAMMING THE PARKING HEATER/TIMER” on page 115.

If a timer is activated, the indicator light on the parking heater button  in the center console will start to flash when the ignition is switched off and will continue flashing until the vehicle is locked, but only for max. 30 seconds.

Windows and Sliding Roofs

| | |
|--|----|
| Power Windows..... | 80 |
| Sliding/Lifting Roof..... | 83 |
| Panorama Roof System | 85 |
| Emergency Operation of Sliding/Lifting Roof or Panorama Roof System | 88 |

Power Windows

⚠ WARNING Power Window Operation

When opening and closing the windows, particularly in one-touch operation, parts of the body could become trapped between the moving window and fixed parts of the vehicle.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when the windows close.
- ▷ Always remove ignition key when leaving the vehicle or switch ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive. Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons could injure themselves by operating the power windows.
- ▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

⚠ WARNING Blocking the Driver's Vision

- ▷ Do not put anything on or near the windows that may interfere with the driver's vision.

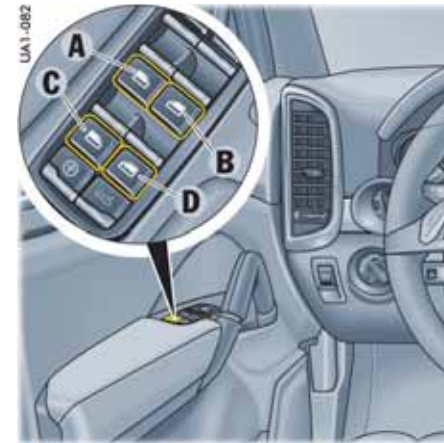
i Information

- ▷ Always keep the side windows closed while driving off-road.

Operational readiness of power windows

The power windows are ready for operation:

- With ignition switched on.
- After the ignition is switched off and before the driver's or passenger's door is first opened, but for a maximum of 10 minutes. One-touch operation for closing the door windows is available only when the ignition is switched on.



- A** - Power window in driver's door
- B** - Power window in passenger's door
- C** - Left rear power window
- D** - Right rear power window

Opening/closing windows

Opening window with the rocker switch

- ▷ Press rocker switch for the relevant window until the window has reached the desired position.

Closing window with the rocker switch

- ▷ Pull rocker switch for the relevant window until the window has reached the desired position.



Power window switch in the passenger's door

i Information

The rocker switches have a two-stage function. These two detent positions can be felt clearly when you actuate the switch.

- **First setting – manual operation**
If the switch in question is moved to the first setting, the window is opened or closed manually.
The window stops when the switch is released.
- **Second setting – one-touch operation**
If the switch in question is moved completely to the second setting, the window is opened or closed automatically.
Actuate the switch again to stop the window at the desired position.



Power window switch in the rear door

i Information

If a window is blocked during closing, it will stop and open again by several inches. If the window is blocked a second time within approximately 10 seconds, one-touch operation is disabled for this window. The window can be closed manually. The window then closes with its full closing force. One-touch operation is enabled again once the window has been closed completely using the manual closing function or after 10 seconds if the switch is not actuated again.

⚠ WARNING Manual Functioning of Power Windows

If one-touch operation is disabled after the window is blocked, the window will close with its full closing force when the manual closing function is used.

- ▷ Take care to ensure that nobody can be injured when the windows close.



Storing end position of the door windows after connecting the vehicle battery

The end positions of the door windows are lost when the battery is disconnected and reconnected. One-touch operation of the windows is disabled.

Perform these steps for all windows:

1. Close the window completely **once** by pulling the rocker switch.
2. If the window is completely closed, briefly pull the rocker switch again.
3. Open the window completely **once** by pressing the rocker switch.

Disabling the controls in the rear

The power window buttons on the rear doors and the control panel on the rear center console, except the rear central locking button, can be disabled by pressing the safety button in the control panel on the driver's door.

Switching child protection on/off

- ▷ Press the safety button .
The indicator light in the safety button lights up if child protection is active.

Sliding/Lifting Roof

The electric sliding/lifting roof is made of tinted single-sheet safety glass. It has a sliding roof cover that can be continuously adjusted manually to protect against the direct entry of sunlight. The sliding/lifting roof can be slid open or lifted at the rear.

WARNING

Sliding Roof Operation

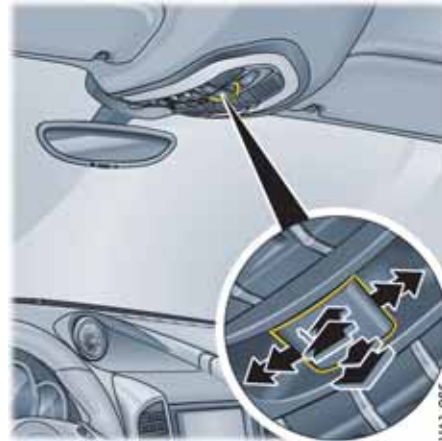
If there are persons or animals in the movement range of the sliding/lifting roof, parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Take care to ensure that nobody can be injured when the sliding/lifting roof is operated.
- ▷ Always remove ignition key when leaving the vehicle or switch ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive. Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons (e.g. children) could injure themselves when operating the sliding/lifting roof.
- ▷ In case of danger, operate the sliding roof button in the opposite direction.


Operational readiness of the sliding/lifting roof

The sliding/lifting roof is ready for operation:

- With ignition switched on.
- After the ignition is switched off and before the driver's or passenger's door is first opened, but for a maximum of 10 minutes.



Operating sliding/lifting roof

The sliding/lifting roof is operated using the button  in the overhead operating console.

The sliding roof button has a two-stage function for all directions of motion. These two detent positions can be felt clearly when you actuate the switch.

- **First setting – manual operation**

If the button is moved to the first setting in one direction, the sliding/lifting roof is adjusted manually in the relevant direction.

Adjustment stops when the button is released.

- **Second setting – one-touch operation**

If the button is moved completely to the second setting, the sliding/lifting roof is opened or closed automatically.

Actuate the switch again in any direction to stop the sliding/lifting roof in the desired position.


Information

- The sliding/lifting roof does not function at extremely high vehicle speeds or at extremely low temperatures.
- The sliding/lifting roof has a force limiter. If obstructed during the closing process, the sliding/lifting roof opens again immediately.

Noise-optimized position when opening

The sliding/lifting roof slides open both in manual mode and one-touch operation mode until it reaches the best end position from the point of view of noise.

Opening sliding/lifting roof fully

Actuate the button  again in opening direction to open the sliding/lifting roof fully. When fully opened, the sliding/lifting roof may generate wind noise depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Storing end position of the sliding/lifting roof

The end positions of the sliding/lifting roof are lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected/reconnected or flat, after emergency starting with jumper cables, the electrical fuse for the sliding/lifting roof is replaced or after emergency operation.


WARNING

Sliding Roof Closing

When storing the end position, the force limiter is not available and the sliding/lifting roof will close with full force.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when the sliding/lifting roof closes.

The vehicle must be stationary in order to store the end position for the sliding/lifting roof.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press button  forward in closing direction and hold in position.

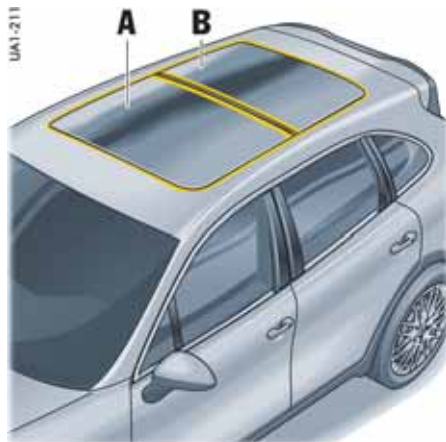
The process for storing the end position begins after approximately 10 seconds. Press and hold the button until the roof has stopped moving completely.

The process takes a maximum of 20 seconds. Start the storing process again if the button is released before the roof has stopped moving completely.

Emergency operation of sliding/lifting roof

If the sliding/lifting roof is defective, it can be closed or opened manually using a hexagon key.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION OF SLIDING/LIFTING ROOF OR PANORAMA ROOF SYSTEM" on page 88.



A - Sliding/lifting roof element
B - Fixed glass element

Panorama Roof System

The Panorama roof system comprises two roof elements.

Roof element A can be moved in the vehicle's longitudinal direction by actuating the switch. It can also be raised. This allows improved interior ventilation.

Roof element B is a fixed glass element and completes the Panorama roof system system.

⚠ WARNING

Roof System Operation

If there are persons or animals in the movement range of the Panorama roof system, parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when operating the Panorama roof system.
- ▷ Always remove ignition key when leaving the vehicle or switch ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive. Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons (e.g. children) could injure themselves by operating the Panorama roof system.
- ▷ In case of danger, press the Panorama roof system button in the opposite direction.

NOTICE

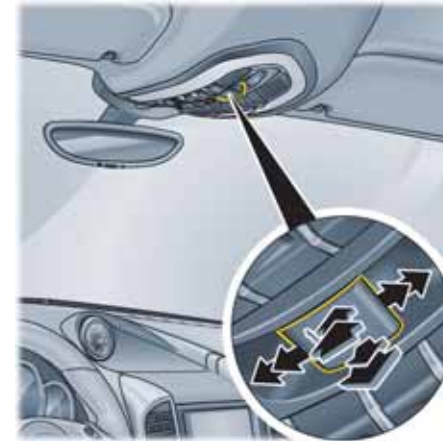
Risk of damage when operating the Panorama roof system if roof attachments are not fitted correctly.

- ▷ Check that the roof attachments are properly fitted before starting to drive.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient clearance between the Panorama roof system and the fitted roof attachments.


Operational readiness of the Panorama roof system

The Panorama roof system is ready for operation:

- When the ignition is switched on.
- After the ignition is switched off and before the driver's or passenger's door is first opened, but for a maximum of 10 minutes.



Operating the Panorama roof system

The Panorama roof system is operated using the switch  in the overhead operating console. The sliding roof switch has a two-stage function for all directions of motion. These two detent positions can be felt clearly when you actuate the switch.

- First setting – manual operation

If the switch is moved to the first setting in one direction, the Panorama roof system is adjusted manually in the relevant direction. Adjustment stops when the button is released.


- Second setting – one-touch operation

If the switch is moved completely to the second setting, the Panorama roof system is opened or closed automatically. Actuate the switch again in any direction to stop the Panorama roof system at the desired position.

i Information

The Panorama roof system does not function at extremely high vehicle speeds or at extremely low temperatures.

Opening the Panorama roof system fully

Actuate the switch  again in opening direction to open the Panorama roof system fully. When fully opened, the Panorama roof system may generate wind noise, depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Storing end position of the Panorama roof system

The end positions of the Panorama roof system are lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected/reconnected or flat, after emergency starting with jumper cables, the electrical fuse for the Panorama roof system is replaced or after emergency operation.

i Information

The end position of the roll-up sunblind may also have to be stored.

- ▷ Always store the end position of the roof and sunblind completely one after the other. If the process for storing the end position is interrupted, the process cannot be started for the other drive mechanism.

For information on storing the end position of the roll-up sunblind:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "STORING END POSITION OF THE ROLL-UP SUNBLIND" on page 87.


⚠ WARNING

Storing Roof End Position

When storing the end position, the force limiter is not available and the Panorama roof system will close with full force.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when closing the Panorama roof system.

The vehicle must be stationary in order to store the end position of the Panorama roof system.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press button  forward in closing direction and hold in position.

The process for storing the end position begins after approximately 10 seconds.

Press and hold the button until the roof has stopped moving completely.

The process takes a maximum of 45 seconds.

Start the storing process again if the button is released before the roof has stopped moving completely.

Emergency operation of the Panorama roof system

If the Panorama roof system is defective, it can be closed or opened manually using a hexagon key.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION OF SLIDING/LIFTING ROOF OR PANORAMA ROOF SYSTEM" on page 88.



Roll-up sunblind

A roll-up sunblind is integrated in the Panorama roof system and can be adjusted by actuating the rocker switch in the roof console.

Opening/closing roll-up sunblind

The rocker switch has a two-stage function:

- **First setting – manual operation**
If the rocker switch is pressed to the first setting, the roll-up sunblind opens or closes for as long as the rocker switch is actuated.
- **Second setting – one-touch operation**
If the rocker switch is pressed completely, the roll-up sunblind opens or closes to its end position.

To open the roll-up sunblind:

- ▷ Press rocker switch back.

To close the roll-up sunblind:

- ▷ Press rocker switch forward.

Memory function while closing

The roof and roll-up sunblind cannot be closed at the same time.

- If the rocker switch is pressed to the second stage (one-touch operation) while closing the roof, the roll-up sunblind closes to its end position after the roof has reached its end position.
- If the roof is closed (one-touch operation) while closing the roll-up sunblind, the closing movement of the roll-up sunblind will be interrupted. The roll-up sunblind closes to its end position after the roof has reached its end position.

Automatic opening of roll-up sunblind

If the roof is opened while the roll-up sunblind is closed, the roll-up sunblind also opens automatically.

- When the roof is opened in the vehicle's longitudinal direction, the roll-up sunblind also opens automatically.
- When the roof is opened in the tilt position, the roll-up sunblind also opens automatically by approx. 10 cm (ventilation position).

i Information

When the roof is in tilt position, the roll-up sunblind can only be closed as far as ventilation position.

Storing end position of the roll-up sunblind

The end positions of the roll-up sunblind are lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected/reconnected or flat, after emergency starting with jumper cables, if the electrical fuse for the roll-up sunblind is replaced or after emergency operation.

i Information

The end position of the Panorama roof system may also have to be stored.

- ▷ Always store the end position of the roof and roll-up sunblind completely one after the other. If the process for storing the end position is interrupted, the process cannot be started for the other drive mechanism.

For information on storing the end position of the Panorama roof system:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "STORING END POSITION OF THE PANORAMA ROOF SYSTEM" on page 86.

⚠ WARNING Rollup Sun Blind Operation

When storing the end position, the force limiter is not available and the roll-up sunblind will close with full force.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when closing the roll-up sunblind.

The vehicle must be stationary in order to store the end position of the roll-up sunblind. The Panorama roof system and roll-up sunblind must be closed.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the rocker switch forward in closing direction and hold in position.
The process for storing the end position begins after approximately 10 seconds. Press and hold the switch until the roll-up sunblind has stopped moving completely. The process takes a maximum of 45 seconds. Start the storing process again if the switch is released before the roll-up sunblind has stopped moving completely.

Roll-up sunblind cleaning function

The vehicle must be stationary in order to activate the roll-up sunblind cleaning function.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Open the Panorama roof system completely.
3. Close the roll-up sunblind as far as possible.
4. Press and hold the rocker switch forward.
The roll-up sunblind starts to close after 3 seconds. Keep the rocker switch pressed until the roll-up sunblind is closed fully.
5. Remove dirt (e.g. leaves).

To exit the cleaning function:

- ▷ Drive off. The roll-up sunblind opens automatically.

or

Operate the Panorama roof system. The roll-up sunblind opens automatically.

or

Open the roll-up sunblind with the rocker switch.

Emergency Operation of Sliding/Lifting Roof or Panorama Roof System




WARNING

Roof Operation

If there are persons or animals in the movement range of the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system, parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.

- ▷ Make sure that nobody can be injured when operating the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system.

Emergency closing after repeated intervention from the force limiter

- ▷ Remove the obstruction.
- ▷ Repeatedly press or press and hold the switch  in closing direction until the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system closes and stops in closed position.

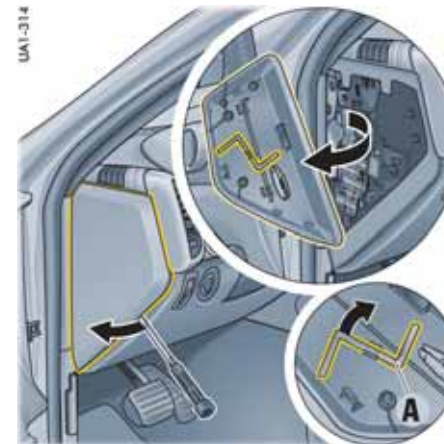
Emergency operation if the roof drive mechanism fails

If the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system is defective, it can be closed or opened manually using a hexagon key.

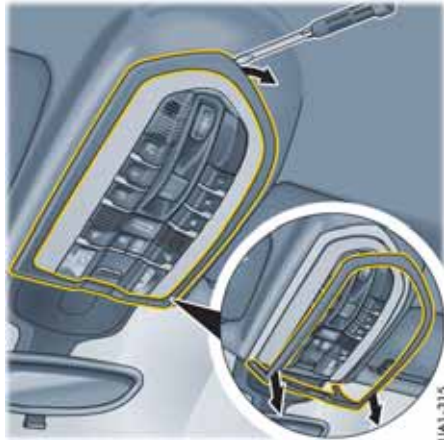
- ▷ Before using emergency operation, check whether the fuse has blown.

For information on checking the electric fuse:

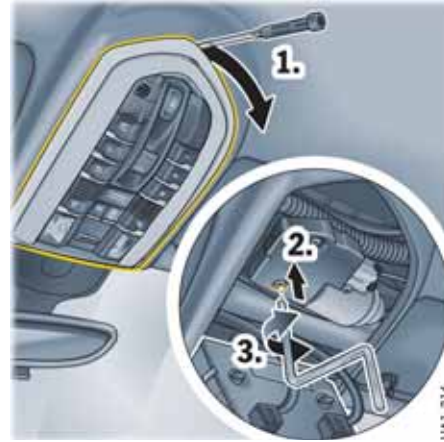
- ▷ Please see the chapter "CHANGING FUSES" on page 286.



1. Take the hexagon key **A** out of the closing element in the instrument panel on the driver's side.



2. Unclip the clip-on frame on the overhead operating console using your finger or a screwdriver and carefully pull it down. Make sure not to damage the clip-on frame.
3. Remove the clip-on frame completely.
4. Unclip the overhead operating console in a downward direction using your finger or a screwdriver and fold it down.



5. Insert the key fully into the motor and turn it either to the left or right, depending on whether you want to open or close the roof. Press the key up while turning it so that it does not slip out and become damaged.
 6. Remove the key and put it back in its storage position.
 7. Clip in the overhead operating console and clip-on frame.
- ▷ Have the fault remedied at your authorized Porsche dealer.

Lights, Turn Signals and Windshield Wipers

| | |
|--|----|
| Light Switch | 91 |
| Automatic Driving Light Assistant | 91 |
| Instrument Lighting | 93 |
| Turn Signal/High Beam/Headlight Flasher Stalk | 94 |
| Emergency Flasher | 94 |
| Light Fault or Failure | 95 |
| Interior Lighting | 96 |
| Brief Overview – Windshield Wipers..... | 98 |
| Windshield Wiper/Washer Stalk | 99 |



☀ Light Switch

- **Light is switched off**
 When the ignition is switched on, the daytime driving lights will come on provided they are activated in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel. For information on activating/deactivating daytime driving lights:
 ▷ Please see the chapter “ACTIVATING AND DEACTIVATING AUTOMATIC DAYTIME DRIVING LIGHTS” on page 132.

AUTO Automatic driving light assistant

- ☞ **Side lights**
 Side marker lights, license plate light, instrument lighting, daytime driving lights switched off.

☞ **Low beam/driving light**

Only with ignition on.

☞ **Fog lights**

Pull switch to first click in low beam or side light position. Indicator light lights up.

☞ **Rear fog light**

Pull switch to second click in low beam or side light position. Indicator light lights up.

i Information

If the ignition key is removed and the door is opened while the lights are on, an audible signal (gong) warns of possible battery discharge.
 In some countries, differences are possible due to legal requirements.

Automatic Driving Light Assistant

The automatic driving light assistant is a comfort function. Your Porsche's driving light (low beam) is switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The automatic driving light assistant also controls the daytime driving lights, the automatic Coming Home lights and the dynamic cornering light.

The automatic driving light assistant is activated when the light switch is set to the position **AUTO**. Despite possible support by automatic driving light assistant, it is the responsibility of the driver to switch on the driving light using the conventional light switch in accordance with the relevant national regulations.

⚠ WARNING Automatic Lights

Activating the headlights using the automatic driving light assistant function therefore does not absolve the driver of responsibility for correct operation of the driving headlights and running lights.

- ▷ Always carefully monitor the automatic driving light control.

Information

In the event of a fault in the automatic driving light assistant/Porsche Dynamic Lighting System (PDLS), the PDLS warning light in the instrument panel lights up and a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.


For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Low beam/driving light

If the light switch is set to the position **AUTO**, the low beam is switched on automatically in the following situations:

- Dusk
- Darkness
- Driving through tunnels
- Rain
- Highway driving (with daytime driving lights deactivated)

When the low beam is switched on, the green indicator light  on the speedometer lights up.

Information

Fog is not recognized.

- ▷ In the event of fog, the driving light must be switched on manually.

Highway function in daylight

The low beam is switched on automatically at vehicle speeds of more than approx. 90 mph (140 km/h) in daylight conditions and when daytime driving lights are deactivated.

If you are traveling at a speed of less than approx. 40 mph (65 km/h), the low beam is switched off after a delay of approx. 4 minutes if the external lighting conditions permit.

Rain function

The low beam is switched on automatically after five seconds of continuous wiper operation.


If the wipers have not been used for approx. 4 minutes, the low beam is switched off.

Automatic headlight leveling

When the ignition and low beam are switched on, the level of the headlight beam automatically changes in accordance with the vehicle load.

The level of the headlight beam is automatically kept constant during acceleration and braking on vehicles with Xenon headlights.


Information

Automatic headlight leveling is also available when the light switch is set to the position  (low beam/driving light).

Daytime driving lights

If the light switch is set to position **•** (light switched off), the daytime driving lights come on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

If the light switch is set to position **AUTO**, the daytime driving lights come on automatically in bright conditions and when the ignition is switched on.

The daytime driving lights are not active when the light switch is set to position  (low beam/driving light).

You can switch the daytime driving lights on and off on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel (not available in Canada).

Regulations for switching daytime driving lights on and off vary according to the legal requirements in each country.

For information on setting the daytime driving lights:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ACTIVATING AND DEACTIVATING AUTOMATIC DAYTIME DRIVING LIGHTS" on page 132.

Automatic Coming Home lights (Welcome Home function/Entry function)

Switching on automatic Coming Home lights

- ▷ Set light switch to **AUTO**.

The following lights remain switched on for a certain period to allow you to get in and out of your vehicle safely and with improved visibility in darkness:

- Daytime driving lights,
- Courtesy lights in the door mirrors (on vehicles with comfort memory),
- Front and rear side marker lights,
- License plate lights.

Welcome Home function (off delay)

When the vehicle is locked, the lights remain switched on for the duration of the off delay preset on the multi-purpose display.

For information on adjusting the off delay of the external lights on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “ADJUSTING EXTERIOR LIGHTS” on page 132.

Porsche Dynamic Lighting System (PDLS)

Static cornering light

The static cornering light is activated in darkness and when the light switch is set to position **AUTO** or **D**. The function is available at speeds of up to 80 mph (130 km/h) and switches on when the steering wheel is turned.

The static cornering light is not switched on when high beam is activated.

Dynamic cornering light

At speeds greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the low beam or high beam headlight is swivelled in the direction of the curve to illuminate the road more clearly, depending on the speed of the vehicle and the extent to which the steering wheel is turned.

In the event of a fault in the dynamic cornering light, the PDLS warning light in the instrument panel starts flashing and a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Highway function in darkness

The distribution characteristics of the low beam change when driving in darkness at vehicle speeds of more than approx. 80 mph (130 km/h). The light beam becomes longer and the field of vision increases.



Instrument Lighting

The lighting is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness by the light sensor **B**. In addition, when the vehicle lighting is switched on, the instrument and switch brightness can be adjusted manually.

- ▷ Turn adjustment button **A** in the appropriate direction and hold until the desired brightness has been reached.

WARNING

Reaching Through Steering Wheel Spokes

You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes when driving since your arm can be trapped and block the turning of the steering wheel.



Turn Signal/High Beam/Headlight Flasher Stalk

Turn signals, low beam and high beam are ready for operation when the ignition is on.


- 1 – Turn signal light, left
- 2 – Turn signal light, right

Push the stalk to the upper or lower pressure point – turn signals flash three times

3 – High beam headlight

4 – Headlight flasher

Stalk in center position – low beam

When the high beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is operated, the blue indicator light  on the tachometer lights up.

Parking light

The parking light can only be switched on when the ignition is switched off.

- ▷ Move the stalk up or down to switch on the right or left parking light.

If the parking light is switched on, the message “Parking light on” will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel after the ignition is switched off and when the door is opened.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.



Emergency Flasher

The emergency flasher can be switched on regardless of the position of the ignition lock.

- ▷ Press the emergency flasher button on the center console.

All turn signal lights, the indicator light in the button and the turn signal indicator lights on the tachometer flash when the button is operated.

If the emergency flasher remains active for longer periods, the illumination phase of the flashing interval is shortened to preserve the lights.

Automatic activation of emergency flasher in the event of an accident

The emergency flasher is activated automatically in the event of an accident.

- ▷ To deactivate the emergency flasher, switch the ignition off and then on again.

For information on switching the ignition on and off:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "IGNITION LOCK, STEERING LOCK" on page 148.

⚠ DANGER

Emergency Stopping

Other vehicles could collide with your vehicle if you are parked in a dangerous position.

- ▷ Whenever stalled or stopped for emergency repairs, move the car well off the road. Switch on the emergency flasher and mark the car with road flares or other warning devices.
- ▷ Do not remain in the car. Someone approaching from the rear may not realize your vehicle is stopped and cause a collision.

⚠ WARNING

Hot Exhaust System and Tailpipe

Exhaust fumes and the exhaust system are very hot when the engine is running. The exhaust system (including the tailpipe) remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- ▷ Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.

⚠ WARNING

Engine Heat Danger When Working

The engine and surrounding components become very hot when the engine is running.

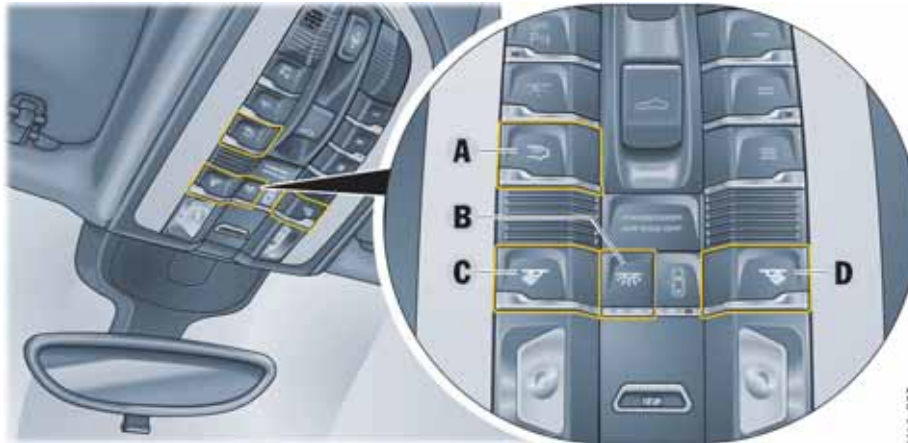
- ▷ Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently.

Light Fault or Failure

A message will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if a vehicle light has a fault or fails.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.



- A - Button for rear interior light
- B - Button for front interior lights
- C - Button for front reading light, left
- D - Button for front reading light, right

Interior Lighting

Interior lights

Switching front interior light on and off

- ▷ Press button **B**.

Switching rear interior light on and off

- ▷ Press button **A** in the front overhead operating console **or** button **E** above the relevant door.

Dimming (brightness adjustment)

- ▷ Press button **B** for the front interior light **or** button **E** for the relevant rear interior light and hold for at least 1 second until the desired level of brightness is reached.

Reading lights

Switching front reading lights on and off

- ▷ Press button **C** or **D**.

Switching rear reading lights on and off

- ▷ Press button **E** above the relevant door.



- E - Button for rear reading and interior lights

Dimming (brightness adjustment)

- ▷ Press button **C** or **D** for the front reading light **or** button **E** for the relevant rear reading light and hold for at least 1 second until the desired level of brightness is reached.



Switching automatic interior lighting on and off

- ▷ Press button **F**.

When automatic interior lighting is switched off, the indicator light in the button lights up.

When automatic interior lighting is switched on and once it gets dark, the interior lighting is

- **switched on** when a door or the tailgate is unlocked or opened, when the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock or when the steering wheel is locked on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
- **switched off** when the door or tailgate is closed, after a delay of approx. 120 seconds. The off delay time can be preset on the multi-purpose display.

UA1-094

The interior lighting goes out as soon as the ignition is switched on or the vehicle is locked. For information on setting the off delay for the interior light:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING INTERIOR LIGHTING OFF DELAY" on page 133.

Orientation lighting

Lights in the front operating console, the inner door handles, the storage trays and the rear light units help vehicle occupants to locate important controls in the vehicle in darkness and ensure better overall orientation. The lights are switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off again automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Dimming (brightness adjustment)

The brightness of the orientation lighting is adjusted on the multi-purpose display.

For information on adjusting the brightness of the orientation lighting:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ADJUSTING BRIGHTNESS OF ORIENTATION LIGHTING" on page 133.

Ambient lighting

If the vehicle is driven at night, a discreet light provides subtle illumination for the passenger compartment. The ambient lighting is switched off automatically when the vehicle is locked.



Switching ambient lighting on and off

- ▷ Press button **G**.

Dimming (brightness adjustment)

- ▷ Press button **G** for dimming the ambient lighting and hold for at least 1 second until the desired level of brightness is reached.

Automatic interior light switch-off function

In darkness, the interior lighting is switched off 16 minutes after the engine stops to preserve the vehicle battery.

- ▷ In daylight conditions, interior lights that were switched on manually are switched off automatically after 3 minutes.

UA1-095

Brief Overview – Windshield Wipers

This brief overview does not replace the information provided under “windshield wiper/washer stalk”. Warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Windshield wiper stalk



Rain sensor switch

| What do I want to do? | What do I have to do? |
|--|---|
| Wipe automatically at front (rain sensor) | Press the stalk to detent position 1 . |
| Adjust rain sensor | Adjust switch A in the stalk upwards (wipe more often) or downwards (wipe less often). |
| Wipe at front | Slow: Press the stalk to detent position 2 . Fast: Press the stalk to detent position 3 . Once: Briefly move stalk to position 4 (holding stalk in position 4 accelerates wiping action). |
| Spray and wipe at front | Pull stalk to position 5 and hold. |
| Wipe at rear (intermittent wiping) | Push switch B upwards to detent position INT . |
| Spray and wipe at rear | Push switch B all the way down or all the way up from detent position INT . |

Windshield Wiper/Washer Stalk

CAUTION Cleaning Windshield

The windshield wipers can start wiping unintentionally when switched on.

- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers before cleaning the windshield to avoid unintentional operation (rain sensor operation).

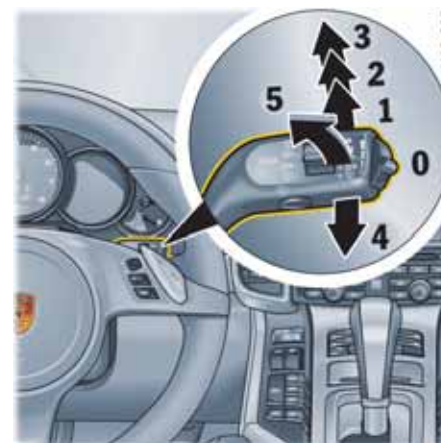
NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine compartment lid, windshield and wiper system.

- ▷ Only wipe the windshield when sufficiently wet, otherwise it could become scratched.
- ▷ Loosen frozen wiper blades before starting to drive.
- ▷ Do not operate a frozen headlight washer system.
- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers in car washes to prevent them wiping unintentionally (rain sensor operation).
- ▷ Do not operate headlight washer system in car washes.
- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers before cleaning the windshield to avoid unintentional operation (rain sensor operation).
- ▷ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.

- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers before opening the engine compartment lid (wiper switch in position **0**). If the wiper arms are not in their end position, they will automatically move to this position when the engine compartment lid is opened, even if the ignition is switched off.

The wiper arms remain at this position until the lid is closed and the wiper system is switched off and then on again.



Front wiper and headlight washer system

0 – ● OFF Windshield wipers off

When the windshield wipers are switched off and occasionally when the ignition is switched off, the wipers move up slightly from their rest position so that the wiping edges are aligned correctly.

1 – ▲ INT Rain sensor operation

Front windshield wipers

Move wiper stalk upwards to the first click.

2 – ▲ LO Front windshield wipers – slow

Move wiper stalk upwards to the second click.

3 – ▲ **HI Front windshield wipers – fast**
Move wiper stalk upwards to the third click.

4 – ▼ **One-touch operation Front windshield wipers**

Move wiper stalk downwards.

The front windshield wipers carry out one wiping cycle.

Actuate wiper stalk for longer to perform faster wiping cycles.

5 – **Front windshield wiper and washer system**

Pull wiper stalk towards the steering wheel. The washer system wipes and sprays while the stalk is pulled towards the steering wheel.

When the wiper stalk is released, a few drying wipes are performed.

After every 10 wipes on the windshield, the headlights are cleaned automatically.

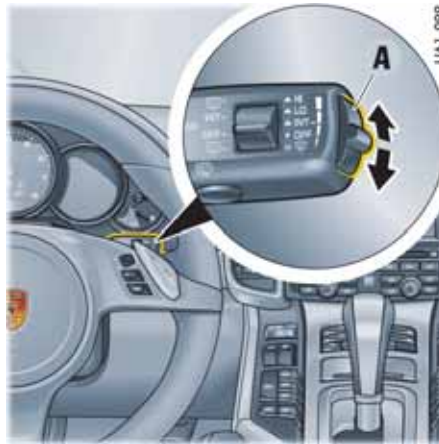
i Information

- ▷ If heavily soiled, repeat wash.
- ▷ Persistent dirt (e.g. insect remains) should be removed regularly.

For information on car care:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS" on page 255.

The **front windshield washer nozzles** are heated when the ignition is on, as a precaution against freezing. However, this does not replace the use of antifreeze.



Rain sensor operation, front windshield wipers

In rain sensor mode, the amount of rain on the windshield is measured. Wiper speed is automatically adjusted accordingly.

Rain sensor operation is activated automatically at speeds of less than approx. 2 mph (4 km/h) if the windshield wiper is switched on. If you exceed a speed of approx. 5 mph (8 km/h), the system switches to the preselected wiper setting.

The rain sensor remains switched off if the wiper stalk is already in position **1** when the ignition is switched on.

To switch the rain sensor on again:

- ▷ Move wiper stalk to position **0** and then to position **1**. Switch-on is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

or

Operate windshield washer system **5**.

Switch-on is confirmed by three wipes of the windshield.

or

Change the sensitivity of the rain sensor using switch **A**.

i Information

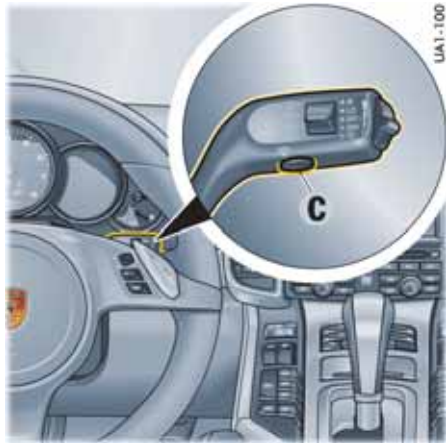
In the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel, you can configure the rain sensor to activate automatically when the ignition is switched on and the wiper stalk is set to position **1**.

For information on adjusting rain sensor activation when the ignition is switched on:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING RAIN SENSOR ACTIVATION" on page 133.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity

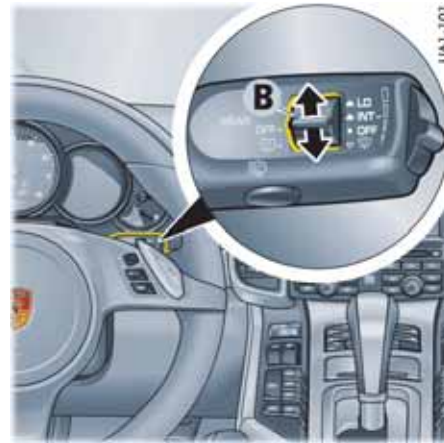
- ▷ Move switch **A upwards – high sensitivity**. The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.
- ▷ Move switch **A downwards – low sensitivity**.



Headlight washer system

The washer sprays only while low beam or high beam is activated.

- ▷ Press button **C** under the wiper stalk.
- ▷ After every 10 wipes on the windshield, the headlights are cleaned automatically as well. The wipe count starts from zero again when the low beam is switched off.



Rear window wiper

Switching on intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▷ Push switch **B** up to detent position **INT**.

Switching off intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▷ Push switch **B** down to detent position **OFF**.

Manual wiping/washing

- ▷ Push switch **B** on the wiper stalk down from detent position **OFF** or up from detent position **INT**.
The washer system wipes as long as the switch is pressed down.
When the wiper stalk is released, a few drying wipes are performed.

Switching on the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged

In the multi-purpose display, you can configure the rear wiper to automatically perform a series of wipes when it rains or when the windshield wipers are used while reverse gear is engaged.

For information on adjusting the automatic rear wiper function:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “SETTING ACTIVATION OF THE REAR WIPER WHEN REVERSE GEAR IS ENGAGED” on page 134.

Information

- ▷ Clean the wiper blades with window cleaner at regular intervals, especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash.

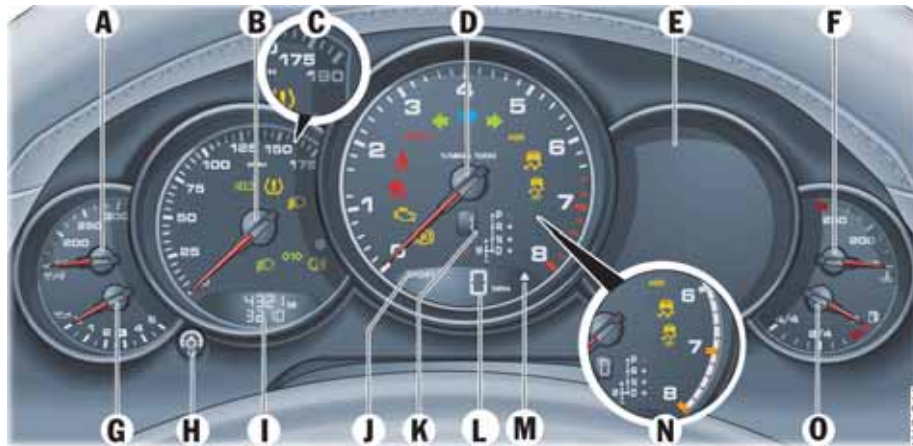
We recommend Porsche window cleaner. If the wiper blades are very dirty (e.g. soiled with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this may be due to the following:

- If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, wax residues may adhere to the windshield. These wax residues can be removed only by using window cleaner concentrate.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “ADDING WASHER FLUID” on page 247.
- ▷ Contact your authorized Porsche dealer for more information.
- The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.
- ▷ Replace damaged wiper blades immediately.

Instrument Panel and Multi-Purpose Display

| | |
|--|-----|
| Instrument Panel USA Models | 103 |
| Instrument Panel Canada Models..... | 104 |
| Compass on the Dashboard | 108 |
| Operating the Multi-Purpose Display on the Instrument Panel | 108 |
| Vehicle Information..... | 112 |
| Audio Menu | 116 |
| Navigation Menu | 116 |
| Map Menu | 117 |
| Phone Menu | 117 |
| Trip Information | 118 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) | 119 |
| Vehicle Settings on the Multi-Purpose Display | 126 |
| Overview of Warning Messages | 139 |



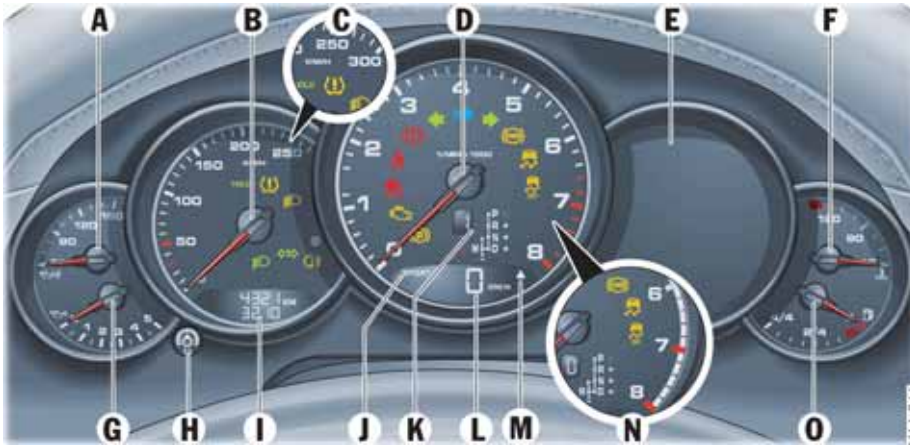
Instrument Panel USA Models

- A** Engine oil temperature gauge
- B** Speedometer
- C** Speedometer (Cayenne Turbo)
- D** Tachometer
- E** Multi-purpose display
- F** Coolant temperature gauge, coolant temperature warning light
- G** Engine oil pressure gauge
- H** Reset button for trip counter display/Brightness setting for instrument panel
- I** Odometer, trip counter display
- J** "SPORT" indicator light
- K** Tiptronic selector-lever position/engaged gear

- L** Digital speedometer
- M** Upshift indicator (Cayenne with manual transmission)
- N** Tachometer (Cayenne Turbo)
- O** Fuel gauge, fuel tank reserve warning light

Warning and indicator lights

- HOLD** HOLD function indicator light
- Tire pressure warning light
- PDLS warning light
- Low beam indicator light
- Trailer turn signal indicator light
- Rear fog light indicator light
- Electric parking brake (EPB) warning light
- Emission control warning light (Check Engine)
- Airbag warning light
- Safety belt warning light
- BRAKE** Brake warning light
- Turn signal indicator, left
- High beam indicator light
- Turn signal indicator, right
- ABS** ABS warning light
- PSM warning light
- PSM OFF warning light













Instrument Panel Canada Models

- A** Engine oil temperature gauge
- B** Speedometer
- C** Speedometer (Cayenne Turbo)
- D** Tachometer
- E** Multi-purpose display
- F** Coolant temperature gauge, coolant temperature warning light
- G** Engine oil pressure gauge
- H** Reset button for trip counter display/ Brightness setting for instrument panel
- I** Odometer, trip counter display
- J** "SPORT" indicator light
- K** Tiptronic selector-lever position/engaged gear

- L** Digital speedometer
- M** Upshift indicator (Cayenne with manual transmission)
- N** Tachometer (Cayenne Turbo)
- O** Fuel gauge, fuel tank reserve warning light

Warning and indicator lights

-  HOLD function indicator light
-  Tire pressure warning light
-  PDLS warning light
-  Low beam indicator light
-  Trailer turn signal indicator light
-  Rear fog light indicator light
-  Electric parking brake (EPB) warning light
-  Emission control warning light (Check Engine)
-  Airbag warning light
-  Safety belt warning light
-  Brake warning light
-  Turn signal indicator, left
-  High beam indicator light
-  Turn signal indicator, right
-  ABS warning light
-  PSM warning light
-  PSM OFF warning light

Engine oil temperature gauge

A warning message will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the engine oil temperature is too high.

- ▷ Reduce engine speed and engine load immediately.
- ▷ For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:
Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Speedometer

The analog display is located on the left next to the tachometer in the instrument panel.

Tachometer

The start of the red zone on the tachometer or rev-counter scale is a visual warning of the maximum permissible engine speed.

If the red zone is reached during acceleration, fuel feed is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Multi-purpose display

For information on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OPERATING THE MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL" on page 108.

Coolant temperature gauge

- ▷ If the cooling system is in any way faulty, consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

Pointer in the lower area – engine cold

- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loading.

Pointer in the middle – normal operating temperature

Pointer may move up to the red area when engine is heavily loaded and outside temperature is high.

Coolant temperature warning

The temperature gauge warning light lights up if the coolant temperature is too high.

The warning message "Engine temperature too high" will also appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

- ▷ Switch off engine and let it cool down.
- ▷ Check radiators and air guides in front end of vehicle for obstructions.
- ▷ Check the coolant level.
Top up with coolant if necessary.
- ▷ Have the fault corrected.
- ▷ For more information on coolant, checking the coolant level and adding coolant:
Please see the chapter "CHECKING COOLANT LEVEL AND ADDING COOLANT" on page 244.



Information

To prevent excessive temperatures, the cooling air ducts must not be obstructed by covering them (e.g. with film, "stone guards", etc.).

Coolant level warning

The temperature gauge warning light flashes if the coolant level is too low.

The warning message "Check coolant level" also appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel

- ▷ Switch off engine and let it cool down.
- ▷ Add coolant.
Have the cause for the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ For more information on coolant, checking the coolant level and adding coolant:
Please see the chapter "CHECKING COOLANT LEVEL AND ADDING COOLANT" on page 244.
- ▷ For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:
Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

- ▷ Do not continue driving if the warning persists even when the engine coolant level is correct.
- ▷ Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Engine oil pressure gauge

The oil pressure is controlled according to requirements and should be at least 29 psi (2.0 bar) at an engine speed of 3000 rpm and at least 44 psi (3.0 bar) at an engine speed of 5000 rpm.

The engine oil pressure varies depending on the engine speed, oil temperature and engine load.

If oil pressure drops abruptly and a message is displayed on the multi-purpose display when the engine is running or while driving:

- ▷ Stop immediately in a suitable place.
- ▷ Switch off the engine.
- ▷ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak on or under the car.
- ▷ Select **"Oil level"** on the multi-purpose display: Please see the chapter "DISPLAY AND MEASUREMENT OF THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL" on page 113.
- ▷ Add engine oil if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

- ▷ Do not continue driving if there is an obvious oil leak.
 - ▷ Do not continue driving if the warning message appears even when the oil level is correct.
 - ▷ Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.
-

Reset button for trip counter display/ brightness setting for instrument lighting

Resetting trip counter display

- ▷ Press rotary switch for approximately 1 second.
The trip counter display is reset to "0".

Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting

For information on adjusting the brightness of the instrument lighting:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "INSTRUMENT LIGHTING" on page 93.

Odometer

The displays for the total mileage and individual trips are integrated in the speedometer on the instrument panel.

The upper display counts the total mileage, the lower display shows individual trips.

After exceeding 6213 miles or 9999 kilometers, the trip counter returns to 0.

Digital speedometer

The digital speedometer is integrated in the tachometer on the instrument panel.

Boost pressure gauge (Cayenne Turbo)

The boost pressure can be displayed on the multi-purpose display.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ADAPTING APPEARANCE OF MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY" on page 126.

As the engine is equipped with a boost pressure control feature, the boost pressure is variable. The boost pressure depends on the speed, ambient pressure and on the octane rating of the fuel used.

Upshift indicator (only for Cayenne with manual transmission)

The consumption-oriented upshift indicator to the right of the digital speed display on the tachometer helps you to develop a fuel-saving driving style.

The upshift indicator lights up – prompting you to shift up to the next-higher gear – depending on the selected gear, engine speed and accelerator pedal position.

The upshift indicator is only active when "Sport" mode is switched off.

- ▷ Change to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.

Selector-lever position/engaged gear display

The Tiptronic selector-lever position (**P, R, N or D**) is displayed when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is running, the Tiptronic selector-lever position and engaged forward gear are indicated in gates **D** or **M**.

For information on Tiptronic S:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "TIPTRONIC S" on page 180.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge displays the contents of the tank when the ignition is on.

For information on fuel quality and refill capacities:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “THE CORRECT FUEL TYPE FOR YOUR VEHICLE IS PRINTED ON A STICKER ON THE INSIDE OF THE FILLER FLAP.” on page 252.

For information on refueling:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “THE CORRECT FUEL TYPE FOR YOUR VEHICLE IS PRINTED ON A STICKER ON THE INSIDE OF THE FILLER FLAP.” on page 252.

If the vehicle's inclination changes (e.g. uphill/downhill driving), minor deviations in the gauge may occur.

Fuel reserve warning

If less than approximately 4 US gallons (15 liters) of fuel remains in the tank or if the range on remaining fuel is less than approx. 30 miles (50 km), a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel and the warning light in the fuel gauge comes on.

- ▷ Refuel at the next opportunity.

NOTICE

A shortage of fuel may damage the emission control system.

- ▷ Never drive the tank dry.
- ▷ If the warning light has come on, do not take corners at high speed.

For more information on the emission control system:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM” on page 249.

Battery/Alternator



Warning message

The warning message “Fault Generator” will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the vehicle electrical system voltage drops significantly or if there is a problem with the alternator.

- ▷ Stop at a safe place and switch the engine off.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Possible causes

- Defect in the battery charging system
- Broken drive belt

⚠ WARNING

Broken Drive Belt

A broken drive belt means there is no power assistance to the steering (more effort is required to steer) and engine cooling fails.

- ▷ Do not continue driving.
- ▷ Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Slipping Drive Belt

Danger of steering assistance failing during a long journey in water if the drive belt slips.

- ▷ If steering assistance fails, more effort will be required to steer.

Check Engine (Emission control)



Warning light

The emission control system detects malfunctions early that could cause increased pollutant emissions or consequential damage etc.

Faults are indicated by the warning light in the instrument panel when the warning light lights up continuously.

The faults are recorded in the control unit's fault memory.

The warning light in the instrument panel lights up for a lamp check when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light in the instrument panel lights up continuously to indicate operating states (e.g. engine misfiring) that may damage certain parts of the emission control system.

- ▷ In this case, immediately reduce the engine load by easing off the accelerator pedal.

In order to avoid consequential damage to the engine or the exhaust-gas cleaning system (e.g. catalytic converter):

- ▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the emission control system. If the warning light on the instrument panel continues flashing even when you have eased off the accelerator pedal, the emission control system may overheat.

- ▷ Stop as soon as possible in a safe place. Make sure that combustible materials, such as dry grass or leaves, cannot come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▷ Switch off the engine.
- ▷ Have the fault corrected.

Acoustic signals

A speaker in the instrument panel generates acoustic signals.

The warning message "Fault Instrument cluster/ ParkAssist sound" will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if a speaker fault occurs.

- The speaker cannot generate acoustic signals.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.



Compass on the Dashboard

The outer ring of the compass turns while the vehicle is driving and shows the four cardinal directions and intermediate directions.

- ▷ The display in the middle shows the altitude (A) and the degrees (B).

The units for the compass can be set on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING UNITS" on page 137.

The compass display can also be switched off:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SWITCHING OFF COMPASS DISPLAY ON THE DASHBOARD" on page 136.

Operating the Multi-Purpose Display on the Instrument Panel

On the multi-purpose display, you can view information relating to the relevant vehicle equipment, operate the audio source (radio, CD, iPod, etc.), check the oil level, check the tire pressure or operate the navigation system. You can also modify different vehicle settings in the "Vehicle" menu.

It is not possible to describe all details of the functions in this Owner's Manual. The examples clearly demonstrate the functional principle and clarify the menu structure.

WARNING

Operating On-Board Systems While Driving

Setting or operating the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving could distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Operate the equipment while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only when the vehicle is stationary.



Multi-purpose display

i Information

The multi-purpose display is only active when the ignition is on. Certain menus are only available when the vehicle has stopped e.g. the adjustment menu for tire pressure monitoring.



Operating principle on vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

The multi-purpose display is operated using the rotary knob **A**, the Back button **B** and the MFS button **C**, which can be assigned as required.

Selecting menu, function, setting option

- ▷ Turn rotary knob **A** upwards or downwards.

Confirming selection (Enter)

- ▷ Press rotary knob **A**.

Moving back one or several selection levels

- ▷ Press button **B** (Back button).

◆ Individual assignment of the MFS button

Porsche Communication Management (PCM) functions or multi-purpose display functions can be assigned to the MFS button in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel. Audio source selection is preset by default.

For information on individual assignment of the MFS button:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

For information on Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Please refer to the separate PCM operating instructions.



Operating principle on vehicles without multi-function steering wheel

The multi-purpose display is operated with the lower lever on the right of the steering column.

Selecting menu, function, setting option

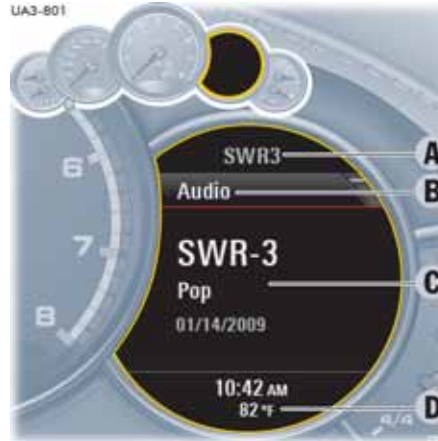
- ▷ Push the lever downwards (position **3**) or upwards (position **4**).

Confirming selection (Enter)

- ▷ Push the lever forward (position **1**).

Moving back one or several selection levels

- ▷ Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (position **2**) once or several times.



- A** - Upper status area
- B** - Title area with menu indicator
- C** - Information area
- D** - Lower status area

Areas on the multi-purpose display

Upper status area/Lower status area

The upper status area **A** and lower status area **D** permanently display basic information, such as the current radio station, time and temperature or the range on remaining fuel.

- ▷ The display contents of the upper and lower status areas can be individually adapted.

For information on adapting the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “ADAPTING APPEARANCE OF MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY” on page 126.

Title area with menu indicator

The menu item currently selected is displayed in the title area.

The menu indicator on the right shows the position of the current menu item in the overall menu and displays the number of other menu items on this menu level.

The wider the menu indicator, the fewer menu items the current menu contains.

Information area

The information area **C** displays the menu items currently available for selection or, after a menu item is selected, information relating to this menu item or other selection options.

Activating functions, opening submenus and accessing setting options from the main menu areas

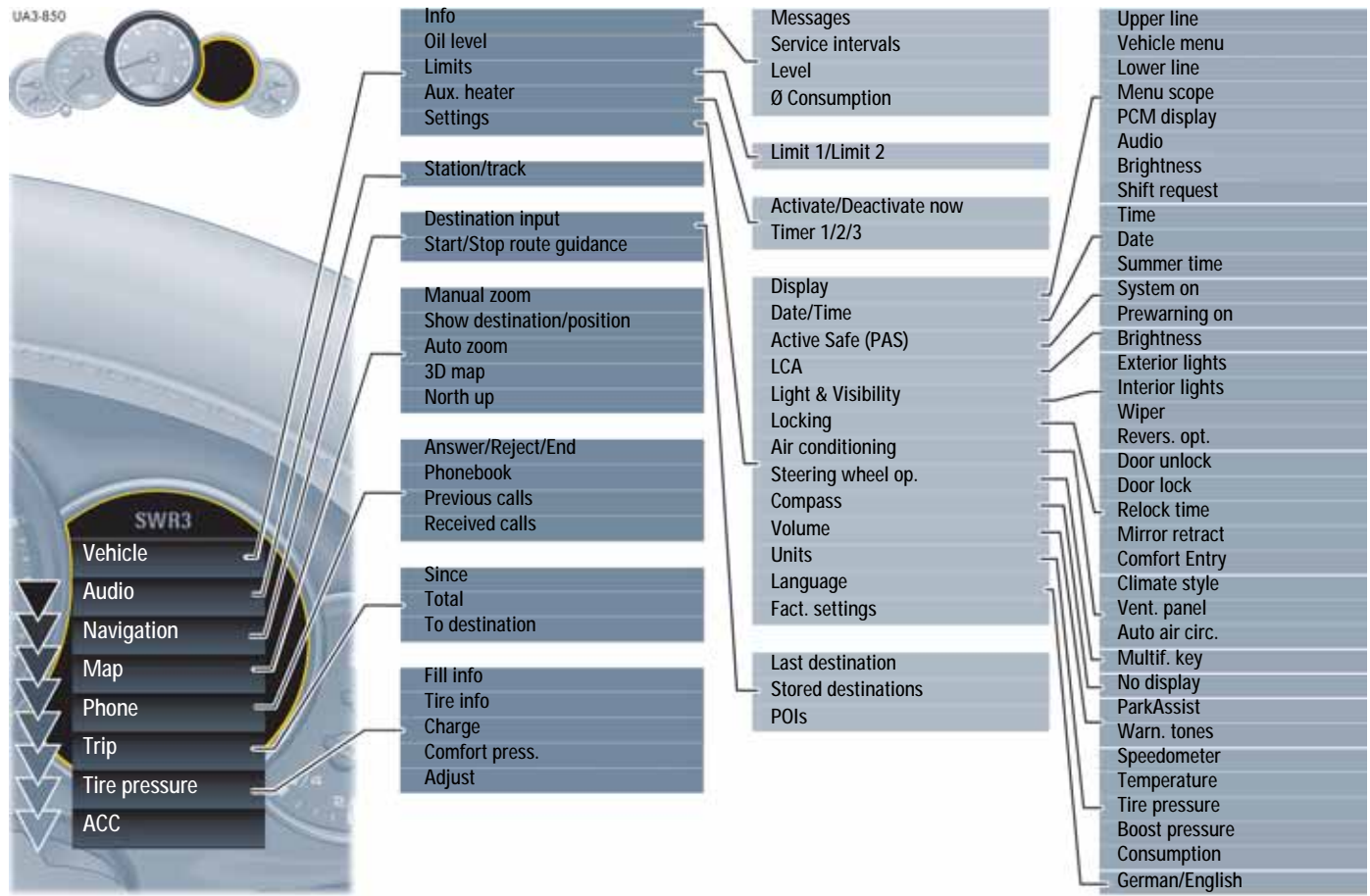
Press the rotary knob **A** or push the right lower lever on the steering wheel forwards (position **1**) to access menus, other functions and setting options regardless of the main menu area.

1. Select main menu and confirm.
2. Select function, submenu or setting option and confirm.

Browsing through long lists

When searching for an entry in long telephone and audio lists on vehicles with PCM, you can skip directly to other entries with the same first letter.

- ▷ Briefly press the rotary knob **A** or hold the control lever in position **3** or **4**.
A letter selection screen appears.
- ▷ Select the desired first letter and confirm.
The marking skips to the first list entry beginning with the letter selected.





Vehicle Information

Different items of vehicle information can be displayed on the multi-purpose display.

1. Select **"Vehicle"** in the main menu.

The vehicle information display can be adapted individually.

For information on adapting the vehicle menu:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY CONFIGURATION EXAMPLE" on page 127.

Displaying vehicle information

Pending warning messages, information on forthcoming service intervals, the current chassis setting and the average fuel consumption can be viewed in the **"Info"** submenu of the **"Vehicle"** main menu area.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Info"** and confirm.



Displaying messages

All current warning messages and vehicle messages can be viewed on the multi-purpose display.

The warning symbol in the lower status area indicates the number of pending warning messages.

If several warning messages are pending, you can browse through the message list.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Info"**
2. **"Messages"** and confirm.

Displaying service intervals

The internal mileage counter indicates when the next vehicle service is due.

The oil service can be scheduled with a fixed or dynamic interval, depending on the engine.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Info"**

2. **"Service intervals"**
and confirm.

3. Select the desired service interval
and confirm.

Available service interval displays:

- **"Service"**
- **"Interm. service"**
- **"Oil change"**

Displaying the selected chassis setting

You can view information on the current chassis setting.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Info"**

2. **"Level"**
and confirm.

Displaying average fuel consumption

You can display and reset the average fuel consumption if required.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Info"**
> **"Ø Consumption"**
and confirm.

Resetting average fuel consumption

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Info"**
> **"Ø Consumption"**

2. **"Reset"**
and confirm.

Information

Resetting the average fuel consumption also resets the **"Total"** vehicle data display in the **"Trip"** menu.

For information on the driving data display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter **"TRIP INFORMATION"** on page 118.

Display and measurement of the engine oil level

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

- ▷ Regularly check the oil level each time before refueling.
- ▷ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.

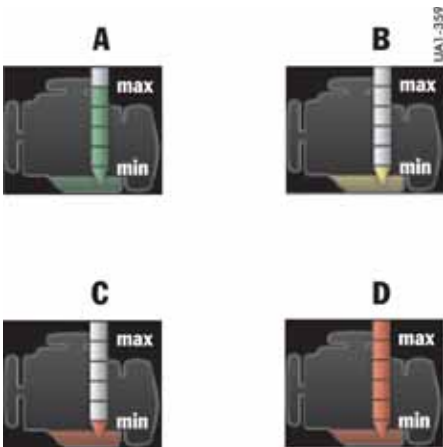
Prerequisites for the oil-level gauge:

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Switch off engine, which is now at operating temperature.
3. Wait for approx. 2 minutes.
4. Select the **"Oil level"** function on the multi-purpose display.

Activating the Oil level function on the multi-function display

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Oil level"**
and confirm.

- ▷ Please see the chapter **"OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES"** on page 139.



Measured oil level

The oil level reading is shown on the segment display in the oil level menu.

If the segments are filled in up to the top line (illustration **A**), the oil level has reached the maximum mark.

▷ Under no circumstances add engine oil.

If the bottom segment is filled in (illustration **B**), the oil level has reached the minimum mark.

The message "Oil level minimum reached" appears on the multi-purpose display.

▷ Add engine oil immediately.

If the bottom segment is red (illustration **C**), the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark.

The message "Oil level below minimum" appears on the multi-purpose display.

▷ Add engine oil immediately.

Top-up quantity

The difference between the minimum and maximum marks on the segment display is approx. 1.06 qt. (1 liter).

One segment of the display corresponds to a top-up quantity of approx. 0.26 qt. (0.25 liter).

▷ Never add more engine oil than required to reach the maximum mark.

The maximum permitted engine filling capacity has been exceeded (illustration **D**). Exceeding the maximum capacity may result in blue smoke formation and cause long-term damage to the catalytic converters depending on the overfill quantity and various external influences.

If too much engine oil was added, the message "Oil level above maximum" appears on the multi-purpose display.

▷ Have the oil quantity corrected at the next authorized Porsche dealer.

Measuring the oil level after topping up engine oil or opening the engine compartment lid

The oil level can be checked after waiting for approx. 2 minutes with the vehicle parked on a level surface and the engine at operating temperature.

Failure

If the oil-level gauge fails, the message "Failure Oil level measurement" appears on the multi-purpose display.

Setting speed limits

If a speed limit is preset and activated on the multi-purpose display, a warning message appears if the speed limit is exceeded.

A speed limit can be used to remind the driver to keep to the maximum speed permitted for the tire type fitted to the vehicle, for example.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Limits**" and confirm.

Setting a speed limit

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Limits"**
2. **"Limit 1: ---"** or **"Limit 2: ---"** and confirm.
3. Select **"Current speed"** or **"---"** and confirm.

You can either adopt the current speed of the vehicle or specify your own speed limit.

Activating and deactivating speed limits

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Limits"**
2. **"Limit 1: ---"** or **"Limit 2: ---"** and confirm.
3. Select **"Active"**
4. Confirm selection.
 - Limit is active.
 - Limit is not active.

Operating parking heater on the multi-function display

Switching parking heater on/off

The parking heater can be switched on and off in the multi-purpose display when the ignition is switched on.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Aux. heater"**
2. Select **"Activate now"** or **"Deactivate now"** and confirm.

The indicator light on the parking heater button in the center console lights up when the parking heater is activated.

Programming the parking heater/timer

Three different switch-on times can be programmed for the parking heater when the ignition is switched on.

Setting the timer


1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Aux. heater"**
2. Select **"Timer 1"** or **"Timer 2"** or **"Timer 3"** and confirm.
3. Select **"Set"** and confirm.
4. Set the time and date and confirm the setting.

Information

There is no time or date stored when you start programming for the first time. The first numeric keypad is for entering the time and the second is for the date. The programmed switch-on time must be a time in the future.

Activating the timer

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"** > **"Aux. heater"**
2. Select **"Timer 1"** or **"Timer 2"** or **"Timer 3"**
3. Select **"Activate"** and confirm.

If a timer is activated, the indicator light on the parking heater button  in the center console will flash for 30 seconds when the ignition is switched off and will continue flashing until the vehicle is locked.

Information

Only **one** timer can be active at any one time.

Clearing the timer

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”** > **“Aux. heater”**
2. Select **“Timer 1”** or **“Timer 2”** or **“Timer 3”**
3. Select **“Clear”** and confirm.

Adjusting vehicle settings

Various settings can be modified in the **“Vehicle”** submenu.

For information on modifying vehicle settings:
▷ Please see the chapter **“VEHICLE SETTINGS ON THE MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY”** on page 126.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”** > **“Settings”** and confirm.

Audio Menu

In the **“Audio”** main menu, you can select a radio station either from the station list or the list of stored stations, depending on the settings, or a track from the active audio source, e.g. disk.

1. Select **“Audio”** in the main menu and confirm.
2. Select the desired radio station or track and confirm.

For information on adjusting audio menu settings:

▷ Please see the chapter **“ADAPTING DISPLAY CONTENTS OF AUDIO MAIN MENU”** on page 127.

Navigation Menu

In the **“Navigation”** main menu, you can enter a navigation destination, start route guidance and view the navigation information for an active route.

1. Select **“Navigation”** in the main menu and confirm.

Entering navigation destination

You can enter a navigation destination in the multi-purpose display.

Only navigation destinations from the list of previous destinations or from the list of preset POIs or stored destinations can be selected.

1. Main menu: Select **“Navigation”** > **“Destination input”**
2. **“Last destination”** or **“Stored destinations”** or **“POIs”** and confirm.
3. Select desired navigation destination and confirm.

Starting route guidance

If route guidance is inactive and you have entered a new navigation destination you can then start route guidance.

1. Main menu: Select **“Navigation”**
2. **“Start route guidance”** and confirm.

Stopping route guidance

You can stop route guidance while in progress.

1. Select **“Navigation”** in the main menu
2. **“Stop route guidance”** and confirm.

Map Menu

In the **"Map"** main menu, you can view and modify the map display on the navigation system.

1. Select **"Map"** in the main menu.

Modifying map display

1. Select **"Map"** in the main menu and confirm.
2. Select display option and confirm.
3. Confirm selection.

- Function is active.
- Function is not active.

Available display options:

- **"Auto zoom"**
The scale of the map is set automatically from the current position of the vehicle to the next navigation maneuver point.
- **"3D map"**
Three-dimensional map display.
- **"North up"**
The map always faces north.

Enlarging and reducing map display

The zoom factor of the map display can be adapted individually.

1. Main menu: Select **"Map"** > **"Manual zoom"** and confirm.

2. Select the desired zoom setting and confirm.

Displaying current location or destination

You can view the navigation destination or current vehicle position on an enlarged section of the map.

1. Main menu: Select **"Map"**
2. **"Show destination"** or **"Show position"** and confirm.

Phone Menu

In the **"Phone"** main menu, you can retrieve telephone numbers stored in the phonebook or in lists of most recently dialed or received calls.

1. Select **"Phone"** in the main menu and confirm.

Dialling telephone number

1. Main menu: Select **"Phone"**
2. **"Phonebook"** or **"Previous calls"** or **"Received calls"** and confirm.
3. Select the desired telephone number and confirm.

Answering calls

1. Main menu: Select **"Phone"**
2. Select **"Answer"** and confirm.

Rejecting calls

1. Main menu: Select **"Phone"**
2. **"Reject"** and confirm.

Ending a call

1. Main menu: Select **"Phone"**
2. **"End call"** and confirm.

Making multiple calls simultaneously

During an active telephone conversation, you have the option of starting another telephone conversation.

You can have a separate conversation with the person you have called or alternatively start a conference call together with the other caller.

Making additional calls

During a call:

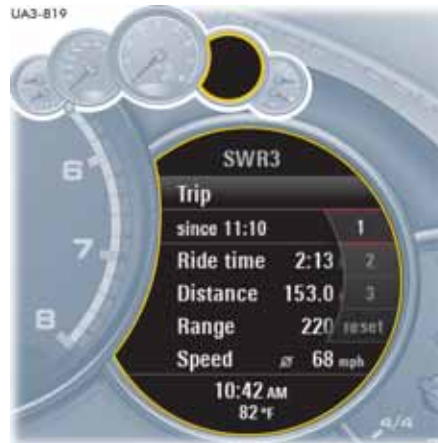
1. Select **"Phone"** in the main menu
2. Select **"New call"** and confirm.

Switching between callers

1. Main menu: Select **"Phone"**
2. **"Swap"** and confirm.

Adding a caller to a conference call

1. Select **"Phone"** in the main menu
2. **"Conference"** and confirm.



Trip Information

In the **"Trip"** main menu, you can retrieve and reset driving data.

1. Select **"Trip"** in the main menu.

Displaying driving data

There are three driving data displays available.

1. Select **"Trip"** in the main menu.
2. Select **"1 – Since"** or **"2 – Total"** or **"3 – To destination"** and confirm.

Available driving data:

- **"Since"**
Driving data since the last vehicle start. The driving data is reset automatically once the vehicle has remained stationary for 2 hours (with the ignition key removed).
- **"Total"**
Cumulative driving data. The driving data is added progressively until a reset is performed. The data is retained even if the ignition key is removed.
- **"To destination"**
Driving data up to navigation destination. If route guidance is active, the driving data is calculated and displayed up to the navigation destination.

Resetting driving data

The selected driving data display can be reset.

1. Select **"Trip"** in the main menu.
2. Select the relevant driving data display and confirm.
3. Select **"Reset"** and confirm.

Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM)

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by Porsche on the tire inflation pressure label.

For information on the tire inflation pressure label:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “TIRES AND WHEELS” on page 265.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPM) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

The display as well as the settings for the Tire Pressure Monitoring take place on the on-board computer.

However, the tire pressure must still be set manually on the wheel.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)” on page 310.

WARNING

Maintaining Tire Pressure

Driving the vehicle with low tire pressure increases the risk of a tire failure and resulting loss of control. Furthermore, low tire pressure increases rate of wear of the affected tires.

Please note that the Tire Pressure Monitoring is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of Tire Pressure Monitoring low tire pressure telltale. Low tire pressure reduces the road safety of the vehicle and destroys the tire and wheel.

Tire Pressure Monitoring gives a warning about tire damage caused by a natural loss in pressure as well as about a gradual loss of pressure caused by foreign objects.

Tire Pressure Monitoring cannot warn you about tire damage that occurs suddenly (e.g. flat tire due to abrupt external effects).

- ▷ When a red tire pressure warning appears, stop immediately in a suitable place and check the tires for damage. If necessary, remedy the damage with a tire sealant.
- ▷ Do not by any means continue to drive with defective tires.
- ▷ Sealing the tire with tire sealant is only an emergency repair so you can drive to the nearest specialist workshop. The maximum permitted speed is **50 mph (80 km/h)**.

- ▷ Do not drive with tires in which the tire pressure drops again very quickly. In case of doubt, have tires checked by a specialist workshop.

- ▷ Defective tires must be replaced immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Tires must never be repaired under any circumstances.

- ▷ If Tire Pressure Monitoring is defective (e.g. defective wheel transmitter), contact an authorized Porsche dealer immediately and have the damage repaired.

The tire pressure will not be monitored at all or will be monitored only partially when Tire Pressure Monitoring is defective.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.
- ▷ Incomplete entries or selection of the wrong tires on the multi-purpose display affect the accuracy of warnings and messages. The settings in the tire pressure menu must be updated following a wheel change or changes in vehicle loading.
- ▷ Use only the pressure differences shown in the “**Fill info**” display in the **Tire pressure** menu or from the corresponding tire pressure warning when correcting the tire pressure.
- ▷ Tires can lose air over time without a tire defect being present. A tire pressure warning will then appear on the multi-purpose display. Check the tire pressure at the next opportunity.

Warning light

WARNING

Attention to TPM
Malfunction Indicator

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPM malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPM malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale.

When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPM malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPM from functioning properly.

- ▷ Always check the TPM malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPM to continue to function properly.

The warning light in the instrument panel lights up:

- When a loss in pressure has been detected.
- In the event of a defect in Tire Pressure Monitoring or a temporary fault.
- When learning new fitted wheels/wheel transmitters, as long as the vehicle's own wheels have not yet been recognized.

The tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel goes out only when the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Overview of Tire Pressure Monitoring functions

Tire Pressure Monitoring offers the following functions:

- Display of the actual tire pressure while the vehicle is in motion.
- **“Fill info”** display:
Display of the deviation from the required pressure (refilling pressure) at standstill.
- **“Tire info”** display:
Display of current settings (when the vehicle is stationary).
- Tire pressure warnings in two stages (yellow and red warning).



Tire pressure display on the multi-purpose display

Selecting the Tire pressure function on the multi-purpose display

Select **“Tire pressure”** in the main menu and confirm.

The **“Tire pressure”** function displays the temperature-dependent tire pressures (actual pressures) in the four wheels. You can watch the tire pressure rise as the temperature increases while driving.

This display is only for information.

- ▷ Under no circumstances should the tire pressures be changed based on this display.



Viewing Fill info in the Tire pressure menu (only when vehicle is stationary)

You can read the tire pressures to be corrected in this display.

1. Select **"Tire pressure"** in the main menu.
2. Select **"Fill info"** and confirm.

The tire pressure to be corrected (refill pressure) is indicated on the displayed wheel.

Example: If -1.5 psi / -0.1 bar / -10 kPa is displayed for the rear right tire, 1.5 psi / 0.1 bar / 10 kPa must be added to this tire.

The displayed pressures take into account the tire temperature.

- ▷ Use only the pressure values shown in the **"Fill info"** display in the **"Tire pressure"** main menu or from the corresponding tire pressure warning when correcting the tire pressure.

i Information

Each time the ignition is switched on, it may take approx. 1 minute until all tire pressures are displayed. Dashes (-.) appear instead of the tire pressures.

Viewing "Tire info" in the Tire pressure menu

1. Select **"Tire pressure"** in the main menu.
2. Select **"Tire info"** and confirm.

The current settings are displayed.

Selecting "Charge" in the Tire pressure menu

1. Select **"Tire pressure"** in the main menu.
2. Select **"Charge"** and confirm.
3. Select load type and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Part load"**
- **"Full load"**
- ▷ Adapt the pressure of the tires to the selected load type. See **"Fill info"** in the **"Tire pressure"** main menu.

If this menu is not displayed, the specified tire pressures are valid for all types of vehicle load.



Selecting “Comfort pressure” in the Tire pressure menu

1. Select “**Tire pressure**” in the main menu.
2. Select “**Comfort press.**” and confirm.
3. Select required pressure and confirm.

Available setting options:

- “**Comfort**”
- “**Standard**”

For speeds up to 100 mph (160 km/h), the tire pressures can be reduced to increase driving comfort.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring system must be set to the applicable tire pressure (comfort pressure or standard pressure).

If you selected “**Comfort press.**”, the TPM system automatically uses lower pressure values when monitoring tire pressures.

The comfort tire pressures are included in the technical data or under “**Fill info**” in the “**Tire pressure**” menu, you can compare the pressure differences (e.g. 4.4 psi / +0.3 bar / 30 kPa) with the “**Comfort pressures**”.

For tires that have not yet been learned, the new required tire pressures are displayed instead of the actual tire pressures.

For information on learning the tires:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “**CHANGING A WHEEL AND REPLACING TIRES**” on page 125.

WARNING

Low Tire Pressure Loss of Control

Prolonged driving at low tire pressure or even short-term driving at high speeds on tires which have too low a pressure is likely to result in a loss of control of your vehicle, either due to a failure to maintain directional control under side loads or due to tire failure.

Tires are inflated to comfort pressure at the factory, which is not suitable for driving at very high speeds.

- ▷ Always adjust the pressure in the tires to the standard pressure setting when driving at higher speeds.
- ▷ Remember to adjust the setting in the Tire Pressure Monitoring system accordingly.



Comfort pressure speed warning

If the maximum speed of the preset comfort pressure is exceeded, a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display.

WARNING

Excessive Speeds for Comfort Setting

Driving at excessive speeds when the comfort pressure is active will eventually destroy the tires and that can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, especially at high speeds.

- ▷ Never exceed the speed specified on the warning message.
- ▷ Always set the standard tire pressure when driving at higher speeds.

Selecting settings in the Tire pressure menu (type and size of fitted tire)

WARNING Exceeding Maximum Rated Tire Speed

Exceeding the maximum tire speed could result in a tire burst, causing loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Always observe the permissible maximum speed of the respective tire.
- ▷ Porsche recommends obeying all traffic laws at all times to maintain the safety of yourself and all vehicle occupants.

WARNING Entering Tire Data and Display

Incomplete entries or selection of the wrong tires on the multi-purpose display affect correct indication of warnings and messages.

- ▷ The settings must be updated in the **“Tire pressure”** menu after changing a wheel, filling with tire sealant or adding air (after previous warning **“Tire pressure!”**).
- ▷ Please see the chapter **“RED WARNING – TIRE PRESSURE!”** on page 125.

The new tire type and tire size must be selected even if the settings for the new set of wheels are the same as for the old wheels.

1. Select **“Tire pressure”** in the main menu.
2. Select **“Adjust”** and confirm.
3. Select **“Summer tires”** or **“Winter tires”** or **“All-season”** and confirm.
4. Select the tire size and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **“18 inch”** (not for Cayenne Turbo)
- **“19 inch”**
- **“20 inch”**
- **“21 inch”**

Tire selection has only been successfully completed when the following message appears on the multi-purpose display (example):

“Summer tires 19 inch was set.”

“No monitoring, System is learning”.

- ▷ Please see the chapter **“SYSTEM LEARNING”** on page 124.

Information

The message **“Action canceled”** appears if the setting process is interrupted. All entries made up to this point are lost, and the original settings remain in effect.

Before fitting tires with dimensions that are not already stored in the multi-purpose display, the missing information should be added to the multi-purpose display.

- ▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Use only tires approved by Porsche.

The available items in the **Tire pressure** menu depend on the model type. For this reason, some of the selection options shown here may not be available on your multi-purpose display.

System learning

Tire Pressure Monitoring begins to “learn” the wheels after a wheel change, wheel transmitter replacement or update of the tire settings. During this process, Tire Pressure Monitoring recognizes the wheels and their locations.

The message “No monitoring, system is learning” (example) appears on the multi-purpose display.

The wheel learning process takes place exclusively when the vehicle is being driven (vehicle speed above 16 mph (25 km/h)).

Tire Pressure Monitoring requires a certain amount of time to learn the wheels. During this time, the current tire pressures are not available on the multi-purpose display:

- The tire pressure warning light remains lit until all wheels have been learned.
- Lines (-) appear on the display of the “**Tire pressure**” function.
- The required pressures for cold tires (68 °F (20 °C)) are indicated under “**Fill info**” in the “**Tire pressure**” main menu.

Position and pressure information is displayed as soon as Tire Pressure Monitoring has assigned the wheels recognized as belonging to the vehicle to the correct wheel positions.

- ▷ Check the tire pressure for all wheels under “**Fill info**”.
- ▷ Correct the tire pressure to the required pressure if necessary.



Yellow warning – Inflate!

Tire pressure warnings

The tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel and a corresponding message on the multi-purpose display warn about loss of pressure in two stages (yellow and red), depending on the amount of pressure loss.

Yellow warning – Inflate!

The pressure in the tire is **more than 4 to 7 psi / 0.3 to 0.5 bar / 30 to 50 kPa** too low. The tire pressure warning specifies the affected tire and the target tire pressure.

- ▷ Correct the tire pressure at the next opportunity.

This tire pressure warning appears:

- for approx. 10 seconds when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off **or**
- when the ignition is switched on again.

The warning can be acknowledged when the ignition is switched on.

The tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel goes out only when the tire pressure has been corrected.



Red warning – Tire pressure!

Red warning – Tire pressure!

At speeds of **less than 100 mph (160 km/h)**:

- The pressure in the tire has dropped by **more than 7 psi / 0.5 bar / 50 kPa**. This significant pressure loss is a danger to road safety.

At speeds of **more than 100 mph (160 km/h)**:

- The pressure in the tire has dropped by **more than 6 psi / 0.4 bar / 40 kPa**. This significant pressure loss is a danger to road safety.

- ▷ When the tire pressure warning appears, stop immediately at a suitable place. Check the indicated tire for signs of damage. If necessary, fill in tire sealant and set the correct tire pressure.

This tire pressure warning also appears when driving and can be acknowledged.

The tire pressure warning light on the instrument

panel goes out only when the tire pressure has been corrected.

For information on tire sealing compound:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “USING TIRE SEALANT” on page 277.

Changing a wheel and replacing tires

- ▷ New wheels must be fitted with radio transmitters for Tire Pressure Monitoring. Before tires are changed, the battery charge condition of the wheel transmitters should be checked at an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Switch off the ignition when changing a wheel.

The tire settings on the multi-purpose display must be updated after changing a wheel.

If the tire settings are not updated, the message “Tire change? Update settings!” is displayed on the multi-purpose display.

- ▷ Update the multi-purpose display settings the next time the vehicle is stationary.

Pressure increase as the result of temperature increase

In accordance with physical principles, the tire pressure changes as the temperature changes. For every 18 °F (10 °C) change in temperature, the tire pressure increases or decreases by around 1.5 psi / 0.1 bar / 10 kPa.

Partial monitoring

Monitoring of the other wheels is continued if there is a fault in one or two wheel transmitters.

- The tire pressure warning light lights up.
- The message “Restricted monitoring” appears on the multi-purpose display.
- No tire pressures are displayed on the multi-purpose display for wheels with faulty wheel transmitters.

No monitoring

In the event of faults, Tire Pressure Monitoring cannot monitor the tire pressure.

The warning light on the instrument panel lights up and a corresponding message appears on the multi-purpose display.

Monitoring is not active:

- If Tire Pressure Monitoring is faulty.
- If wheel transmitters for Tire Pressure Monitoring are missing.
- During the learning phase after the tire settings have been updated.
- After a wheel change without updating the tire settings.
- If more than four wheel transmitters are recognized.
- If there is external interference by other radio sources, e.g. wireless headphones.
- If tire temperatures are too high.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Vehicle Settings on the Multi-Purpose Display

Different settings can be adjusted in the multi-purpose display on the instrument panel depending on the vehicle equipment.

On vehicles with comfort memory, the settings are stored on the car key or the person buttons in the driver's door.

For information on the comfort memory:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "COMFORT MEMORY" on page 38.

Selecting Settings menu

1. Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
and confirm.

Selecting setting options or activating vehicle functions

A symbol positioned in front of a setting option indicates whether the option is selected or a vehicle function is activated.

Selecting one of several options

- Option is selected.
- Option is not selected.

Activating and deactivating functions

- Function is activated.
- Function is not activated.

Resetting to factory settings

All settings made in the multi-purpose display can be reset to the factory settings.



Information

All personal settings that have already been stored will be lost as a result of resetting to factory settings.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
2. "**Fact. settings**"
and confirm.
3. Select "**Yes**"
and confirm.

Adapting appearance of multi-purpose display

The contents and appearance of the multi-purpose display can be adapted individually.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**Display**"
and confirm.

Selecting main menu display contents

Individual elements in the main menu can be hidden and shown as required.

The main menu items "**Audio**", "**Navi**", "**Map**", "**Phone**", "**Trip**" and "**Tire pressure**" can be hidden or shown.

The "**Settings**" menu item cannot be hidden.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**Display**"
2. Select "**Menu scope**"
and confirm.
3. Select the desired main menu items.
4. Confirm selection.
 - Menu item is displayed.
 - Menu item is hidden.

Adapting display contents of audio main menu

In the audio main menu, you can display either a list of all radio stations currently within range or a list of all stored radio stations.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Display"**
2. **"Audio"**
and confirm.
3. Select the desired display contents
and confirm.

Available display contents:

- **"Station list"**
List of stations currently within range.
- **"Preset list"**
List of stored stations.

For information on the station and preset lists:

- ▷ Please observe the separate operating manual for the Porsche communication system PCM or CDR-31.



Multi-purpose display configuration example

Adapting display contents in vehicle information area

You can select four of the many items of vehicle information for display in the **"Vehicle"** menu and assignment to the display areas **1**, **2**, **3** and **4**.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Display"**
2. **"Vehicle menu"**
and confirm.
3. Select **"1:"** or
"2:" or
"3:" or
"4:"
and confirm.
4. Select the desired display contents
and confirm.

Available display contents:

"Veh. voltage", **"Boost pressure"**, **"Oil pressure"**, **"Oil temperature"**, **"Coolant temp."** (coolant temperature), **"Fuel range"**, **"Int: Trip time"** (driving time to intermediate destination), **"Int: Arrival"** (arrival time at intermediate destination), **"Dst: Trip time"** (driving time to destination), **"Dst: Arrival"** (arrival time at destination), **"Compass"** (on multi-purpose display), **"Date"**, **"Station/Track"** (current radio station/music track), **"Phone info"** (network strength/network name), **"Blank line"** (field remains blank)

Information

One item of information cannot be assigned to several areas or one area **and** the **"Upper line"**.

Adapting upper status area

You can assign various items of information to the upper status area **A** in the multi-purpose display.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Display”**
2. **“Upper line”**
and confirm.
3. Select the desired display contents
and confirm.

Available display contents:

- **“Station name”**
- **“Fuel range”**
- **“Compass”**
- **“Boost pressure”**
- **“Blank line”**

No information is displayed in the upper status area **A**.

Displaying PCM information on the multi-purpose display

You can configure the multi-purpose display to temporarily display different items of information relating to Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Display”**
2. Select **“PCM display”**
and confirm.
3. Select desired PCM
information.
4. Confirm selection.
 Information is displayed.
 Information is not displayed.

Available PCM information:

- **“Map info”**
Navigation map appears automatically when navigation information is available.
- **“Arrow info”**
Navigation arrow appears automatically when navigation information is available.
- **“Phone info”**
Information on incoming and outgoing calls is displayed.
- **“Voice control”**
Help text appears when the voice control button is pressed.
- **“Speed limit”**
Speed limits marked on the map in the navigation system are displayed.

Adapting lower status area

You can assign the current time and outside temperature to the lower status area **B** in the multi-purpose display.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Display”**
2. **“Lower line”**
and confirm.
3. Select the desired display contents
and confirm.

Available display contents:

- **“Time”**
- **“Temperature”**
- **“Time & Temp.”**

Adjusting display brightness

The brightness of the multi-purpose display can be adjusted to suit individual requirements.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Display”**
2. **“Brightness”**
and confirm.
3. Adjust to the desired display brightness
and confirm the setting.

Hiding and showing upshift prompt indicator

You have the option of displaying an upshift prompt in the digital speedometer inside the tachometer to indicate the ideal gear-changing points on vehicles with manual transmission and to encourage a more fuel-efficient driving style.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Display”**
2. Select **“Shift request”**
in the menu.
3. Confirm selection.
 Upshift prompt is displayed.
 Upshift prompt is hidden.

Setting date and time

The date and time displays on the vehicle can be adjusted individually.

Information

On vehicles with Porsche Communication Management (PCM), the date and time are set automatically by satellite navigation signals (GPS). Some setting options may be temporarily unavailable, depending on satellite signal reception.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Date/Time”**
and confirm.

Setting the time

The time, time format and time zone can be set in the **“Time”** menu.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Date/Time”**
> **“Time”**
and confirm.

Setting the time format

The time can be displayed in 12-hour or 24-hour format.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Date/Time”**
> **“Time”**
2. **“Format”**
and confirm.
3. Select desired setting
and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **“12h”**
- **“24h”**

Setting current time

The hours and minutes can be set individually.

1. Main menu: Select **“Vehicle”**
> **“Settings”**
> **“Date/Time”**
> **“Time”**
2. Select **“Hour/Minute”**.
3. Set desired time
and confirm the setting.

Setting time zone

The time zone and vehicle time can be adjusted individually.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Date/Time"**
 - > **"Time"**

2. Select **"Zone"** and confirm.

3. Set desired time zone and confirm.

Setting the date

The date and date format can be changed in the **"Date"** menu.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Date/Time"**
 - > **"Date"**and confirm.

Setting the date format

The date format can be adjusted.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Date/Time"**
 - > **"Date"**

2. **"Format"** and confirm.

3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"DD.MM.YYYY"**
- **"MM/DD/YYYY"**
- **"YYYY/MM/DD"**

Setting the current date

The day, month and year can be set individually on vehicles without the navigation module.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Date/Time"**
 - > **"Date"**and confirm.

2. Select **"Date"**.

3. Set the desired date and confirm the setting.

Setting summer time

The vehicle clock can be configured to change to summer time.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Date/Time"**

2. Select **"Summer time"**.

3. Confirm selection.



- Summer time is activated.
- Summer time is deactivated.

Active Safe (PAS)

The Porsche "Active Safe" functions can be completely or partly disabled.
The settings remain stored when the ignition is switched on and off.

1. Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**Active Safe (PAS)**"
and confirm.

System on

All Porsche "Active Safe" functions can be disabled using "**System on**".

1. Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**Active Safe (PAS)**"
2. Select "**System on**".
3. Confirm selection.
 Active Safe is switched on.
 Active Safe is switched off.



When all Porsche "Active Safe" functions are switched off, the gray symbol appears at the bottom of the multi-purpose display.

Prewarning on

The latent and prewarning functions are switched off by default. The acute warning function is active.
Latent and advance warnings can be activated under "**Prewarning on**".

1. Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**Active Safe (PAS)**"
2. Select "**Prewarning on**".
3. Confirm selection.
 Prewarning is switched on.
 Prewarning is switched off.

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

The brightness of the warning indicator on the door mirror as well as the information and warning stage is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

Setting display brightness on door mirror

You can adjust the basic brightness.

1. Select "**Vehicle**"
> "**Settings**"
> "**LCA**"
2. Select "**Brightness**"
and confirm.
3. Select desired setting
and confirm.

Available setting options:

- "**Dark**"
- "**Mid**"
- "**Bright**"

Light and visibility settings

The exterior and interior lights on the vehicle as well as the visual aids for reversing and the wiper options can be adapted individually.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**and confirm.

Adjusting exterior lights

You can adapt the exterior light functions on the vehicle e.g. daytime driving light mode and off delays of the Welcome Home and Entry functions in the **"Exterior lights"** menu.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Exterior lights"**and confirm.

Adjusting off delay for Welcome Home and Entry functions

The off delay of the Welcome Home and Entry functions can be adapted individually.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Exterior lights"**

2. **"Fade-out"** and confirm.

3. Set desired off delay and confirm the setting.

Converting headlights for left/right-hand traffic (Porsche Dynamic Lighting System)

On vehicles with the Porsche Dynamic Lighting System, you can adjust the headlights for left or right-hand traffic.

Information

The headlights can only be adjusted for left or right-hand traffic when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Exterior lights"**

2. **"L/R driving"** and confirm.

3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Standard"**
Headlight position optimized for right-hand traffic (on left-hand drive vehicles).
- **"Inverted"**
Headlight position optimized for left-hand traffic (on left-hand drive vehicles).

Information

If the headlight position is set to **"Inverted"**, the message "Headlights adapted for LHD/RHD" appears on the multi-purpose display each time the ignition or low beam headlights are switched on.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Activating and deactivating automatic daytime driving lights

The daytime driving lights can be switched on and off (not available in Canada).

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Exterior lights"**

2. Select **"Daytime light"** in the menu.

3. Confirm selection.



Daytime driving lights are activated.



Daytime driving lights are deactivated.

Adjusting interior lights

Interior light functions on the vehicle can be adapted individually in the "Interior lights" menu.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Settings**"
 - > "**Light & Visibility**"
 - > "**Interior lights**" and confirm.

Adjusting brightness of orientation lighting

The brightness of the orientation lighting can be adapted individually.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Settings**"
 - > "**Light & Visibility**"
 - > "**Interior lights**"

2. "**Amb. light**" and confirm.

3. Adjust to the desired brightness and confirm.

Setting interior lighting off delay

The off delay for the lighting in the passenger compartment after closing the vehicle doors can be adapted individually.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Settings**"
 - > "**Light & Visibility**"
 - > "**Interior lights**"

2. "**Fade-out**" and confirm.

3. Set desired off delay and confirm.

Setting wiper operation

You have the option of adjusting the activation mode of the rain sensor and the rear wiper.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Settings**"
 - > "**Light & Visibility**"
 - > "**Wiper**" and confirm.

Setting rain sensor activation

Activation of the rain sensor for the windshield wipers on the windshield in wiper stalk position **1** can be adjusted.

For information on the front wipers:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "FRONT WIPER AND HEADLIGHT WASHER SYSTEM" on page 99.

1. Main menu: Select "**Vehicle**"
 - > "**Settings**"
 - > "**Light & Visibility**"
 - > "**Wiper**"

2. "**Rain sensor**" and confirm.

3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- "**Automatic**"
The rain sensor is activated automatically if the wiper stalk is in position **1** when the ignition is switched on.
- "**Manual**"
The rain sensor remains deactivated if the wiper stalk is in position **1** when the ignition is switched on.

Setting activation of the rear wiper when reverse gear is engaged

You can configure the rear wiper to automatically perform a series of wipes when it is raining when reverse gear is engaged.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Wiper"**

2. **"Rear wiper"** and confirm.

3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Automatic"**
The rear wiper performs a series of wipes when reverse gear is engaged.
- **"Manual"**
The rear wiper is not activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Lowering door mirror on passenger's side when parking

You can configure the door mirror on the passenger's side to tilt downwards automatically when reverse gear is engaged to provide a better view of the curb.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Light & Visibility"**
 - > **"Revers. opt."**and confirm.

2. Select **"Lowering mirr."**.

3. Confirm selection.

- Door mirror is lowered.
- Door mirror is not lowered.

Locking settings

The locking and unlocking settings on the vehicle can be adjusted.

The Entry function can be switched on and off.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Locking"**and confirm.

Setting door unlocking

You can configure specific doors to unlock when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Locking"**

2. **"Door unlock"** and confirm.

3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"All doors"**
All doors and the tailgate are unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked.
- **"Driver's door"**
The driver's door and the tailgate are unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked.

Setting door locking

You can configure the doors to remain unlocked or lock automatically after a delay on entering the vehicle.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Locking"**
2. **"Door lock"**
and confirm.
3. Select desired setting
and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Off"**
The doors are not locked automatically after entering the vehicle.
- **"After ign. on"**
The doors are locked automatically when the ignition is switched on.
- **"After drive-off"**
The doors are locked automatically after driving off.

Switching Comfort Entry on and off

You can configure the driver's seat and steering wheel to move back automatically and allow the driver to get in and out of the vehicle more easily.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Locking"**
2. Select **"Comfort Entry"**.
3. Confirm selection.
 Comfort Entry is activated.
 Comfort Entry is deactivated.

Setting air conditioning

The automatic air conditioning can be changed individually.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Air conditioning"**
and confirm.

Adjusting air flow

The strength of the air flow and the air quantity can be adjusted.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Air conditioning"**
2. **"Climate style"**
and confirm.
3. Select desired setting
and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Soft"**
- **"Normal"**
- **"Strong"**

Switching extended ventilation panel on and off

The extended ventilation panel on top of the dashboard can be switched on or off.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Air conditioning"**
2. Select **"Vent. panel"**.
3. Confirm selection.
 Ventilation panel is activated.
 Ventilation panel is deactivated.

Switching automatic air-recirculation mode on/off

You can configure the fresh air supply to adjust automatically to the air quality.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Air conditioning"**
2. Select **"Auto air circ."**.
3. Confirm selection.
 Automatic air-recirculation mode is activated.
 Automatic air-recirculation mode is deactivated.

Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel

The assignment of the MFS button on the multi-function steering wheel can be changed individually.

Functions from the multi-purpose display or PCM/CDR can be assigned to the MFS button.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Steering wheel op."**
2. Select **"Multif. key"** and confirm.
3. Select **"PCM function"** or **"Cluster function"** and confirm.
4. Select desired function assignment and confirm.

Available PCM functions:

- **"Source change"**
Change audio source.
- **"Voice control"**
Activate voice control.
- **"Dri. instr. (Repeat instr)"**
Repeat voice instruction from the navigation system.
- **"Station/track <"**
Previous radio station/title.
- **"Station/track >"**
Next radio station/track.
- **"Map"**
Display navigation map in PCM.
- **"Menu change"**
Change main menu area.

Available instrument cluster functions:

- **"Vehicle menu"**
Display vehicle menu.
- **"Trip menu"**
Display trip menu.
- **"TPM menu"**
Display TPM menu.
- **"ACC menu"**
Display ACC menu.
- **"Audio menu"**
Display audio menu.
- **"Phone menu"**
Display Phone menu.
- **"Navigation"**
Display Navigation menu.
- **"Map menu"**
Display navigation map on the multi-purpose display.

Switching off compass display on the dashboard

The compass display on the dashboard can be switched off and then on again.

For information on the compass display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "COMPASS ON THE DASHBOARD" on page 108.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Compass"**
2. Select **"No display"**.
3. Confirm selection.
 Compass display is switched off.
 Compass display is switched on.

Adjusting volume of warning and information tones

The volume of the warning tones and ParkAssist information tones can be adjusted.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Volume"**and confirm.

Adjusting ParkAssist volume

The volume of the ParkAssist information tones can be adjusted.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Volume"**
2. Select **"ParkAssist"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Loud"**
- **"Medium"**
- **"Low"**

Adjusting volume of warning tones

The volume of the warning tones can be adjusted individually.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Volume"**
2. Select **"Warn. tones"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"Loud"**
- **"Medium"**
- **"Low"**

Setting units

You can set the units of measurement for vehicle displays, e.g. the speed on the digital speedometer in the instrument panel, the compass, the temperature gauge in the air-conditioning displays and the tire pressure display on the multi-purpose display.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Units"**and confirm.

Setting speedometer and compass units

The units used for speed and distance information on the speedometer and compass display can be adjusted.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Units"**
2. Select **"Speedometer"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"km / km/h"**
- **"Miles / mph"**

Setting unit for temperature gauges

The measurement unit for temperature gauges can be changed.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
 - > **"Settings"**
 - > **"Units"**
2. Select **"Temperature"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"°C"**
- **"°F"**

Setting unit for Tire Pressure Monitoring display

The measurement unit for the Tire Pressure Monitoring display can be changed.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Units"**
2. Select **"Tire pressure"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"bar"**
- **"psi"**

Setting unit for boost-pressure gauge

The unit for the boost-pressure gauge can be set on the Cayenne Turbo.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Units"**
2. Select **"Boost pressure"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"bar"**
- **"psi"**

Setting unit for fuel consumption display

The unit can be set for the fuel consumption display.

1. Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Units"**
2. Select **"Consumption"**.
3. Select desired setting and confirm.

Available setting options:

- **"l/100 km"**
- **"MPG (US)"**
- **"MPG (UK)"**
- **"km/l"**

Changing the language

The language of the display text on the multi-function display can be changed.

1. Main menu: Select **"Vehicle"**
> **"Settings"**
> **"Language"**
2. Select desired language and confirm.

Overview of Warning Messages

If a warning message appears, always refer to the corresponding sections in this Owner's Manual.

Warning messages are issued only if all measurement prerequisites are met.

Therefore, check all fluid levels regularly – in particular, always check the engine oil level before refueling.

Warning message categories

Red warning: System failure warning










- ▷ Visit or consult an authorized Porsche dealer immediately.



















Yellow warning: Fault or system failure warning

- ▷ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer at the next opportunity.






















Yellow warning: Information message

- ▷ Visit an authorized Porsche dealer at the next opportunity or remedy yourself.






















| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|--|--|
|  | Oil press. too low | Stop immediately in a suitable place and switch engine off. Do not continue driving. Select "Oil level" on the multi-purpose display. Add engine oil if necessary. Do not continue driving if the warning light comes on even when the oil level is correct. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  | Fault Oil pressure monitoring | The oil pressure can no longer be monitored automatically. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  | Failure Oil level measurement | The oil level can no longer be monitored automatically. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  | Oil level minimum reached | Top up engine oil immediately. |
|  | Oil level below minimum | Top up engine oil immediately. |
|  | Oil level above maximum | Visit an authorized Porsche dealer at the next opportunity and have the oil drained to the correct level. |
|  | Oil temperature display defective | The oil temperature is no longer monitored automatically. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  | Oil temperature too high | Engine oil temperature too high. Switch off engine and let it cool down. Check engine oil level. Add engine oil if necessary. |
|  | Engine temperature too high | Coolant temperature too high. Switch off engine and allow to cool. Check coolant level. Add coolant if necessary. |
| Warning light on the coolant temperature gauge flashes | Coolant display defective | The coolant temperature is no longer monitored automatically. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |





















| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|---|--|
| Warning light on the coolant temperature gauge flashes |  Check coolant level | Switch off engine and allow to cool. Check coolant level. Add coolant if necessary. |
| |  Fault Generator | Stop in a suitable place and switch engine off. Do not continue driving. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Battery protection Consumer switch-off | Various comfort loads are deactivated to avoid running down the battery. |
| |  Start/Stop not available | The Start Stop function is not available at present. |
| |  Start/Stop mode deactivated | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Boost pressure display defective | The boost pressure display (Cayenne Turbo only) is defective. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  Reduced engine power | Consult an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  Check Engine | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Please start engine manually | Start the engine manually at the ignition. |
| |  Move gear lever to position P | Tiptronic S transmission: Move selector lever to position P before removing key from ignition lock. Danger: If the selector-lever is not in position P, the vehicle could roll away. |
| |  Move gear lever to position P or N | Tiptronic S transmission: Engine can only be started in selector-lever position P or N. |
| |  Gearbox emergency operation | Restricted gearshift comfort, have the fault corrected immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Gearbox emergency operation | No selector-lever position is displayed on the instrument panel. The transmission remains in 3rd gear. Reverse gear can also be engaged. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| Selector-lever position display flashes |  | There is a problem with the selector-lever. It is not possible to engage a gear without pressing the brake. Have the fault corrected immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Gearbox temperature too high | Transmission temperature is too high. Engine torque will be reduced. Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator on a hill, for example. Hold the vehicle with the brake. Reduce engine load. Stop the vehicle in a suitable place if possible. Allow the engine to run in selector-lever position P or N until the warning disappears. |
| |  Press brake | Tiptronic S transmission: Apply the brake when starting. |









| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|---|---|
| |  Press clutch | Manual transmission: Depress clutch pedal when starting. |
| BRAKE  |  Warning Brake fluid level | Stop immediately in a suitable place. Do not continue driving. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| BRAKE  |  Warning Brake force distribution | Stop immediately in a suitable place. Do not continue driving. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| ABS  |  ABS failure | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Brake pad worn | Have brake pads replaced immediately. Consult an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| BRAKE  flashes |  Release electric parking brake | Pull the electric parking brake switch. |
| BRAKE  |  Press brake pedal | Press the brake pedal when releasing the electric parking brake. |
|  |  Fault Electric parking brake | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Electric parking brake in service mode | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| BRAKE  flashes |  | Emergency braking function of electric parking brake active. |
| |  PHC failure | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |

| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|---|--|
|  |  PSM failure | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  PSM off | Porsche Stability Management was switched off. |
| |  PSM on | Porsche Stability Management was switched on. |
| |  PSM turned on automatically | Porsche Traction Management is overloaded. Reduce load. Or air spring, PDCC or rear differential lock fault. Contact an authorized Porsche dealer if the fault persists. |
| |  Speed too high | An off-road driving program can only be engaged at a speed of less than 20 mph (30 km/h). Reduce speed. |
| |  Temp limit All-wheel dr. system Reduce load | Porsche Traction Management is overloaded. Reduce load. |
| |  All-wheel dr. system overloaded | Temporary failure of Porsche Traction Management. Reduce load. |
| |  All-wheel drive system fault | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Offroad mode on/off | Off-road driving program engaged/switched off. |
| |  Center-differential lock on/off | Center-differential lock is engaged/switched off. |
| |  Rear differential lock on/off | Rear differential lock is engaged/switched off. |
| |  Fault Differential lock | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Sport unavail. with active off-road function | Engage on-road driving program in order to activate Sport mode. |
| |  Sport unavailable | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| Fuel gauge warning light on |  Mind remaining distance | Refuel at the next opportunity. |
| |  Fault Fuel gage | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  Check fuel tank cap | Position tank cap correctly and screw on until it locks securely. |
| |  Refill washer fluid | Refill washer fluid. |

| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|---|--|
|  |  Fasten seat belt | All vehicle occupants must fasten their safety belts. |
| |  Airbag warning light failure | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Steering locked | The steering wheel lock is faulty. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Relieve steering | Relieve the steering lock by turning the steering wheel to the left or right. |
| |  Heated steering wheel on/off | Steering wheel heating is switched on/off. |
| |  Fault Steering lock | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Ignition key not removed | Remove the ignition key. |
| |  Fault Ignition lock | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Ignition lock faulty | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Fault Porsche Entry & Drive | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Key in luggage space | Remove key from luggage compartment. |
| |  Key not recognized | Make sure that you have the car key with you. |
| |  Replace ignition key battery | Replace the battery in the car key. |
| |  Multiple keys recognized in vehicle | Information message: Several car keys in the vehicle, e.g. in the possession of a passenger. |
| |  Close doors to lock vehicle | Close all doors and the tailgate before locking the vehicle. |
| |  Chassis system fault | Vehicle handling may be affected. Adapt your speed to the changed conditions. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Chassis system failure | Stop immediately in a suitable place. Do not continue driving. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Sport/Normal/Comfort chassis | Chassis setup "Sport", "Normal" or "Comfort" selected. |

| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|--|--|
| |  PDCC fault | Vehicle handling may be affected. Adapt your speed to the changed conditions. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  PDCC failure | The lateral inclination of the vehicle is significantly greater when cornering. Drive carefully at an appropriate speed to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  Tire pressure! | Tire Pressure Monitoring detects a pressure loss of more than 7 psi / 0.5 bar / 50 kPa at a speed of less than 100 mph (160 km/h) and more than 6 psi / 0.4 bar / 40 kPa at a speed of more than 100 mph (160 km/h). Stop in a suitable place and check the tires indicated for damage. If necessary, fill in tire sealant and set the correct tire pressure or change the wheel. |
|  |  Inflate! | Tire Pressure Monitoring detects a pressure loss of more than 4 psi / 0.3 bar / 30 kPa. Correct the tire pressure at the next opportunity. |
|  |  Restricted monitoring | Fault on one or both wheel transmitters. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  No monitoring System is learning | Tire Pressure Monitoring requires a certain amount of time to learn the wheels. During this time, the current tire pressures are not available on the multi-purpose display. |
|  |  System not active | Fault in Tire Pressure Monitoring system. Tire pressure is not monitored. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  |  System not active Temporary fault | Temporary fault in the Tire Pressure Monitoring system. Tire pressure is not monitored. |
|  |  Tire change? Update settings! | The tire settings on the multi-purpose display must be updated after changing a wheel. |
|  |  | Fault in Tire Pressure Monitoring system. Tire pressure is not monitored. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Driving light on | Driving light/side light on. |
| |  Parking light on | Left/right parking light on. |
| |  Check front left indicator Also applies to: Parking lights, dipped headlights/ high beam, indicators, rear reverse light, rear number plate light, rear brake lights, high-level brake light, rear tail lights, trailer indicators, trailer brake light, trailer tail lights, fog lights, rear fog lights, daytime lights, side indicators | The reported light is faulty. Check bulb. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |

| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---|---|---|
| |  Headlight beam adjust. defective | Adjust your speed and driving style. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  flashes |  | Headlight control fault. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Vehicle lightning fault | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Headlights adapted for LHD/RHD | Headlights have been changed for countries with left/right-hand traffic |
|  flashes |  | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
|  lights up |  | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Check static cornering light, left/right | The reported light is faulty. Check bulb. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Rain/light sensor defective | Switch on wipers/light manually. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Wiper defective | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Sunroof not closed fully | Close sliding roof fully. |
| |  LCA temporarily unavailable | LCA is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or traffic congestion. Reactivate LCA by pressing the button. |
| |  Fault LCA | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  LCA sensors blocked | LCA sensors can be blocked by bicycle carriers, stickers, dirt or a build-up of ice, for example. Remove these. Reactivate LCA by pressing the button. |
| |  LCA trailer mode not available | LCA cannot be activated when towing a trailer. |
| |  Distance! Please brake! | Insufficient distance from vehicle in front. |
| |  ACC/PAS unavailable | Adapt your speed and driving style. Have the adaptive cruise control or Porsche "Active Safe" fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Fault Instrument cluster/ParkAssist sound | Turn signal tones, acoustic warning and distance signals (e.g. for ParkAssist) are not available. Please remember this when parking, for example. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |

| Light on instrument panel | Warning message on the multi-purpose display | Meaning/Action required |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| |  Fault ParkAssist | Acoustic warning and distance signals for ParkAssist are not available. Please remember this when parking, for example. Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Limit 1 or 2 exceeded | Preset speed limit 1 or 2 has been exceeded. |
| |  System fault | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Fault Check Engine | Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer. |
| |  Example: Full maintenance in XXX mls | Service reminder. Bring the vehicle in for service no later than after the distance/time shown has elapsed. The intervals in the "Maintenance" booklet are decisive however. |
| |  Tailgate | Close the tailgate. |
| |  Example: Door open!  Also: Doors, engine compartment lid | Close door/lid indicated. |

Driving and Driving Safety

| | |
|--|-----|
| Ignition Lock, Steering Lock..... | 148 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine | 150 |
| Auto Start Stop Function..... | 152 |
| Electric Parking Brake | 154 |
| Brakes | 155 |
| Cruise Control..... | 158 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control | 160 |
| Lane Change Assist (LCA) | 170 |
| Car Audio Operation/Tips..... | 176 |
| Porsche Communication Management (PCM) | 178 |
| USB/iPod® and AUX..... | 178 |
| Voice Control | 179 |
| Manual Transmission, Clutch | 179 |
| Tiptronic S..... | 180 |
| Selector-Lever Positions | 181 |
| Driving Programs for On-Road and Off-Road | |
| Driving | 184 |
| Transmission and Chassis Control Systems.. | 188 |
| Air Suspension with Leveling System and | |
| Height Adjustment..... | 195 |
| Porsche Active Suspension Management | |
| (PASM) | 197 |
| Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC).... | 198 |
| Off-Road Driving | 198 |
| Driving Systems for Off-Road Driving | 199 |



UA1-106

Ignition Lock, Steering Lock

The ignition key is inserted into the ignition lock underneath the light switch at the left of the steering wheel.

On vehicles with **Porsche Entry & Drive**, you no longer have to insert the key into the ignition lock, but merely keep it with you. The ignition key is replaced by a control unit in the ignition lock, which **always** remains in the ignition lock, unless the vehicle is being towed.

The ignition lock has three key positions.

NOTICE

Risk of damage due to additional weight.

The ignition lock may be damaged if additional weight is attached to the inserted ignition key, e.g. a heavy bunch of keys and/or key tag.

- ▷ Do not attach a heavy weight to the inserted ignition key.



UA1-107

Key positions
0 - Initial position
1 - Ignition on
2 - Start engine

i Information

The vehicle battery discharges if the ignition key is left inserted.

If the vehicle battery is dead, the key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the emergency operation is performed:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY OPERATION – UNLOCKING THE IGNITION KEY” on page 149.

Ignition lock position 0 – Initial position

The engine and the ignition are switched off in ignition lock position **0**.

The ignition key can be removed in ignition lock position **0**.

Ignition lock position 1 – Ignition on

- ▷ Turn ignition key to position **1**.

All electrical equipment can be switched on.

The warning lights on the instrument panel light up for a lamp check.

If a load is not switched on for 2 minutes after switching on the ignition, the ignition must be switched on again.

Turn the ignition key to ignition lock position **0** (initial position) first.

The ignition key cannot be removed when the ignition is switched on or when the engine has been started.

To remove the ignition key:

- ▷ Stop the vehicle.
- ▷ **On vehicles with Tiptronic S:**
Move Tiptronic selector lever to position **P**.
- ▷ Switch ignition off.
- ▷ Remove the ignition key.

Ignition lock position 2 – Start engine

- ▷ Turn ignition key to ignition lock position **2**.

The car key is reset automatically from position 2 to position 1 when you start the engine.

Locking the steering column

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive

The steering column is locked automatically when the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock and unlocked automatically when the ignition key is inserted into the ignition lock.

Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive

The steering column is locked automatically when the driver's door is opened when the ignition is switched off or when the vehicle is locked.

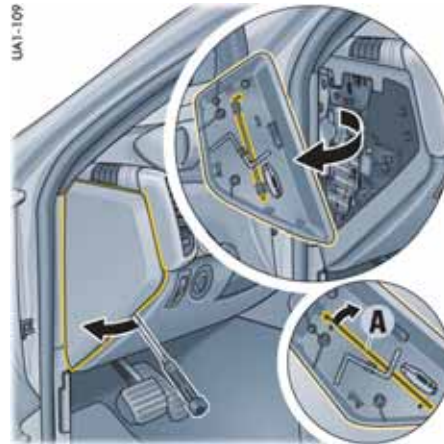
It is unlocked automatically when the alarm system is disabled using the key, when the driver's door is opened with Porsche Entry & Drive or when the ignition is switched on.

Emergency operation with Porsche Entry & Drive

Interference in radio transmission between the vehicle and ignition lock or a discharged ignition lock battery can disable the Porsche Entry & Drive comfort function.

If this happens, the control unit can be removed from the ignition lock and the vehicle can be started using the standard ignition key.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION – UNLOCKING THE IGNITION KEY" on page 149.



Emergency operation – unlocking the ignition key

If the vehicle battery is dead, the ignition key (or the control unit on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive) can only be removed if the emergency operation is performed.

1. Carefully lever off the fuse box cover on the driver's side with a screwdriver and remove it.
2. Unclip metal hook **A** on the inside of the fuse box cover.



3. Use metal hook **A** to remove the plastic cover **B** from the ignition lock. Make sure that plastic cover **B** is not lost.



4. Turn ignition key to ignition lock position **O** (initial position).
5. Press metal hook **A** into opening **C**. You will hear an unlocking noise.
6. Remove the ignition key in initial position **O**.
7. Re-fit the plastic cover **B**.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

The immobilizer can be deactivated and the engine started only using an authorized ignition key.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “IMMOBILIZER” on page 237.

WARNING Exhaust Gas

Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless carbon monoxide (CO), which is toxic even in low concentrations. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

- ▷ Never start or let the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area. It is not recommended to sit in your car for prolonged periods with the engine on and the car not moving.

WARNING Exhaust System Fire Hazard

Exhaust fumes and the exhaust system are very hot when the engine is running. The exhaust system remains hot for some time after the engine is turned off.

- ▷ Do not park or drive your vehicle where combustible materials, such as dry grass or leaves, can come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▷ If your car catches on fire for any reason, call the fire department. Do not endanger your life by attempting to put out the fire.

NOTICE

An unattended vehicle with a running engine is potentially hazardous. If warning lights come on to indicate improper operation, no one would be present to observe the light and turn off the engine.

- ▷ Never leave the engine idling unattended.

Starting the vehicle

- ▷ Operate the footbrake.
- ▷ Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal. Put the gearshift lever in neutral (vehicles with manual transmission) **or on vehicles with**

Tiptronic S:

move Tiptronic selector lever to position **P** or **N**.

- ▷ Do not press the accelerator pedal. The engine control unit will provide the correct starting mixture.
- ▷ Turn the ignition key or control unit (Porsche Entry & Drive) to ignition lock position **2**. The starting process is carried out and completed automatically as soon as ignition lock position **2** (start engine) is reached. The ignition key or control unit is reset automatically to ignition lock position **1** (ignition on).
- ▷ Do not operate the starter for more than approx. 10 seconds. If necessary, repeat the starting procedure after a pause of approx. 10 seconds. Turn the ignition key back to ignition lock position **0** (initial position) first. The first operation of the starter is ended automatically when the engine starts. If the engine does not start, subsequent starter operations will not be ended automatically.
- ▷ Do not warm up the engine when stationary. Drive off immediately. Avoid high revolutions and full throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.
- ▷ If the vehicle battery power is too weak, the engine can be started with jumper cables.

For information on jump-lead starting:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY, EMERGENCY STARTING WITH JUMPER CABLES" on page 292.

Information

To ensure a good battery charge condition, thereby ensuring that the battery will start the engine, all electrical loads that are not required should be switched off when the ignition is switched on and when engine revolutions are low (in traffic jams, in city traffic or in queues).

Stopping

- ▷ Only remove the ignition key when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Only switch the ignition off when the vehicle is stationary, as there is no power steering and brake booster assistance when the engine is switched off.
- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, **always** remove the ignition key, apply the electric parking brake and engage Tiptronic selector-lever position **P** on vehicles with Tiptronic S, or engage first gear or reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission.
On vehicles with **Porsche Entry & Drive**, the control unit **always** remains in the ignition lock.

Information

The vehicle battery discharges if the ignition key is left inserted.

WARNING Hot Engine Parts

Engine components become very hot when the engine is running.

- ▷ Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently.

WARNING Hot Exhaust Tailpipe

The exhaust pipe is hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- ▷ To prevent injury, make a point of noting where your vehicle's exhaust pipe is, avoid placing your legs near the exhaust pipe when loading and unloading cargo in the rear, and closely supervise children around the vehicle during time when the exhaust pipe could be hot. A hot exhaust pipe can cause painful skin burns.

Radiator fan

For information on radiator fans:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "RADIATOR FANS" on page 245.

Auto Start Stop Function

The engine stops automatically when the vehicle is stopped, e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic jam. The Auto Start Stop function thus helps to save fuel.

The ignition stays on even when the engine switches off automatically. All safety functions are still available.

Stopping the engine

The Auto Start Stop function stops the engine shortly after the vehicle stops moving.

1. Use the footbrake to stop the vehicle.
2. Keep the footbrake pressed.

or

Move Tiptronic selector lever to position **P**.

Preconditions for stopping the engine

- Auto Start Stop function switched on.
- Engine compartment lid closed.
- Driver detected: driver's safety belt fastened and driver's door closed.
- Tiptronic selector lever in position **D**, **N** or **P** or transmission range **1** or **2** selected manually.
- Engine, transmission and battery are at operating temperature.
- Vehicle was driven at a speed of more than approx. 1 mph (2 km/h) for at least 1.5 seconds since the engine last stopped automatically.

Starting the engine

The Auto Start Stop function starts the engine:

- ▷ In Tiptronic selector-lever position **D**, **N** or manually selected transmission range **1** or **2** Release the footbrake.

or

Press the accelerator.

or

- ▷ Move Tiptronic gear selector to position **R**.

You can drive off normally.



Information

The engine will start automatically in certain situations, e.g. if the vehicle starts rolling, if air conditioning causes reduced comfort, or if the brake vacuum is reduced.

Starting the engine manually after leaving the vehicle

If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled or the driver's door is opened after the engine was stopped automatically, the engine will **not** start automatically.

Furthermore, if the brake is released, the engine has to be started manually.

The message "Please start engine manually" will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Exceptions for the Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function is **not** available in the following situations, for example:

- When Sport mode is activated.
- When PSM is off.
- In Maneuvering mode.
- When AC MAX mode is activated.
- When the "windshield defrost" function is active.
- When an attached trailer is detected.
- While adjusting the chassis level.
- When the rear fog light is on.
- When the off-road driving program is active.
- When windshield heating is on.
- At altitudes of more than approx. 2500 m (Cayenne S and Cayenne Turbo only).
- ▷ The Start Stop function must be deactivated manually if a trailer hitch from another manufacturer is installed on the vehicle.

For information on switching off the Start Stop function:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SWITCHING AUTO START STOP FUNCTION ON AND OFF" on page 153.

The Auto Start Stop function is available **with limited functionality** in the following situations, for example:

- If the air conditioning or passenger compartment heating is operated at a high setting or if the defrost function is run for long time periods.
- If the battery charging condition is low.
- On upward or downward slopes.
- During internal vehicle test procedures, e.g. automatic engine checks.


Information

If one of these situations arises after the engine has stopped automatically, the engine can be restarted automatically.




Switching Auto Start Stop function on and off

Switching on

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button goes out.
The engine stops automatically when the vehicle stops.

Switching off

- ▷ Press button .
The indicator light on the button lights up.
The engine's Auto Stop function is disabled.

Auto Start Stop function display

Stopping the engine automatically and restart readiness

If the engine was stopped automatically by the Auto Start Stop function **and** if the driver is detected in the vehicle (driver's safety belt fastened and driver's door closed), the indicator light on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel will light up green.

Engine does not stop or is not ready to restart

If the Auto Stop function is not available or if no driver is detected in the vehicle after the engine has stopped automatically (driver's safety belt open or driver's door open), the indicator light on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel will light up yellow when the vehicle is stationary.

The Auto Start Stop system has detected that:

- At least one precondition for stopping the engine automatically is not met.

or

- There is at least one exception for the Auto Start Stop function.

For information on preconditions for stopping the engine automatically:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "PRECONDITIONS FOR STOPPING THE ENGINE" on page 152.

For information on exceptions for the Auto Start Stop function:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EXCEPTIONS FOR THE AUTO START STOP FUNCTION" on page 152.

i **Information**

If the indicator light in the multi-purpose display continuously lights up yellow when the vehicle is stopped and if the engine does not stop regularly when the vehicle is stopped despite the fact that the preconditions for stopping the engine automatically are met, this may be an indication that the battery is weak.

- ▷ Have the Auto Start Stop system checked the next time you visit your authorized Porsche dealer.

Fault reporting

If there is a fault, the warning message “Start/Stop mode deactivated” will appear on the multi-purpose display in the instrument panel.

- ▷ Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.



Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake acts on the rear wheels and serves to secure the vehicle while parked.

Applying the parking brake

- ▷ Press switch (P).
The brake warning light on the instrument panel lights up.

For information on indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument panel:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “INSTRUMENT PANEL USA MODELS” on page 103.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “INSTRUMENT PANEL CANADA MODELS” on page 104.

Releasing the parking brake

The electric parking brake can only be released when the ignition is switched on.

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Pull switch (P).
The brake warning light on the instrument panel goes out.

Automatic electric parking brake release when driver's intention to drive off is detected

If the engine is running, the driver's door is closed and the driver's safety belt is fastened, it is still possible to drive off even though the electric parking brake is on.

The electric parking brake detects the driver's intention to drive off and releases automatically. The warning light on the instrument panel goes out.

If the driver's door is not closed or the driver's safety belt is not fastened, the electric parking brake will not be released automatically when the driver attempts to drive off.




The message “Release electric parking brake” appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel. The brake warning light on the instrument panel and the indicator light on the switch (P) start to flash.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Emergency braking function

If the conventional brake system has failed, the vehicle can be decelerated quickly and braked to a stop using the electric parking brake.

- ▷ Press switch  and keep it pressed. The brake warning light on the instrument panel and the indicator light on the switch  start to flash. A warning signal also sounds and  appears on the multi-purpose display. The emergency braking function is deactivated when you release the switch.



Information

Severe braking. Emergency braking takes place with very high braking power.

- ▷ Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation.
- ▷ Do not use the emergency braking function to stop the vehicle when driving normally.

BRAKE Brake warning light USA

Brake warning light Canada

If the electric parking brake could not be applied fully when the vehicle is stopped, the brake warning light in the instrument panel starts to flash.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Brakes

- ▷ Make it a habit to check the operation of your brakes before driving.

Keep in mind that the braking distance increases very rapidly as the speed increases. At 60 mph (100 km/h), for example, it is not twice but four times longer than 30 mph (50 km/h). Tire traction is also less effective when the roads are wet or slippery.

- ▷ Therefore, always maintain a safe distance from the car in front of you.

Vehicles without Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

Even though the brake disks consist of alloyed gray cast iron, they will unavoidably start to corrode if your car is parked for an extended period. The brakes will tend to “rub” as a result. The nature, extent and effects of corrosion depend on the amount of time the vehicle was parked, whether road salt or grit was spread and whether grease-dissolving agents were used in car washes.

If the braking comfort is noticeably impaired, we recommend having the brake system checked by experts at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Brake system function

Your Porsche is equipped with a power assisted hydraulic dual circuit brake system with disk brakes at the front and rear.

Both circuits function independently. One brake circuit operates the front left and rear right wheel and the other operates the front right and rear left wheel.

If one brake circuit has failed, the other will still operate. However, you will notice an increased pedal travel when you apply the brakes. Failure of one brake circuit will cause the stopping distance to increase.

WARNING

Brake Hydraulic Failure Recovery

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency function in the extreme event of a complete hydraulic failure of the brake system. If your brake peddle goes all the way to the floor, do not pump the brakes.

- ▷ Push the brake pedal down firmly and hold it in that position. A mechanical linkage activates the second circuit, and you will be able to bring the vehicle to a stop.
 - ▷ After bringing your vehicle to a complete stop, avoid driving the vehicle and instead have it towed to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer for repair.
-

Brake system warning light

You can check the functionality of the brake system warning light by switching the ignition to the "On" position (position **1**) and verifying that the warning light illuminates.

BRAKE Brake warning light USA

Brake warning light Canada

The warning light in the instrument panel lights up. A message will be displayed on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the brake fluid level is too low, or (if the brake pedal travel has increased) one of the two brake circuits has failed. A greater braking pressure will be required, stopping distances will be longer and the braking behavior will change, particularly in curves.

With correctly adjusted brakes and a correctly working brake system, the pedal travel to the point of brake application should be 1-3/16 in. to 1-9/16 in. (30 to 40 mm). Whenever the brake pedal travel exceeds this value, have the brake system checked.

Brake pedal

 **WARNING** Obstruction of Brake Pedal

Unsuitable or incorrectly fixed floor mats or objects can reduce the travel of the brake pedal or prevent you applying the brake pedal.

- ▷ Always check the movement of the brake pedal before driving and make sure that it is not obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.
 - ▷ Secure the floor mat to prevent it from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle.
- Your authorized Porsche dealer will be glad to offer you floor mats of the correct size including a securing possibility.

Information

In case one of the two brake circuits fails, increased pedal travel is required to bring your vehicle to a full stop.

 **WARNING** Riding the Brakes

- ▷ Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift the transmission into a lower gear to control speed.
- ▷ Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when not intending to apply brake pressure.
- ▷ Do not hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to overheat and lose braking power.

Brake booster

The brake booster assists braking only when the engine is running.

When the car is moving while the engine is not running, or if the brake booster is defective, more pressure on the brake pedal is required to bring the car to a stop.

Moisture, road salt or grit on brakes affects braking. Brakes will dry after a few cautious brake applications.

 **WARNING** Wet Brakes

Driving through water may reduce the traction. Moisture on brakes from road water, car wash, or a coating of road salt or grit may affect braking efficiency.

- ▷ Cautiously apply brakes to test and dry the brakes after exposure to road water, etc.

 **WARNING** Loss of Braking Power

The brake booster is ready for operation only while the engine is running. If the engine is switched off or there is a defect in the brake booster, much greater force has to be applied to the pedal when braking.

- ▷ Vehicles with defective brakes must not be towed and must be transported on a flat bed.

For information on towing:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "TOWING" on page 302.

Brake wear

Your car has excellent brakes, but they are still subject to wear. The rate at which they wear depends on how the brakes are used.

- ▷ Have the brake system inspected at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Booklet.

Brake system warning light

You can check the functionality of the brake system warning light by switching the ignition to the “On” position (position **1**) and verifying that the warning light illuminates.



Brake wear warning message USA

Brake wear warning message Canada

A warning message will be displayed on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the brake pads are worn, excessively.

- ▷ Do not continue to operate the vehicle. Have your authorized Porsche dealer inspect or replace the brake pads.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Brake pads and brake disks

Wear on the brake pads and brake disks depends to a great extent on the driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can therefore cause the brakes to “squeal”.

WARNING

Obstructed Brake Pedal

Unsuitable or incorrectly installed floor mats or objects can obstruct the movement of the brake pedal or prevent application of the brake pedal.

- ▷ Do not obstruct the pedal travel with floor mats or other objects.

WARNING

Wet Brakes

In heavy rain, while driving through water or after leaving a car wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased pressure may be required.

- ▷ For this reason, keep further back from the vehicle in front and “dry” the brakes by applying them at intervals. Make sure that the traffic behind you is not affected.

WARNING

Reduced Braking Efficiency

After a long drive over salted or gritted roads, a coating may form on the brake disks and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore also braking effect.

- ▷ Even though the brake disks consist of alloyed gray cast iron, they will unavoidably start to corrode if your vehicle is parked for an extended period. The brakes will tend to “rub” as a result.

The nature, extent and effects of corrosion depend on the amount of time the vehicle was parked, whether road salt or grit was spread and whether grease-dissolving agents were used in car washes (not on vehicles with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake).

To prevent corrosion of the brake disks, “brake them dry” before parking the vehicle (not on vehicles with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake).

If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, we recommend that you have the brake system checked by experts at an authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▷ To relieve the brake system on downhill stretches, change down to a lower gear in good time (engine braking). If engine braking is insufficient on steep stretches, operate the footbrake at intervals. Avoid continuous braking as it overheats the brakes and reduces the braking effect.

For information on brake fluid and checking the brake fluid level:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “BRAKE FLUID” on page 245.

New brake pads or linings

New brake pads have to be “broken in”, and therefore only attain optimal friction when the car has covered several hundred miles or km. The slightly reduced braking ability must be compensated for by pressing the brake pedal harder. This applies whenever the brake pads and/or brake disks are replaced.



- A** - Switch cruise control on/off
- 1** - Set/increase desired speed
- 2** - Reduce desired speed
- 3** - Interrupt (OFF)
- 4** - Return to set speed (RESUME)

Cruise Control

Cruise control maintains any selected speed between approx. 20–150 mph (30–240 km/h) without you having to use the accelerator. Cruise control is operated using the control stalk at the bottom left of the steering wheel.

Vehicles with Tiptronic S

Downshifts are carried out to help maintain the pre-selected speed (especially when driving downhill).

⚠ WARNING Misuse of Cruise Control

If the current traffic situation does not allow you to drive safely at a constant speed and with sufficient distance to the vehicle in front, using the cruise control can cause accidents.

- ▷ Do not use the cruise control in heavy traffic, in city traffic, on twisting roads or under unfavorable road conditions (e.g. wintry or wet conditions, varying road surfaces).
- ▷ Observe all local and national speed limits.
- ▷ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes while driving.

Switching cruise control readiness on

- ▷ Press button **A** on the control stalk.



Cruise control readiness

The gray symbol on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel indicates readiness.

Maintaining and storing speed

- 1.** Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed using the accelerator pedal.
- 2.** Push the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).
The current driving speed is now stored as the desired speed, which will be maintained automatically.



Desired speed

The desired speed that was stored is displayed under the cruise control symbol, which has now turned orange.

Accelerating (e.g. to overtake)

Variant 1

- ▷ Increase the speed as usual with the accelerator pedal.
When you ease off the accelerator, the previously stored value is set again.

Variant 2

- ▷ Push the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h).
- or**
Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward and keep it pressed (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 5 mph (10 km/h).

The new desired speed is displayed on the multi-purpose display in the instrument panel.

Decelerating

- ▷ Briefly pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel (position **2**). The desired speed is decreased in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h).
- or**
Pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel and keep it pulled (position **2**). The desired speed is decreased in steps of 5 mph (10 km/h).

The new desired speed is displayed on the multi-purpose display in the instrument panel.

Vehicles with Tiptronic S

Downshifts are carried out to help maintain the pre-selected speed (especially when driving downhill).

Cayenne S and Cayenne Turbo only:

If the driving speed is more than 1 mph (1 km/h) higher or lower than the set speed, the current driving speed is set when you move the control stalk to position **1** or **2** briefly.

Interrupting cruise control operation – OFF

The speed driven before the interruption remains stored in the memory and can be reactivated by pressing the control stalk.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “RESUMING THE STORED SPEED – RESUME” on page 159.
- ▷ Press the control stalk down (position **3**).
- or**
Press the brake or clutch pedal **or** move the Tiptronic selector lever to position **N**.

Cruise control operation is interrupted automatically:

- If the set vehicle speed is exceeded by more than approx. 16 mph (25 km/h) for longer than 20 seconds.
- If the actual vehicle speed falls below the set vehicle speed by approx. 37 mph (60 km/h) for longer than 60 seconds (e.g. gradients).
- If Porsche Stability Management (PSM) intervenes for longer than 0.5 seconds.

Resuming the stored speed – RESUME

- ▷ Press the control stalk up (position **4**). Cruise control accelerates/decelerates the vehicle to the stored speed.



Information

The stored speed should only be recalled if traffic and road conditions are conducive to driving at that speed.

Switching cruise control readiness off

- ▷ Press button **A** on the control stalk. The memory is cleared and the readiness symbol disappears.

The stored desired speed is cleared when the ignition is switched off when the vehicle is parked.



Information

On upward or downward slopes, the set speed cannot always be maintained by cruise control.

- ▷ To obtain sufficient engine braking or a better engine-speed range, you therefore have to change down to a lower gear.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control maintains any selected speed between approx. 20–100 mph (30–160 km/h) when driving on open roads without you having to use the accelerator.

If a vehicle traveling ahead of you in the same lane is detected as driving slower than the selected speed, adaptive cruise control will automatically maintain a set distance from the vehicle in front. Adaptive cruise control slows your vehicle down if the distance to the vehicle ahead becomes too short and accelerates your vehicle if the distance increases.

⚠ WARNING Misuse of Adaptive Cruise Control

If the current traffic situation does not allow you to drive safely at a constant speed and with sufficient distance to the vehicle in front, using the adaptive cruise control can cause accidents.

- ▷ Do not use the adaptive cruise control in heavy traffic, in city traffic, on twisting roads or under unfavorable road conditions (e.g. wintry or wet conditions, varying road surfaces).
- ▷ Observe all local and national speed limits.

⚠ WARNING Adaptive Cruise Control Limits

Adaptive cruise control will not detect stationary or slowly moving vehicles, pedestrians, objects on the road, oncoming vehicles in the same lane or cross traffic.

- ▷ You must pay attention to your vehicle's position in relation to other objects and intervene as needed to ensure safe driving.
- ▷ Always keep the direction of travel in your field of view.



Radar sensor

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor located in the middle of the front apron (**arrow**).

i Information

- ▷ Always keep the radar sensor clean and free of ice and snow to ensure that it is fully functional.

For car care instructions:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS" on page 255.

⚠ WARNING Radiofrequency radiation exposure

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in. (20 cm) between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

⚠ WARNING Weather Impairment of Radar Sensor

Radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow, ice or heavy spray. Vehicles in front will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all.

- ▷ Do not use adaptive cruise control under these conditions.

Warning message

Adaptive cruise control can be deactivated automatically if the radar sensor is very dirty or iced up, obstructed, in unfavorable weather conditions (heavy rain) or when driving through tunnels.

The message "ACC/PAS unavailable" will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

i Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Porsche may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Operating principle of adaptive cruise control

No vehicle detected in front – open road driving

Adaptive cruise control operates like a cruise control system. The desired speed that was set is maintained constantly.

Vehicle detected in front – driving in traffic

If a vehicle traveling ahead of you in the same lane is detected as driving slower than the selected desired speed, adaptive cruise control will automatically maintain a set distance from the vehicle in front.

If the vehicle in front stops, adaptive cruise control will slow your vehicle down to a stop provided this is possible within the control limits of the system. Adaptive cruise control actively keeps your vehicle at a standstill.

If the vehicle in front drives off, automatic speed control and distance control can be resumed.

Speed exceeded

The speed of the vehicle can be increased at any time by pressing the accelerator.

If the vehicle is traveling faster than the speed set by adaptive cruise control (ACC), adaptive cruise control is deactivated.

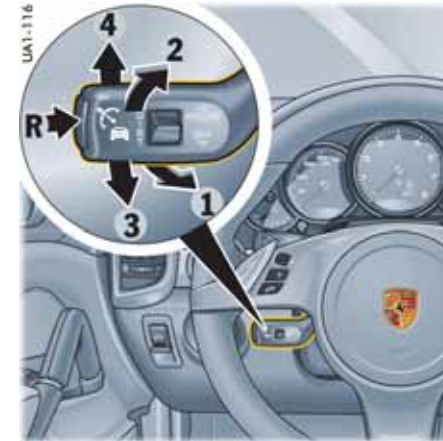
The message “ACC passive” will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

The desired speed that was stored is retained.

After the accelerator pedal is released, the ACC adapts the vehicle speed to the desired speed and adjusts the distance in following mode.

For information on the “ACC passive” status:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OPERATING STATES WHEN ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL IS SWITCHED ON” on page 163.



- R - Switch adaptive cruise control on/off
- 1 - Set/increase desired speed
- 2 - Reduce desired speed
- 3 - Interrupt (OFF)
- 4 - Operational readiness on/return to set speed (RESUME)

Using adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control is operated using the control stalk at the bottom left of the steering wheel.

i Information

You can intervene manually at any time by pressing the brake or accelerator.



- A - Desired distance from vehicle in front
- B - Status display and desired speed
- C - Current speed
- D - Vehicle detected in front
- E - Current distance from vehicle in front
- F - Current speed of vehicle in front
- G - Progress bar showing speed control range (20–100 mph / 30–160 km/h)

Adaptive cruise control display

All important information, messages and warnings are displayed on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

“ACC” main menu

The adaptive cruise control display on the multi-purpose display can be selected permanently using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel or the control stalk at the bottom right of the steering wheel.

For information on using the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OPERATING THE MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL” on page 108.

1. Select “ACC” in the main menu.

Status display

When adaptive cruise control is switched on, the status display **B** appears at the bottom left of the multi-purpose display.



The status display **B** turns orange when adaptive cruise control is active.

The status display **B** is gray when adaptive cruise control is inactive.

Examples:



If adaptive cruise control is switched on, and no desired speed is stored, the cruise control symbol appears but the desired speed field remains blank.



If a desired speed is stored and no vehicle was detected in front, the cruise control symbol and the desired speed are displayed.



If a desired speed is stored and a vehicle was detected in front, a vehicle symbol and the desired speed are displayed.

Switching adaptive cruise control on and off

Switching adaptive cruise control on

- ▷ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
The gray status display appears on the multi-purpose display.
Adaptive cruise control is ready.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

- ▷ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
“ACC off” appears on the multi-purpose display.
The desired speed that was stored is deleted.
The desired distance is set to the default value.

Operating states when adaptive cruise control is switched on

There are three possible operating states when adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Adaptive cruise control active

Adaptive cruise control automatically regulates the speed and distance from the vehicle in front. The status display **B** turns orange.

Adaptive cruise control is ready

Cruise control and distance control is inactive after pressing the brakes or interrupting by pressing the control stalk down (position **3**, **OFF**). The desired speed that was stored and the desired distance that was set are retained. The status display **B** turns gray.

For information on resuming cruise control and distance control:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “INTERRUPTING AND RESUMING CRUISE CONTROL AND DISTANCE CONTROL” on page 165.

Adaptive cruise control passive

Cruise control and distance control is inactive after pressing the accelerator. “ACC passive” appears on the multi-purpose display.

The desired speed that was stored and the desired distance that was set are retained. The status display **B** turns gray.

Adaptive cruise control is active again after you release the accelerator.

Setting and changing the desired speed

Preconditions

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on.
- Vehicle is moving.
- No stationary objects are detected in front.

Setting the desired speed

1. Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).
The current driving speed is stored as the desired speed, which will be maintained automatically (within the control range of 20 to 100 mph (30 to 160 km/h)), and appears orange in the status display **B**.
The red triangle **C** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
The desired speed is maintained automatically unless a vehicle traveling in front is detected as driving slower than the desired speed.



Information

If your vehicle is stopped, the message “Impossible while parked” appears on the multi-purpose display when you press the control stalk forward (position **1**).

If a stationary object was detected in front, the message “Stationary object” appears on the multi-purpose display.

Increasing the desired speed

- ▷ Push the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h).
or
Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward and keep it pressed (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 5 mph (10 km/h).
The status display **B** shows the new desired speed.
The red triangle **C** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.

Reducing the desired speed

- ▷ Briefly pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel (position **2**).
The desired speed is decreased in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h).
or
Pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel and keep it pulled (position **2**).
The desired speed is decreased in steps of 5 mph (10 km/h).
The status display **B** shows the new desired speed.
The red triangle **C** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.



Setting the desired distance

The desired distance from the vehicle in front can be set in four stages.

i Information

When you are setting the desired distance, the “ACC” main menu for adaptive cruise control is displayed temporarily on the multi-purpose display.

When you first actuate the rocker switch **Z**, the “ACC” main menu appears without changing the desired distance.

i Information

The distance depends on the driving speed. The slower the vehicle is traveling, the shorter the distance and the faster the vehicle is traveling, the longer the distance.

Increasing the desired distance

- ▷ Press the rocker switch **Z** up. The desired distance is increased. There are more orange segments shown in the desired distance display **A**.

Reducing the desired distance

- ▷ Press the rocker switch **Z** down. The desired distance is reduced. There are fewer orange segments shown in the desired distance display **A**.

Display showing distance from vehicle in front

If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle symbol **D** appears on the multi-purpose display and in the status display **B**.

The gray area **E** shows the current distance from the vehicle in front.

Possible distance settings



Suitable for fast driving in lines of traffic. The time gap is 1 second. This corresponds to 36 yd. (33 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h).



Suitable for driving comfortably in lines of traffic. The time gap is 1.3 seconds. This corresponds to 47 yd. (43 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h).



Preset distance

Corresponds to the general recommendation of the road traffic safety regulation (“two seconds time gap”). The time gap is 1.8 seconds. This corresponds to 66 yd. (60 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h).



Suitable for driving on country roads. The time gap is 2.3 seconds. This corresponds to 63 yd. (58 meters) at a speed of 56 mph (90 km/h).

Automatic braking to a stop

If the vehicle in front stops, your vehicle will slow down and come to a stop within the control limits of the system if adaptive cruise control is active. The indicator light **HOLD** lights up on the instrument panel.

The vehicle is actively held at a stop.

For information on the HOLD function:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “HOLD FUNCTION: DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT, STANDSTILL MANAGEMENT” on page 192.



Information

- Depending on the traffic flow, e.g. slow moving traffic, stopping is initiated by a slow crawling phase, which brings the vehicle to a standstill.
 - When adaptive cruise control is operating normally or when the HOLD function is active, the brake pedal may feel different and you may hear hydraulic noises. This behavior is normal for the system. It is not a fault.
-

Driving off again

The vehicle can be driven off again after being stopped and speed and distance control will be resumed, depending on the operating state of the adaptive cruise control system.

For information on the operating states of the adaptive cruise control system:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OPERATING STATES WHEN ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL IS SWITCHED ON” on page 163.

Adaptive cruise control active

1. Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4, RESUME**).
2. Press the accelerator pedal briefly. Your vehicle drives off again automatically.



Information

Your vehicle will not drive off if the vehicle detected in front is stationary.

Adaptive cruise control is ready

Automatic speed and distance control can only be resumed when your vehicle is moving.

1. Drive off normally.
2. Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4, RESUME**).
or
Set or change the desired speed.

Interrupting and resuming cruise control and distance control

Interrupting cruise control and distance control – OFF

- ▷ Press the brake pedal.

or

Press the control stalk on the steering wheel down (position **3, OFF**).

Adaptive cruise control is inactive.

The desired speed that was stored and the desired distance are retained.

Resuming cruise control and distance control – RESUME

- ▷ Push the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4, RESUME**).

The vehicle accelerates to the desired speed that was stored unless a vehicle traveling in front is detected as driving slower than the desired speed and the distance from this vehicle is less than the desired distance that was set.

The status display **B** changes from gray to orange.

or

Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up and keep it pressed (position **4, RESUME**).

The vehicle accelerates in a more sporty driving style to the desired speed that was stored.



Information

If cruise control and distance control was interrupted using the control stalk **3 (OFF)**, it can only be resumed again when the vehicle is moving and no stationary objects are detected in front.

Messages on the multi-purpose display

If adaptive cruise control was deactivated automatically or if an action cannot be performed, a message to this effect in blue appears on the multi-purpose display.

- **"ABS/PSM intervention!"**
Adaptive cruise control was deactivated because ABS or PSM intervened as a control mechanism.
- **"Electric parking brake!"**
Adaptive cruise control was deactivated because the electric parking brake was activated.
- **"Selector position!"**
Adaptive cruise control was deactivated because the Tiptronic selector lever is not in position **D** or manual position **M**.
- **"Impossible while parked"**
The required action is not possible because your vehicle is stationary, e.g. when setting a desired speed.
- **"Speed!"**
Adaptive cruise control was deactivated because the rpm limit of the engine was reached in manual position **M** of the Tiptronic selector lever.

- **"Gradient too steep!"**

The desired distance or the desired speed cannot be set because the gradient on the road is too steep.

- **"Stationary object"**

The action is not possible because a stationary object was detected ahead.

- **"PSM off"**

Adaptive cruise control is not available because PSM was switched off.

- **"ACC cutoff"**

Adaptive cruise control was deactivated.

- **"Steering turned too far"**

The steering is turned too far.

- **"PHC active"**

Porsche Hill Control (PHC) is active or on standby.

For information on Porsche Stability Management (PSM):

- ▷ Please see the chapter "PORSCHE STABILITY MANAGEMENT (PSM)" on page 189.

General information

"Sport" mode

Adaptive cruise control regulates your driving more dynamically in "Sport" mode.

Towing a trailer

Adaptive cruise control is also available when you are towing a trailer, but is less dynamic.

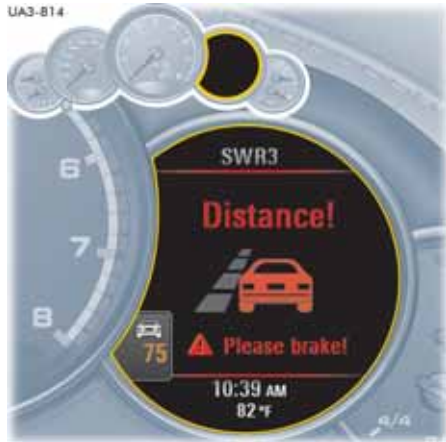
Exceptions for adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control is **not** available in the following situations:

- If the ignition is switched off.
- When PSM is off.
- If the driver's door is opened and the driver's safety belt is not fastened.
- When parking or maneuvering in very tight spaces.
- When the electric parking brake is activated.
- When the Tiptronic selector lever is in position **N**, **R** or **P**.
- On upward or downward gradients of more than 20 %.
- When Porsche Hill Control (PHC) is active (or on standby).

If one of these exception situations occurs when adaptive cruise control is switched on, adaptive cruise control will be switched off.

A message to this effect will appear on the multi-purpose display.



Warning messages

Overtake request when adaptive cruise control is active (ACC active)

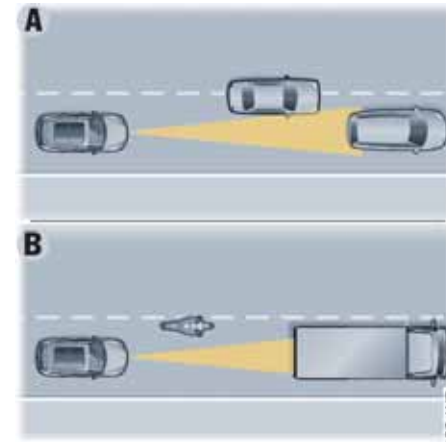
If adaptive cruise control detects that braking assistance is required on the part of the driver, a warning signal sounds and the warning message "Distance! Please brake!" appears on the multi-purpose display.

Traffic situations in which vehicles cannot be reliably detected

The radar sensor for adaptive cruise control scans a narrow, cone-shaped area in front of your vehicle.

Detection can be limited or unreliable, depending on the traffic situation and the size of the vehicle in front. The system may brake too late or unexpectedly. Stationary vehicles are not detected. The system cannot respond to stationary vehicles.

- ▷ Drive with extreme care.
- ▷ Slow down if necessary.

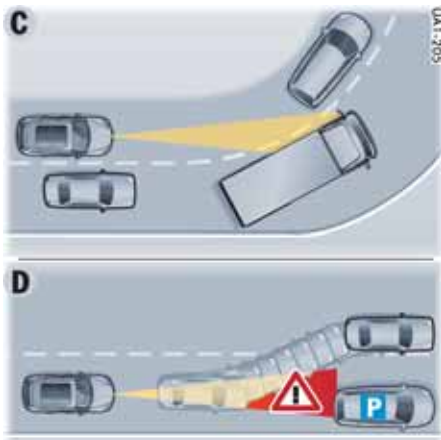


A – Vehicles changing lanes/cutting in

If a vehicle is changing lanes or cutting in ahead of you in the same lane, the vehicle will only be detected when it has moved completely into your lane.

B – Vehicles with a small cross-section/narrow vehicles

Narrow or small vehicles will not be detected or will be detected too late.



C – Driving into and out of corners

When driving into and out of corners, vehicles will not be detected or will be detected too early, or adaptive cruise control will react to vehicles in adjacent lanes.

D – Stationary vehicles

A stationary vehicle that appears suddenly in the detection field of the radar sensor, e.g. after a vehicle in front changes lanes, will not be detected by adaptive cruise control.

Active Safety – Porsche “Active Safe”

The adaptive cruise control sensor is used for the Porsche “Active Safe” functions.

These include:

– Brake system prefilling

Prefilling of the brake system if the radar sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to a moving obstacle in order to bridge the air gaps and improve braking response.

– Brake Assist Plus

Reduction of the activation threshold of the Brake Assist function if the sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to a moving obstacle.

The activation threshold of the Brake Assist function is reduced in three stages, depending on how critical the danger situation is.



Information

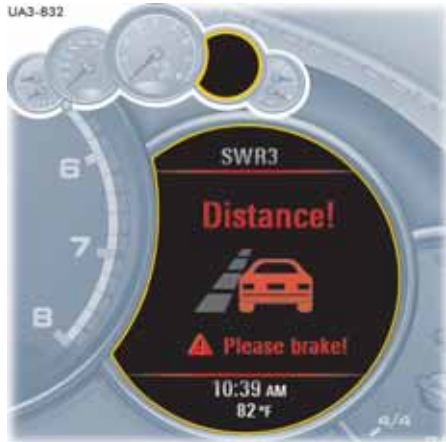
- All Porsche “Active Safe” functions are active for speeds of more than 20 mph (30 km/h).



Latent warning (visual)

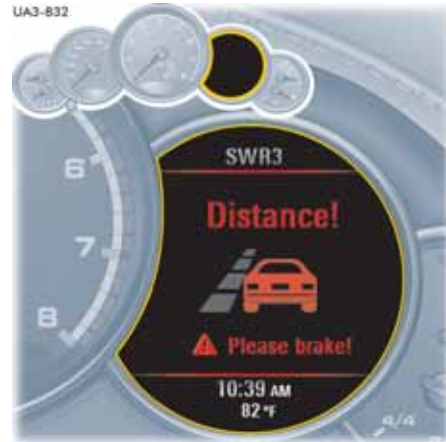
If the vehicle is driving too close to the vehicle in front for a long time, to avoid a collision if the vehicle in front brakes, a latent warning appears on the multi-purpose display to warn the driver.

- ▷ Stay further back from the vehicle in front if necessary.



Prewarning (acoustic and visual)

If the radar sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to and is very likely to collide with an obstacle moving in front, an acoustic and visual prewarning is issued. This warns the driver and still allows a collision to be prevented if the driver reacts accordingly.



Acute warning (acoustic, visual and tangible)

If the driver does not react to the prewarning by braking, this is quickly followed by an acute warning, which involves a braking jolt as well as the acoustic and visual warning. A braking jolt is felt in the vehicle as a result of a very quick build-up of brake pressure. This alerts the driver to the traffic situation. The driver can still prevent a collision by reacting accordingly in this dangerous situation.

i Information

The situations described below lead to the assumption that the driver is driving carefully and the prewarning and acute warning functions are disabled:

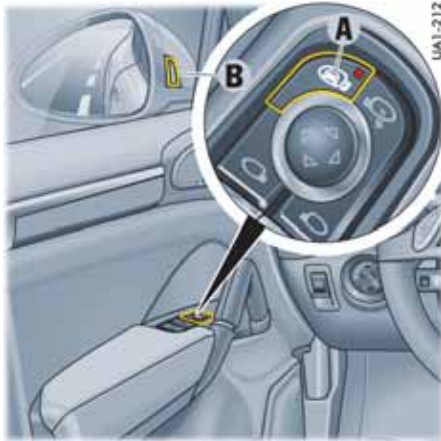
- The driver drives around tight corners.
- The driver is braking.
- If the driver accelerates sharply, this action is interpreted as an active driving request (e.g. indicating the driver's intention to overtake).
- When adaptive cruise control is on, the Porsche "Active Safe" warnings are inactive. There is no need for these warnings because adaptive cruise control decelerates in good time and the visual and acoustic overtake request "**Distance! Please brake!**" is issued early as required.

Switching Porsche "Active Safe" warnings on/off

The latent warning and prewarning functions are switched off by default. The acute warning function is active. Latent warnings and prewarnings can be activated under "**Prewarning on**" on the multi-purpose display.

The settings remain stored when the ignition is switched on and off.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ACTIVE SAFE (PAS)" on page 131.



Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Lane Change Assist (LCA) uses radar sensors to help the driver to monitor the blind-spot area and the traffic situation behind the vehicle.

Warning indicators are integrated in both door mirrors. The warning indicator **B** on the left door mirror assists the driver in changing into the left lane, while the warning indicator on the right door mirror assists the driver in changing into the right lane.

The warning indicator lights up to indicate that the Lane Change Assist system on this side has detected a vehicle and considers this critical for changing lanes. This form of display is called the information stage. The information stage is designed so that you notice it merely by glancing at the door mirror.

When you set the turn signal and Lane Change Assist has detected a vehicle that it regards as critical, the warning indicator on the door mirror will flash brightly several times. This form of display is called the warning stage.

WARNING

Radiofrequency radiation exposure

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in. (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Porsche may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Switching on and off

Switching on

- ▷ Press button **A**.
The indicator light in the button comes on.

Switching off

- ▷ Press button **A** again.
The indicator light in the button goes off.

Information

The system helps when driving on highways and on country roads. For this reason, it works at a driving speed of between 20 and 156 mph (30 and 250 km/h).

WARNING

Lane Change Assist Risk

Even when using the Lane Change Assist, the driver is still responsible for taking due care when changing lanes and assessing the traffic situation.

- ▷ Please bear in mind that the sensors will not detect all vehicles in every situation.
 - ▷ Please note that Lane Change Assist cannot alert you in good time to vehicles approaching at high speed from behind or vehicles that are falling back.
 - ▷ Radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow or heavy spray. As a result, vehicles will not be detected adequately or vehicles will not be detected at all in some cases by Lane Change Assist. Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.
 - ▷ Please note that Lane Change Assist will only alert you to approaching vehicles or vehicles in the blind-spot area when you are driving at 20 mph (30 km/h) or faster.
 - ▷ Please note that Lane Change Assist will not work in tight corners (corner radius of less than 109 yd. (100 m)).
 - ▷ Even with Lane Change Assist, absolute care and attention on the part of the driver is still required while driving. Ultimately, the driver is still responsible for changing lanes. Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.
-

UA1-210



Information

- ▷ To ensure that Lane Change Assist can work properly:
 - Do not block the radar sensor area on the rear bumper (see illustration) with objects (e.g. stickers, bicycle carriers).
 - Also remove any snow and ice from this area.
 - ▷ Do not cover the warning indicator on the door mirror with stickers or other objects.
 - ▷ Lane Change Assist switches on automatically as soon as the electric connector is plugged into the trailer socket.
 - ▷ Lane Change Assist switches off automatically if it detects that the radar sensors for Lane Change Assist are covered.
-

If the side windows in the driver's or passenger's door are darkened with tinted film, the driver may not be able to see the warning indicator on the door mirror properly.

Detection area

The detection area of the radar sensors includes:

- the approach zone approx. 77 yd. (70 m) to the rear and
- the blind-spot area.

The radar sensors cover the adjacent lane to the left and right. Other lanes are **not** covered by the radar sensors.



Information

Lane Change Assist does not measure the lane width, but the system assumes that the lane has a fixed width. The sensors cover this lane width at the left and right.

When driving on narrow roads or when driving off-center in a lane, it is possible that Lane Change Assist will detect vehicles that are **not** in the very next lane.

Operating principle

Lane Change Assist measures the distance and speed difference of the detected vehicles compared to your vehicle. Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes, this is indicated on the relevant door mirror.

The warning indicator can light up when you are overtaken by a vehicle or when you overtake another vehicle.

When you overtake another vehicle slowly (speed difference of less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the warning indicator lights up as soon as this vehicle is in your blind-spot area and is detected by Lane Change Assist. If there is a greater speed difference, this is not indicated on the door mirror.

Information and Warning stage

Lane Change Assist has 2 warning indicator stages:

- the information stage and
- the warning stage.

Depending on whether or not you have set the turn signal to indicate that you intend to change lane, Lane Change Assist helps you by activating the relevant warning indicator stage.

Information stage

If you have not set the turn signal, Lane Change Assist will inform you about detected vehicles that will be regarded as critical for a possible lane change. Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance of a detected vehicle as critical, a weak light appears in the warning indicator on the relevant door mirror.

The brightness of the information stage is deliberately weak so as not to distract you while driving without intending to change lanes and looking at the road. The information stage is clearly visible when you look in the door mirror.

Warning stage

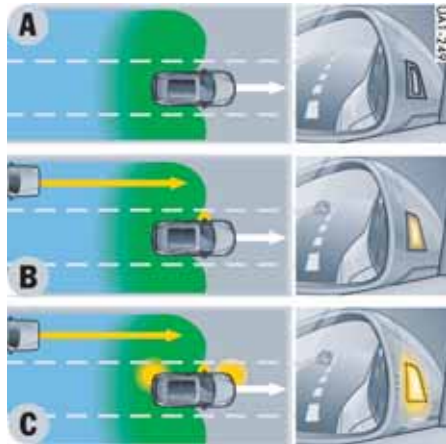
When you set the turn signal and Lane Change Assist has detected a vehicle on this side which it regards as critical for changing lanes, the warning indicator on the mirror on this side will start to flash brightly. When the warning stage flashes brightly several times, this should be an indication for you to check the driving situation again by looking in the door mirror and looking over your shoulder.



Information

The brightness of the warning indicator on the door mirror can be changed.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "SETTING DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS ON DOOR MIRROR" on page 175.
-



Driving situation – vehicle approaching fast

A – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

The sensors do not detect a vehicle. No lights on warning indicator on door mirror.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

The sensors detect a fast approaching vehicle – on the left lane in the example. This vehicle is already regarded as critical for changing lanes due to the significant speed difference even though it is still a good distance away.

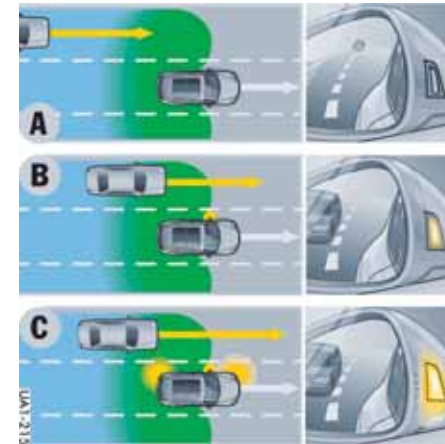
The warning indicator on the door mirror lights up in information stage.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When you set the turn signal in driving situation B, the warning indicator on the door mirror will flash brightly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

i Information

- The faster a vehicle is approaching, the earlier the warning indicator on the door mirror lights up. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the “blind-spot area” at the latest.
- Changing lanes can already be critical for vehicles approaching at speed if there is still no indication on the door mirror.



Driving situation – vehicle approaching slowly

A – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

The sensors detect a slowly approaching vehicle – on the left lane in the example. Given the small speed difference and the long distance, this is not indicated on the door mirror.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

The slowly approaching vehicle is now closer. The warning indicator on the door mirror lights up in information stage.

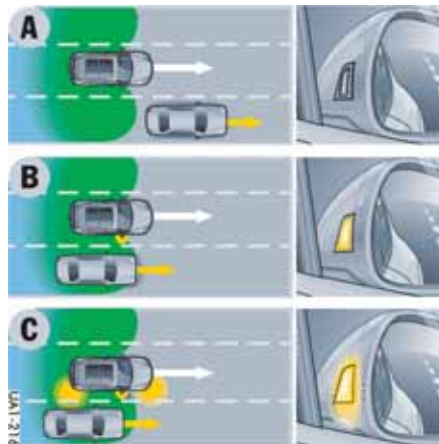
Only when Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes will this be indicated on the door mirror. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the “blind-spot area” at the latest.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When you set the turn signal in driving situation **B**, the warning indicator on the door mirror will flash brightly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

i Information

- The faster a vehicle is approaching, the earlier the warning indicator on the door mirror lights up. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the “blind-spot area” at the latest.
- Changing lanes can already be critical for vehicles approaching at speed if there is still no indication on the door mirror.



Driving situation – vehicles falling back slowly

A – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

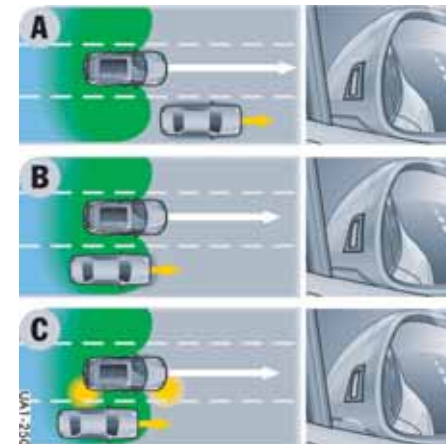
Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the vehicle you have overtaken. No lights on warning indicator on door mirror.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

Lane Change Assist detects the vehicle that is falling back slowly (speed difference of less than 9 mph (15 km/h)) on the right. The warning indicator on the door mirror lights up in information stage.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When you set the turn signal in driving situation **B**, the warning indicator on the door mirror will flash brightly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.



Driving situation – vehicles falling back fast

A – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the vehicle you have overtaken. No lights on warning indicator on door mirror.

B – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

Lane Change Assist detects the vehicle that is falling back fast (speed difference of more than 9 mph (15 km/h)) on the passenger's side, but does not regard it as critical for changing lanes because it is falling back fast. No lights on warning indicator on door mirror.

C – Warning indicator on door mirror does not light up

When you set the turn signal in driving situation **B**, there is still no indication on the door mirror.

Setting display brightness on door mirror

The brightness of the warning indicator for both the information stage and warning stage is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

You can also adjust the basic brightness as required on the multi-purpose display.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “LANE CHANGE ASSIST (LCA)” on page 131.

The new brightness is displayed briefly during the setting process. This is the level of brightness displayed for the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage depends on the brightness of the information stage.

- ▷ Set the brightness of the information stage so that you can clearly see the warning indicator lighting up when you look in the door mirror, but cannot see it when you look straight ahead through the windshield.

In very dark or bright surroundings, the warning indicator may already be at the lowest or highest level of automatic brightness adjustment. In such cases, there may not be any noticeable change in the brightness of the warning indicator on the door mirror when you adjust the basic brightness.

When you change the basic brightness in very bright or dark surroundings, you may not notice any change until you are back in an area with moderate ambient brightness.

Information

- Lane Change Assist is not active while you are adjusting the brightness. The warning indicator lights up briefly only to help you to set the brightness.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the radio key you are using.

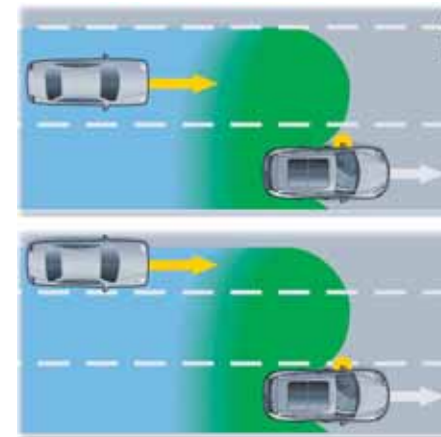
General information

System-related limits are set for Lane Change Assist while driving. Please drive with extreme care therefore:

- when driving around corners
- when driving in lanes that are not of standard width.

When driving around corners

- Lane Change Assist cannot detect vehicles in tight corners (corner radius of less than 109 yd. (100 m)).
- When driving around a corner, Lane Change Assist may react to a vehicle driving two lanes over from you and the warning indicator on the door mirror may light up.



Lane width

- The Lane Change Assist detection area is designed in such a way that it covers the two adjacent lanes (left and right) on lanes of standard width regardless of whether you are driving exactly in the middle or more on the edge of your lane.
- When you are driving on narrow lanes, this area may cover even more lanes, particularly if you are driving at the edge of your lane. In situations like this, vehicles driving two lanes over from you can also be detected and Lane Change Assist could switch to the information or warning stage.
- Likewise, when driving on very wide lanes, vehicles in the next lane may not be detected because they are outside of the detection area.

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Information

- The Lane Change Assist function can be restricted in tight corners, on undulating roads and in adverse weather conditions.
 - The radar sensors can sometimes detect other objects (e.g. high or raised crash barriers), not just vehicles.
 - Lane Change Assist does not measure the lane width, but the system assumes that the lane has a fixed width. The sensors cover this lane width at the left and right. When driving on narrow roads or when driving off-center in a lane, it is possible that Lane Change Assist will detect vehicles that are **not** in the directly adjacent lane and signal these as critical.
- ▷ If the positions of the radar sensors were changed following a rear-impact collision, for example, always have the Lane Change Assist system checked out at a specialist workshop for safety reasons.
-

Car Audio Operation/Tips

For radio operation see your radio manual which is included with your on-board literature.

FM reception

A vehicle is not an ideal place to listen to a radio. Because the vehicle moves, reception conditions are constantly changing.

Buildings, terrain, signal distance and noise from other vehicles are all working against good reception.

Some conditions affecting FM may appear to be problems when they are not.

The following characteristics are completely normal for a given reception area, and they do not indicate any problem with the radio itself.

Information

Electronic accessories should only be installed by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Equipment which has not been tested and approved by Porsche may impair radio reception.

Fading and drifting

FM range is limited to about 25 miles (40 km), except for some high power stations.

If a vehicle is moving away from the desired station's transmitter, the signal will tend to fade and/or drift. This condition is more prevalent with FM than AM, and is often accompanied by distortion.

Fading and drifting can be minimized to a certain degree by careful attention to fine tuning or selection of a stronger signal.

Static and fluttering

When the line-of-sight link between a transmitter and vehicle is blocked by large buildings or mountains, the radio sound may be accompanied with static or fluttering because of the characteristic of FM.

In a similar effect, a fluttering noise is sometimes heard when driving along a tree-lined road.

This static and fluttering can be reduced by adjusting the tone control for greater bass response until the disturbance has passed.

Multipath

Because of the reflecting characteristics of FM, direct and reflected signals may reach the antenna at the same time (multipath) and cancel each other out.

As a vehicle moves through these electronic dead spots, the listener may hear a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Station swapping

When two FM stations are close to each other, and an electronic dead spot, such as static or multipath area, interrupts the original signal, some-times the stronger second signal will be selected automatically until the original one returns.

This swapping can also occur as you drive away from the selected station and approach another station of a stronger signal.



Compact disk player

NOTICE

To avoid damage to compact disk player and disks.

- ▷ Use only compact disks labeled as shown, having no dirt, damage or warpage.
- ▷ Never attempt to disassemble or oil any part of the player unit. Do not insert any object other than a disk into the slot. Remember there are no user-serviceable parts inside the compact disk player.
- ▷ Do not allow the disk to sustain any fingerprints, scrapes or stickers on the surfaces. This may cause poor sound quality. Hold the disk only on the edge or center hole.
- ▷ When not in use, take the disk out of the player, put the disk back into its case and store it away from dust, heat, damp and direct sunlight.
Leaving the disk on the dashboard in the sun can damage the disk.
- ▷ If the disk gets dirty, clean the disk by wiping the surfaces from the center to the outside in a radial direction with a soft cloth.
Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static record preservative.
Disk cleaners are available in audio stores.

Car Telephone and Aftermarket Alarms

Important legal and safety information regarding the use of cellular telephones

Some states may prohibit the use of cellular telephones while driving a vehicle. Check the laws and regulations on the use of cellular telephones in the areas where you drive.



Cell Phone Use

Looking away from the road or turning your attention away from your driving to operate a cell phone will sooner or later cause an accident.

- ▷ Do not attempt to operate a hand-held cell phone while you are driving. Safety is more important than a phone call.
- ▷ Learn to operate the hands-free phone, if it is available, before you start driving. Then make use of the hands-free phone at all times.

It is essential to observe the telephone manufacturer's instructions before operating the telephone.

Any portable telephone or radio transmitter which is used in a Porsche must be properly installed in accordance with the technical requirements of Porsche.

The transmission power must not exceed 10 W.

The devices must possess a type approval for your vehicle and have an "e" symbol.

If you should require equipment with transmission power values greater than 10 W, please consult your authorized Porsche dealer for this purpose. They are familiar with the technical requirements for installing devices of this kind.

The antennas for all radios and telephones with a transmitting antenna must be externally mounted. The improper installation of radios or telephones or use of a radio or telephone with a transmitting antenna inside the car may cause **the warning lights to come on.**

Improper installation of such equipment can create a discharged battery or excessive current draw from added equipment.

If aftermarket systems are installed by non-dealership technicians or outside the selling dealer, problems may result. Installation of aftermarket equipment is not covered under the New Car Warranty.

- ▷ Consult your authorized Porsche dealer about the installation of non-Porsche approved equipment.

Reception quality

The reception quality of your car telephone will change constantly when you are driving. Interference caused by buildings, landscape and weather is unavoidable. It may become particularly difficult to hear when using the hands-free function due to external noise such as engine and wind noise.

Automatic car-wash

- ▷ Unscrew external antennas before using an automatic car-wash.

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

⚠ WARNING

Operation of On-Board Systems

Setting or operating the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving could distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Operate the components while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
 - ▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only with the vehicle stationary.
 - ▷ If it is necessary to operate these components while the vehicle is in motion, use the function keys on the multi-functional steering wheel.
-
- ▷ Refer to the separate operating instructions before putting the PCM into operation.

When put into operation for the first time, a distance of approx. 3 miles (5 km) must be driven in order for the navigation system to complete the process of fine calibration. The same applies when the tires are changed (e.g. summer/winter tires) or new tires fitted. Full location accuracy is not yet achieved during the fine-calibration process.

If the vehicle has been transported (e.g. ferry, car train), the system may take a few minutes after being switched on before it determines the current location.

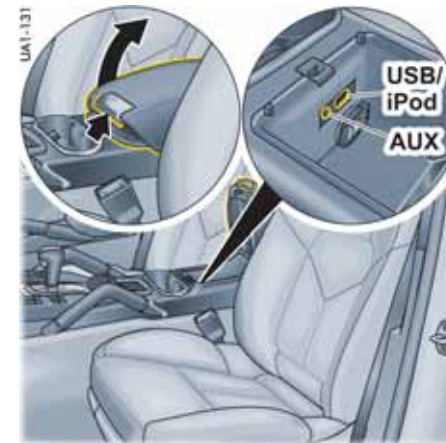
Serious tire slip (e.g. spinning wheels on snow) may result in temporarily inaccurate navigation.

When the battery has been disconnected, it may take up to 15 minutes before the navigation system is operational once more.

Satellite radio

You must have the satellite radio activated before you can put it into operation. You will need a contract with a provider in order to use this radio.

- ▷ Refer to the separate radio operating instructions before putting into operation.



USB/iPod® and AUX

The USB/iPod® and AUX interfaces are located in the storage compartment between the front seats.

- ▷ Please refer to the chapter “External audio source” in the separate PCM operating instructions.

i Information

Do not leave your iPod®, USB storage device or an external audio source in the vehicle for extended periods of time because extreme ambient conditions (temperature fluctuations, humidity) can occur in the vehicle.




Voice Control

Porsche Communication Management (PCM) can be operated by spoken commands using the voice control system.

- ▷ Please refer to the chapter “VOICE CONTROL” in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Activating voice control

- ▷ Press button . An acoustic signal sounds and help text for using the five most important voice commands appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel. Simply say the command.

For information on switching the help text on and off on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “DISPLAYING PCM INFORMATION ON THE MULTI-PURPOSE DISPLAY” on page 128.



Manual Transmission, Clutch

WARNING

Obstructed Clutch Pedal

Unsuitable or incorrectly installed floor mats or objects can obstruct the movement of the pedal or prevent application of the pedal.

- ▷ Do not obstruct the pedal travel with floor mats or other objects.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the clutch and transmission.

- ▷ Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears. Make sure that the gearshift lever is completely engaged.
- ▷ Only shift into reverse when the car has come to a complete stop.

Floor mats of the correct size and with the appropriate fastening are available from your authorized Porsche dealer.

The positions of the gears are shown on the shift diagram on the gearshift lever.

- ▷ When shifting gears, always ensure that the clutch pedal is fully depressed and the gear has fully engaged.
- ▷ Select reverse only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes. This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking.

When reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on, the reversing lights come on.

Permitted engine speed

- ▷ You should change into a higher gear or ease off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red mark on the tachometer.

If the red zone is reached during acceleration, fuel feed is interrupted.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage (over-revving) when shifting down to a lower gear.

- ▷ Take care not to exceed the maximum permitted engine speed when shifting down.

Tiptronic S

Porsche Tiptronic S is an 8-speed automatic transmission and features an “automatic” and a “manual” gearshift mode.

In **automatic selection mode** (selector-lever position **D**), gear changing is automatic. You can change temporarily from automatic to manual mode using the rocker switches on the steering wheel, depending on the driving program. In **manual selection mode** (selector-lever position **M**), you change gear using the shift buttons on the steering wheel or by pushing the selector lever forward or back.

The functions of selector-lever positions **D** and **M** are different in the on-road driving program and the off-road driving program.

You can change between selector-lever positions **D** and **M** as you wish while driving.

The currently engaged gear is retained when you change from **D** to **M**.

If you change from **M** to **D**, the gear-changing map suitable for your current driving style is selected and the appropriate gear is engaged.

Information

Make sure not to actuate the shift buttons on the steering wheel inadvertently, thereby triggering undesired gear changes.



Changing selector-lever position

The selector lever is blocked when the ignition is switched off.

The selector lever can be moved from position **P** and **N** only with:

- the ignition switched on,
- the brake pedal pressed and
- the release button pressed (**arrow**).

Release button

The release button (**arrow**) on the front of the selector lever prevents unintentional gear changes.

The release button must be pressed when shifting to position **R** or **P**.

The selector lever can no longer be operated in the event of an electrical fault.

- ▷ For information on emergency release of the blocked selector lever: Please see the chapter “SELECTOR LEVER EMERGENCY OPERATION” on page 184.

Starting

The engine can be started only in selector-lever position **P** or **N** with the brake pedal pressed.

Driving off

- ▷ Select the desired position for moving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) only when the engine is idling and when depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ Since the vehicle crawls when in gear, do not release the brake until you are ready to drive off. The vehicle will not crawl when the HOLD function is active. For information on the HOLD function: Please see the chapter “HOLD FUNCTION: DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT, STANDSTILL MANAGEMENT” on page 192.
- ▷ After selecting a gear, do not accelerate until you can feel that the gear is engaged.



Selector-lever position

Display for selector-lever position and engaged gear

When the engine is running, the display shows the selector-lever position and engaged gear.

Selector-Lever Positions

P – Parking lock

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the drive wheels are mechanically locked.

- ▷ Engage parking lock only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Engage parking lock **after** applying the electric parking brake and release it **before** releasing the electric parking brake.
- ▷ Always apply the electric parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

The ignition key can be removed only in selector-lever position **P**.

R – Reverse gear

- ▷ Select reverse only if the vehicle is stationary and the brake is applied.

N – Neutral

Selector-lever position **N** must be selected for towing or in car washes, for example.

- ▷ Select the desired position for moving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) only when the engine is idling and when pressing the brake pedal.

D – Automatic selection mode (D – Normal mode)

- ▷ Select selector-lever position **D** for “normal” driving.

The gears are shifted automatically according to the accelerator position and speed.

Depending on how the vehicle is driven (economical or sporty driving style) and on the resistance (e.g. driving uphill), the gear-changing points are shifted towards higher or lower engine-speed ranges. The accelerator movement, driving speed, longitudinal and lateral acceleration and the road profile all have an influence on the gear-changing characteristic.

- ▷ Unwanted upshifts, e.g. when entering corners, are prevented by swiftly releasing the accelerator pedal.

Depending on lateral acceleration, upshifts on corners are not made until the engine-speed limit is reached.

When you brake, and depending on the amount of deceleration, the transmission changes down earlier. For subsequent cornering, the right gear is engaged when pressure is applied to the brakes before the corner.

The corner is taken in a suitable gear. It is not necessary to change down when accelerating out of the corner.

D – Sport mode

The transmission switches to a sporty gear-changing map. A sporty driving style is recognized more quickly and the gear-changing speeds are adapted to driving performance.

Braking downshifts are initiated earlier. Downshifts occur for small decelerations, even at higher revs.

D – Off-road mode

The transmission switches to an off-road gear-changing map.

The gear-changing points are chosen to achieve the best possible vehicle control on difficult terrain.

On steep downhill stretches, upshifts are prevented until average engine speeds are reached.

When the vehicle is overrunning, upshifts are prevented until the engine-speed limit is reached.

Shifting gears on the steering wheel

With the shift buttons on the steering wheel, you can change temporarily from automatic selection mode **D** to manual mode **M**.

Changing gear using the steering wheel could be useful in the following situations:

- Shifting down before corners and on entering built-up areas.
- Shifting down on downward slopes (engine braking).
- Shifting down for brief spurts of acceleration.

The manual selection mode remains engaged:

- For cornering (depending on the lateral acceleration) and overrunning.
- When the vehicle is stationary (e.g. at a junction).

The system leaves manual selection mode:

- automatically after around 8 seconds (unless cornering or overrunning),
- after driving off.

Kickdown

The kickdown function is active in selector-lever position **D** and **M**.

- ▷ For optimum acceleration, e.g. when overtaking, press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle point (kickdown).

The transmission shifts down depending on the speed of travel and engine speed.

Upshifts occur at the highest possible engine speeds.



Information

Unlike in Normal and Sport mode, an automatic upshift is not performed in manual selection mode **M** in Off-road mode when the engine-speed limit is reached.



M – Manual selection mode

The currently engaged gear is retained when you change from **D** to **M**.

If you change from **M** to **D**, the gear-changing map suitable for your current driving style is selected and the appropriate gear is engaged.

The selector lever and the two shift buttons in the upper steering-wheel spokes let you select the eight forward gears comfortably and reliably.



Shifting up +

- ▷ Press the selector lever or shift button on the steering wheel forward.

Shifting down -

- ▷ Pull the selector lever or shift button on the steering wheel back.

You can shift up or down at any time depending on driving speed and engine speed.

Gear changes that would exceed the upper and lower engine-speed limit are not performed.

The gear is changed down automatically just before idle speed is reached.

- ▷ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes.
This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking.

Driving off

1st or 2nd gear can be selected for driving off.

To shift up automatically at the upper engine-speed limit:

- ▷ Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle point (kickdown).

i Information Normal and Sport mode

There is no automatic upshift at the upper engine-speed limit in selector-lever position **M**. Upshift suppression can be canceled in Normal and Sport mode by kickdown operation.

The transmission shifts down to the lowest possible gear depending on the driving speed and engine speed.

If, for example, the engine-speed limit is reached during overtaking and an automatic upshift does not occur, the transmission shifts up in this case as a result of kickdown operation.

i Information Off-road mode

The kickdown function is not available in selector-lever position **M** in Off-road mode.

If, for example, the upper engine-speed limit is reached during overtaking and an automatic upshift does not occur, the transmission only shifts up when you press a shift button (+) or briefly press the selector lever (+).

Manual selection mode failure

If manual mode fails, the control electronics system switches to automatic mode.

In this case, selector-lever position **D** will be displayed on the instrument panel.

- ▷ Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Stopping

- ▷ For a brief stop (e.g. at a traffic light), leave the selector lever in drive position and hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
- ▷ Do not hold the car on a slope using the accelerator. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake instead.
- ▷ Before leaving the vehicle, always apply the electric parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P**.

i Information

In selector-lever positions **D** and **M**, the HOLD function makes it easier to drive off from a standstill on an upward slope when the engine is running without having to press the brake.

- ▷ For information on using the HOLD function: Please see the chapter "HOLD FUNCTION: DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT, STANDSTILL MANAGEMENT" on page 192.

Parking

- ▷ Go easy on the accelerator.
- ▷ When parking or maneuvering in a small space, control the speed by careful use of the footbrake.

Driving in winter

In wintry road conditions, it is advisable to take steep inclines in manual mode **M**. This prevents gear changes occurring that could cause wheel spin.

Warning messages/faults

For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

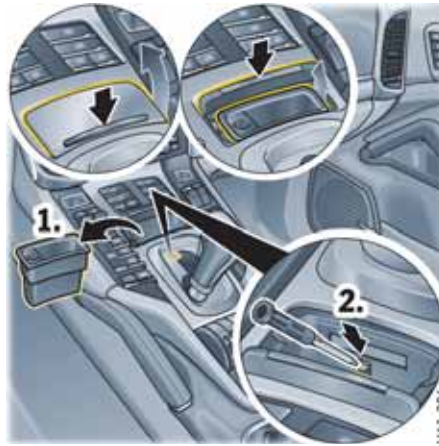
If the selector lever is between two positions

Effects:

- The corresponding selector-lever position on the instrument panel flashes.

Action required:

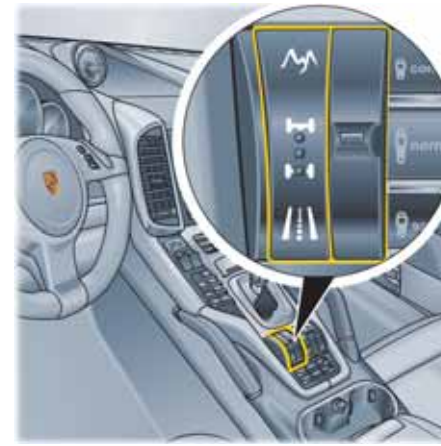
- ▷ Operate the footbrake and engage the selector lever properly.



Selector lever emergency operation

In the event of an electrical fault, the selector lever lock in position **P** (e.g. for towing the vehicle) can be released manually.

1. Remove the front ashtray insert.
Please see the chapter "FRONT ASHTRAY/STORAGE COMPARTMENT" on page 217.
2. Take a screwdriver from the tool kit, insert it into the opening for the emergency release (yellow plastic part) and press against the spring force.
At the same time, fully press in the release button in the selector lever and pull the selector lever back.



Driving Programs for On-Road and Off-Road Driving

Various driving programs with special transmission and chassis control systems (such as ABS, off-road ABS, PSM, etc.) are provided in your Porsche to ensure the best possible driving dynamics combined with maximum driving safety:

- Off-road driving programs
- On-road driving program

Depending on which driving program is selected, the transmission and chassis control systems are automatically adapted to the requirements for off-road or on-road driving.

Selecting driving program

The required driving program can be set using the rocker switch.

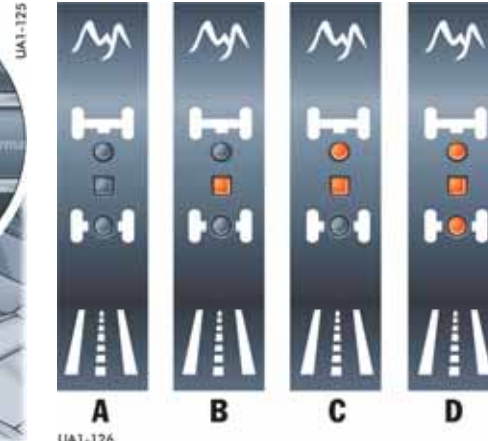
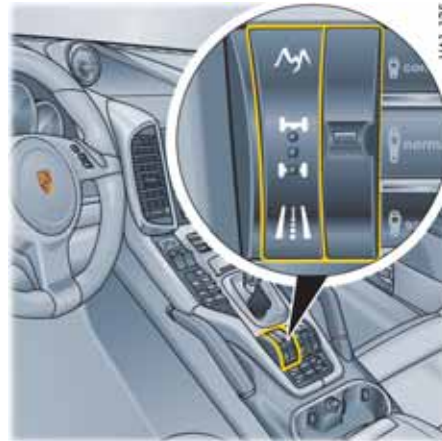
The rocker switch is located in the center console of the vehicle. It features a multi-step function and can be operated in both directions.

Information


- The number of differential locks that can be engaged in the off-road driving program depends on your vehicle equipment.

Prerequisites for manual settings


- ▷ The off-road driving program can only be engaged at a speed of less than 20 mph (30 km/h).
If you are driving too fast, the message “Speed too high” will appear on the instrument panel: Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.
- ▷ The on-road driving program can be engaged at any time.



Selecting off-road driving program

- ▷ Push rocker switch forward .
The vehicle becomes one step more suitable for off-road driving.

Selecting on-road driving program

- ▷ Pull rocker switch to the rear .
The vehicle becomes one step more suitable for on-road driving.

Once the driving program has been selected, the rocker switch springs back to home position.

A - On-road driving program

B - Off-road driving program

C - Center differential lock in off-road driving program is 100% engaged

D - Rear differential lock in off-road driving program is 100% engaged

Display of the selected driving program

The selected driving program is indicated by light-emitting diodes next to the rocker switch (**illustration**).

In addition, the selected driving program is shown on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel for a few seconds.

i **Information Center differential lock**

When the center differential lock **C** is fully engaged, there is no longer any speed difference between the front and rear axles. This makes it easier for the vehicle to keep moving if, for example, both wheels on the front axle lose traction on a soft surface.








i **Information Rear differential lock**

When the rear differential lock **D** is fully engaged, there is no longer any speed difference between the two rear wheels. This makes it easier for the vehicle to keep moving if, for example, one drive wheel on the rear axle loses traction on an icy road or soft surface.

i **Information**

- The selected off-road driving program remains engaged even if the driving conditions change, e.g. if the vehicle is then driven on the road. The corresponding light-emitting diodes next to the rocker switch stay on but the transmission and chassis control systems adapt to suit the changed driving conditions.
- A warning message appears on the instrument panel if there is a fault in the gearshift system.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Recommended settings

| Driving condition | Recommended setting |
|---|--|
| Road: |  |
| Off-road: |  |
| Sand: |  |
| Off-road upward/downward slope: |  |
| Crossing obstacles: |  |
| Off-road track ruts: |  |
| Trailer on slippery surface (e.g. grass): |  |

Sport mode

Function

The sports exhaust system is switched on and a sportier car set-up is obtained when Sport mode is switched on.

Interventions by the Porsche control systems are intentionally shifted towards greater agility and driving performance.

- PASM (Porsche Active Suspension Management) is automatically changed to Sport mode, resulting in a stiffer suspension setup.
- PDCC (Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control) is automatically set to Sport mode and this further reduces the roll tendency of the vehicle.
- The air suspension automatically changes to the low level setting.
- The Tiptronic S transmission changes to a sportier shift strategy.

The gear-changing points are shifted to higher speed ranges. Upward shifts are initiated later and deceleration shifts are performed earlier.

- The electronic accelerator pedal reacts sooner and the engine is more responsive to throttle inputs.
- Sporty engine tuning is activated.

▷ For further information:

Please see the chapter "PORSCHE ACTIVE SUSPENSION MANAGEMENT (PASM)" on page 197.

Please see the chapter "PORSCHE DYNAMIC CHASSIS CONTROL (PDCC)" on page 198.

Switching Sport mode on and off

Sport mode can be activated when the ignition is switched on and when the on-road driving program is selected.

Information

Sport mode cannot be selected when the off-road driving program is engaged.

The message "Sport unavail. with active off-road function" will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.



- ▷ Press SPORT button in the center console. The light-emitting diode in the SPORT button comes on and the SPORT logo lights up on the multi-purpose display when Sport mode is switched on.

After the ignition is switched off, Sport mode is automatically reset to Normal mode.

Warning messages

A warning appears on the multi-purpose display in the instrument panel in the event of a fault.

- ▷ For information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display:
Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Vehicles with air suspension

If you wish to use the characteristics of Sport mode and the sports exhaust system, but would like a more comfortable chassis setup, you can:

- switch PASM and PDCC separately to Normal or Comfort mode and/or
- raise the ride height of the vehicle.
- ▷ Press the corresponding PASM button in the center console. The light-emitting diode in the button of the selected chassis setup lights up. In addition, the selected chassis setup is shown on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel for approx. 12 seconds. Please see the chapter "PORSCHE ACTIVE SUSPENSION MANAGEMENT (PASM)" on page 197.
Please see the chapter "PORSCHE DYNAMIC CHASSIS CONTROL (PDCC)" on page 198.
- ▷ Press the rocker switch in the center console forward. The corresponding light-emitting diode next to the rocker switch lights up continuously after the adjustment process. The level change is also indicated on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel. Please see the chapter "AIR SUSPENSION WITH LEVELING SYSTEM AND HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT" on page 195.

Transmission and Chassis Control Systems

Your Porsche features a complex integrated system made up of all control systems acting in power transmission and in the chassis. All control systems are networked with the aim of combining the best possible driving performance with maximum safety. The following systems are involved, depending on equipment:

| System/designation | Scope |
|---|---|
| PTM Porsche Traction Management | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Active all-wheel drive with electronically regulated map-controlled multi-plate clutch |
| PTV Plus Porsche Torque Vectoring | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Lateral dynamic braking for sportier and more agile cornering– Electronically controlled rear differential lock |
| PSM Porsche Stability Management | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Driving stability control– Anti-lock brake system (ABS)– Brake system prefilling– Brake booster– Automatic brake differential (ABD)– Anti-slip regulation (ASR)– Engine drag torque control (MSR) |
| Air suspension with level control and height adjustment | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Full load-bearing air-spring struts with integrated shock absorbers– Air supply system with pressure accumulator |
| PASM Porsche Active Suspension Management | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Shock absorber system with adaptive, continuous shock absorber control |
| PDCC Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Active chassis control system to stabilize roll tendency of vehicle body when driving |

⚠ WARNING**Driver Responsibility**

Despite the advantages of transmission and chassis control systems, it is still the driver's responsibility to adapt his driving style and maneuvers in line with road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.

The increased safety that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome.

These systems cannot reduce the risk of accidents due to inappropriate speed.

- ▷ Adapt your driving style, maneuvers and speed to the road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.

Porsche Traction Management (PTM)

Porsche Traction Management (PTM) ensures the best possible power distribution to the four driven wheels on the front and rear axles. The system always controls power distribution in such a way that optimal propulsion is achieved, even on an unfavorable road surface.

PTM is active at all times and, unlike PSM, cannot be switched off.

Advantages of PTM

- Clearly perceptible improvement in traction, driving stability and steering ability of the vehicle.
- Better control of the vehicle when driven at its performance limits.
- Improved straight-ahead tracking and stability.
- The above features allow for a sportier chassis setup.
- Optimal drive torque distribution on all four wheels, depending on the driving program.

Porsche Torque Vectoring Plus (PTV Plus)

PTV Plus is a control system for lateral dynamic braking intervention for sportier and more agile cornering and features an electronically controlled rear differential lock.

PTV Plus improves steering behavior and steering precision with gentle braking interventions - which are not even noticed by the driver - on the inside rear wheel when cornering. The vehicle follows the steering angle of the front wheels more precisely. Understeering at the stability limit is almost fully prevented. This in turn enhances the lateral-acceleration potential. Higher cornering speeds are then possible.

The electronically controlled rear differential lock continuously checks the driving situation of the vehicle and distributes the drive torque to the rear axle as required. This has the following advantages:

- Improved traction
- Reduced load change responses when cornering at speed
- Improved driving stability at higher speeds

- Off-road traction is also significantly improved due to the possibility of locking the rear axle fully. Please see the chapter "DRIVING PROGRAMS FOR ON-ROAD AND OFF-ROAD DRIVING" on page 184.

Porsche Stability Management (PSM)

PSM is an active control system for stabilization of the vehicle during extreme driving maneuvers.

Advantages of PSM

- Best possible traction and lane-holding ability in all driving situations – even on road surfaces with varying friction.
- The system compensates for undesired vehicle reactions (load-alteration effect) when the driver releases the accelerator pedal or brakes on corners. This compensation functions up to the maximum lateral acceleration.
- PSM actively stabilizes the vehicle as required during dynamic driving maneuvers (e.g. rapid steering movements, during lane changes or on alternating corners).
- Improved braking stability on corners and on different or varying road surfaces.
- Improved brake function and shorter stopping distance in the event of emergency braking.

Operational readiness

PSM is switched on automatically every time you start the engine.

Function

PSM intervenes and corrects the course if the actual direction of motion deviates from the desired course (steering-wheel position): It brakes individual wheels as needed. If necessary, PSM also influences the engine power or the gear-changing characteristic of Tiptronic in order to stabilize the vehicle.

The events below inform the driver of PSM control operations and warn him to adapt his driving style to the road conditions:

- The PSM warning light on the instrument panel flashes.
- Hydraulic noises can be heard.
- The vehicle decelerates and steering-wheel forces are altered as PSM controls the brakes.
- Reduced engine power.
- The brake pedal pulsates and its position is changed during braking.
In order to achieve full vehicle deceleration, foot pressure must be increased after the brake pedal has begun vibrating.

Examples of PSM control operations

- If the “front wheels of the vehicle drift” on a corner, the engine power is reduced and the rear wheel on the inside of the corner is braked if necessary.
- If the rear of the vehicle swings out on a corner, the front wheel on the outside of the corner is braked.

- Brake system prefilling:

The brake system is prepared for possible subsequent emergency braking if the accelerator pedal is released suddenly and quickly. The brake system is prefilled and the brake pads are already applied gently to the brake disks.

- Brake booster:

In the event of an emergency braking operation where the pedal force is insufficient, a brake booster provides the braking pressure necessary for maximum deceleration at all 4 wheels.



Information

When PSM is switched off, wheel-specific brake interventions and the anti-slip regulation system (ASR) are also inactive.

The automatic brake differential (ABD) remains on.

Off-road PSM (PSM in the off-road driving program)

When the off-road driving program is active, an off-road PSM specially matched to off-road driving is activated to improve traction.

In order to improve driveability on difficult terrain, the response of the off-road PSM is less sensitive in the low speed range when the vehicle is set to the off-road driving program.

If the brakes are highly stressed, the automatic brake differential (ABD) switches itself off to protect the brakes. It remains deactivated until the brake system has cooled sufficiently again.

Automatic brake differential (ABD)

The ABD system controls the front and rear axles separately. If one wheel of an axle starts to spin, it is braked so that the other wheel on the same axle can be driven.

ABD recognizes different driving states, and it features control strategies adapted to these states. In situations in which little propulsive power is required, such as when the vehicle moves off on a level gravel surface, traction control already becomes active at low engine speeds. If a large amount of propulsive power is required, such as when moving off on an uphill slope or for rapid acceleration, the ABD system is adapted accordingly.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)


The anti-slip regulation system prevents the wheels from spinning by adjusting the engine power, thereby ensuring good lane-holding ability and stable handling.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

In conditions of excessive slip, the engine drag torque control system prevents all driven wheels from locking up when the vehicle is overrunning. This is also the case for downshifts on a slippery road.



Switching off PSM

- ▷ Press button  .
PSM is switched off after a short delay.
The light-emitting diode in the button is lit up.
When PSM is switched off, the PSM OFF warning light on the instrument panel lights up **and** a message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

With increased braking power, the vehicle is stabilized even when PSM is switched off.

One-sided spinning of the wheels is prevented, even with PSM switched off.

PSM should always be switched on during "normal" driving.

However, it may be a good idea to switch off PSM temporarily in exceptional situations:


- on a loose surface (e.g. on sand)
- in deep snow,
- when "rocking the vehicle free" and
- when using snow chains.

Information

When PSM is switched off, wheel-specific brake interventions and the anti-slip regulation system (ASR) are also inactive.

The automatic brake differential (ABD) remains on.

Switching PSM back on

- ▷ Press button  .
PSM is active immediately.
The light-emitting diode in the button and the PSM OFF warning light on the instrument panel go out.
A message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

PSM warning light

- The PSM warning light on the instrument panel lights up for a lamp check when the ignition is switched on.
- The light indicates a control operation, even when PSM is switched off, e.g. brake control in the event of one-sided wheel spin.
- The light - in conjunction with the multi-purpose display - indicates a fault.
The warning message "PSM failure" appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.
- ▷ Adapt your driving style according to the changed conditions.
- ▷ Consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

Collapsible spare wheel

- ▷ Never switch off PSM when driving with a collapsible spare wheel.

Towing

- ▷ For information on towing:
Please see the chapter "TOWING" on page 302.

ABS brake system (Anti-Lock Brake System)

ABS ensures:

- **Full steering control**
The vehicle remains steerable.
- **Good driving stability**
No skidding due to locked wheels.
- **Optimum braking distance**
Shorter stopping distance in most cases.
- **Prevention of wheel locking**
No flat spots on the tires.

Function

The decisive advantage of ABS lies in the driving stability and maneuverability of the vehicle in hazardous situations.

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during full braking, on almost all road surfaces, until just before the vehicle stops.

ABS begins to control the braking process as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. This controlled braking process is comparable with extremely rapid cadence braking. The pulsating brake pedal and a “juddering noise” warn the driver to adapt his driving speed to the road conditions.

- ▷ If full braking is necessary, fully depress the brake pedal during the whole braking operation, even though the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the braking pressure.

ABS ABS warning light USA



ABS warning light Canada

If the ABS warning lights light up on the instrument panel and on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel while the engine is running, ABS has switched off because of a fault. In this case, the brake system will operate **without lock prevention**, as in vehicles without ABS.

- ▷ Adapt your driving style to the changed braking behavior.
The ABS must be checked immediately at your authorized Porsche dealer in order to prevent the occurrence of further faults with unpredictable consequences.

The ABS control unit is adjusted for the approved tire dimensions.

The use of tires with non-approved dimensions can lead to different wheel speeds, causing ABS to switch off.

Off-road ABS (ABS in the off-road driving program)

When the off-road driving program is active, an ABS configuration specially matched to off-road driving is activated automatically.

In the event of braking on loose ground, the permissible slip values for ABS braking are increased so that the off-road braking distance is reduced (wheels dig into the surface).

If the driver needs to steer, the off-road driving program is automatically switched off to maintain steerability.

HOLD function: Drive-Off Assistant, standstill management

The HOLD function, as an assistance function, assists the driver when stopping and driving off on upward slopes.

The vehicle is automatically prevented from rolling back away from the desired direction of travel. When the HOLD function is active, the indicator light **HOLD** on the instrument panel comes on.

Driving off with the Drive-Off Assistant on vehicles with manual transmission

- 1.** Hold the vehicle securely on the slope with the footbrake.
The engine must be running.
- 2.** Press the clutch pedal fully.
- 3.** Engage a gear corresponding to the direction of travel up the slope (1st gear or reverse gear).
- 4.** Release the footbrake while keeping the clutch pedal pressed.
The vehicle is held on the slope to facilitate driving off and prevent it from rolling back.
- 5.** Drive off as usual.

⚠ WARNING Limits of HOLD Function

The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome, even with the HOLD function. Responsibility for driving off on upward slopes is still the driver's, despite the HOLD function. Assistance by the HOLD function is not always guaranteed when stopping and driving off on a slippery surface (e.g. on icy or loose surfaces). In this case, the vehicle can slip.

- ▷ Always adjust your driving style to the driving conditions and vehicle load. Use the footbrake if necessary.

⚠ CAUTION Drive-Off Assistant Not Working

If the Drive-Off Assistant is not functioning, the driver cannot be assisted when driving off on hills.

- ▷ Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.

⚠ CAUTION Vehicle Roll-back

If the vehicle comes to a standstill on a steep uphill gradient without using the service brake, this may result in a certain roll-back before the vehicle is held by the HOLD function. In this situation, the driver can reduce the roll-back by pressing the footbrake.

- ▷ Assist holding of the vehicle by increasing the braking force with the footbrake.

Brake pedal feels different. When adaptive cruise control is operating normally or when the HOLD function is active, the brake pedal may feel different and you may hear hydraulic noises. Pressing the footbrake while the HOLD function is active can cause pulsations in the pedal. This behavior is normal for the system. It is not a fault.

Porsche Hill Control (PHC)

Porsche Hill Control is an assistance system that helps the driver when driving slowly downhill at speeds of between approx. 2 mph (3 km/h) and 20 mph (30 km/h), e.g. on steep slopes or on wintry mountain roads, both when driving forward and reversing.

The system limits the speed by braking on all four wheels. ABS remains active to prevent the wheels from locking.

On vehicles with manual transmission, the system adapts the speed in such a way that the engine is not braked at idle speed.

Like all brakes, the braking ability of Porsche Hill Control is impaired on slippery surfaces (e.g. on icy roads or loose surfaces).

⚠ WARNING Slippery Roads

Reduced braking ability on a slippery surface.

- ▷ Always adjust your driving style to the driving situation.

Preconditions:

- PHC is on.
- The speed must not exceed approx. 20 mph (30 km/h).
- The gradient must be at least approx. 12 %.
- The driver does not accelerate or brake.



Switching on PHC

- ▷ Press the PHC button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.



PHC readiness

The gray symbol on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel indicates readiness.



PHC control is active/ Desired speed

The desired speed is displayed in orange under the PHC symbol, which has now turned white.

Switching off PHC

- ▷ Press the PHC button again.
The indicator light on the button goes out.



Information

The active system is again ready for operation if the gradient is less than approx. 6 %.

Changing speed

The speed can be changed when PHC is switched on:

- ▷ The new desired speed is stored when you release the brake or accelerator pedal
or
is set using the cruise control or adaptive cruise control stalk.



Information

Cruise control readiness must be switched on:

- ▷ Press button **A** on the control stalk.
Please see the chapter "CRUISE CONTROL" on page 158.

Adaptive cruise control must be switched on:

- ▷ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
Please see the chapter "ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL" on page 160.

Accelerating

- ▷ Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward and keep it pressed (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased and stored when you release the stalk.

Decelerating

- ▷ Pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel and keep it pulled (position **2**).
The desired speed is reduced and stored when you release the stalk.

Measurements on test stands

Brake tests

Brake tests must be carried out only in the on-road driving program and on plate-type or roller-type test stands.

The following limit values must not be exceeded on roller-type test stands:

- Test speed 4.7 mph (7.5 km/h)
- Test duration 20 seconds

Electric parking brake test

Electric parking brake tests on the brake test stand must be performed only with the ignition switched off and with the Tiptronic selector lever in position **N** or with the gearshift lever in neutral.

Balancing wheels on the vehicle

During finish balancing of the wheels, the entire vehicle must be lifted and the wheels must be free to turn.

Air Suspension with Leveling System and Height Adjustment

On vehicles with air suspension, the driver can set five different level steps manually.

The preselected level is automatically adapted to suit the vehicle speed.

The height of the vehicle is automatically kept constant when the vehicle is loaded. The individual levels can be set only while the engine is running.



Information

- The vehicle may not be driven on public roads in the terrain or special terrain setting.
- Frequent level changes can cause the compressor to overheat. In this case, the compressor must cool for several minutes before the leveling system is fully functional again. The system automatically adjusts to a selected level when the compressor cools down.

Normal level

The ground clearance at normal level is approx. 7.48 in. (190 mm).

Terrain level (High level I)

This level is intended for off-road driving, field tracks, forest paths, etc.

The vehicle is raised by around 1.1 in. (28 mm) (front axle) and 0.98 in. (25 mm) (rear axle) compared with normal level.

Terrain level can only be selected manually and at speeds below approx. 50 mph (80 km/h).

The vehicle is automatically lowered to normal level at speeds exceeding approx. 50 mph (80 km/h) (60 mph or (100 km/h) when the off-road driving program is active).

The vehicle is automatically raised to terrain level when the off-road driving program is activated.

Special terrain level (High level II)

This setting is intended only for extremely challenging terrain requiring maximum ground clearance. Compared with normal level, the vehicle is raised by around 2.28 in. (58 mm) (front axle) and 2.17 in. (55 mm) (rear axle).

Special terrain level can only be selected manually and at speeds below approx. 20 mph (30 km/h).

The vehicle is automatically lowered to terrain level at a speed of more than approx. 20 mph (30 km/h).

Low level

This level is intended for high-speed driving.

From a speed of approx. 85 mph (138 km/h), the vehicle is automatically lowered by approx. 0.87 in. (22 mm) (front axle) and 0.98 in. (25 mm) (rear axle) compared with normal level.

The vehicle is automatically raised to normal level if the speed falls to below approx. 60 mph (80 km/h) for about 10 seconds or below approx. 25 mph (40 km/h).



Information

If low level was set manually using the rocker switch in the center console, low level also remains active at speeds below approx. 25 mph (40 km/h).

Low level II

This level is intended for high-speed driving. From a speed of approx. 130 mph (210 km/h) for more than 40 seconds, the vehicle is automatically lowered by approx. 1.26 in. (32 mm) (front axle) and 1.38 in. (35 mm) (rear axle) compared with normal level.

The vehicle is automatically raised to low level if the speed drops to below approx. 105 mph (170 km/h) for around 60 seconds or below approx. 75 mph (120 km/h).

Loading level

NOTICE

Risk of damage to chassis parts, assemblies and the vehicle underbody.

The vehicle may bottom when driven down from curbs, for example, if the ground clearance is insufficient at loading level.

- ▷ Always switch to normal level before moving off.

This setting makes it easier to load the luggage compartment.

The vehicle is lowered by around 2.05 in. (52 mm) (front axle) and 2.17 in. (55 mm) (rear axle) compared to normal level.

The vehicle is automatically raised to normal level at speeds exceeding approx. 3 mph (5 km/h).

Setting the level manually

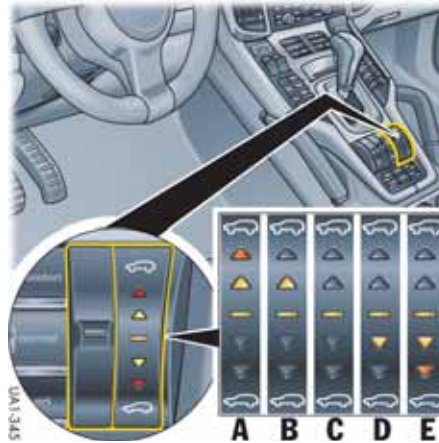
Preconditions

- Engine is switched on.
- Doors are closed.



Information

The last selected level is stored in the memory after the ignition is switched off.



- A - Special terrain level (high level II)
- B - Terrain level (high level I)
- C - Normal level
- D - Low level
- E - Loading level

Raising the vehicle

- ▷ Briefly press rocker switch forward . The vehicle is raised one level.

Lowering the vehicle

- ▷ Briefly pull rocker switch to the rear . The vehicle is lowered one level.

Indication of selected level

The selected level is indicated by light-emitting diodes next to the rocker switch (**illustration**).

The corresponding light-emitting diode next to the rocker switch flashes during the adjustment process. It then lights up continuously.

The level change is also indicated on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

Exceptions

Automatic changes from normal level to low level and back are not indicated on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

Warning message

Various messages will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if there is a system fault.

- ▷ For more information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display: Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.
- ▷ Adjust your driving style according to the modified conditions.
- ▷ Contact an authorized Porsche dealer in order to correct a system fault.

Raising the vehicle with the jack

Whenever it is necessary to raise the vehicle using the jack:

- ▷ Manually set normal level and then switch off the leveling system.

Switching off level control

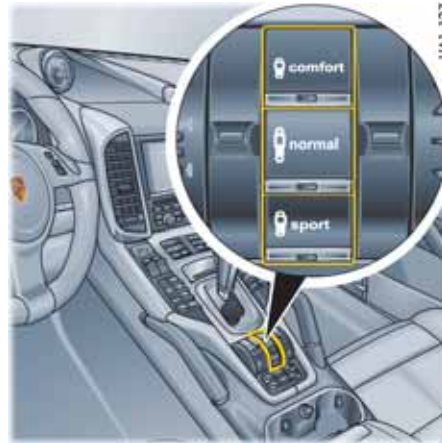
1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the rocker switch forward for 10–15 seconds.
A message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel when the rocker switch is released.
The vehicle can now be raised.

Switching the leveling system back on

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press rocker switch forward for 10–15 seconds
or
drive off in the vehicle.
The leveling system switches on automatically.

Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters

- ▷ Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels.



Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)

Three different chassis setups can be selected at the push of a button:

- comfort
- normal
- sport

If the chassis setups “comfort” or “normal” have been selected, the system automatically changes the setup to “sport” when the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner.

Selecting chassis setup

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the appropriate button.

Information

The last selected chassis setup is stored in the memory after the ignition is switched off.

Indication of the selected chassis setup

The light-emitting diode in the button of the selected chassis setup lights up. In addition, the selected chassis setup is shown on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel for approx. 5 seconds.

Warning message

The system automatically detects PASM faults. In this case, a warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.
- ▷ Adapt your driving style according to the changed conditions.
- ▷ To remedy the fault, consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC)

Function

Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC) is a system for roll stabilization of the vehicle body when driving. Driving comfort and driving safety are improved by active intervention of the anti-roll bars on the front and rear axles.

No separate controls are available for the PDCC system.

After selection of a chassis setup in Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM):

- comfort
- normal
- sport

PDCC automatically activates the corresponding on-road driving program.

- ▷ For information on selecting a chassis setup: Please see the chapter “PORSCHE ACTIVE SUSPENSION MANAGEMENT (PASM)” on page 197.

PDCC automatically activates its off-road function if the off-road driving program is switched on.

- ▷ For information on engaging a driving program: Please see the chapter “DRIVING PROGRAMS FOR ON-ROAD AND OFF-ROAD DRIVING” on page 184.

Warning message

A warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if there is a system fault.

- ▷ For more information on warning messages on the multi-purpose display: Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.
- ▷ Adapt your driving style according to the changed conditions.
- ▷ To remedy the fault, consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

Checking hydraulic fluid

The hydraulic fluid is checked and changed regularly as part of servicing.

Further important information on “Maintenance” can be found in a separate section.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE” on page 239.

Off-Road Driving

Please read this section carefully before driving off-road with your Porsche.

The information provided will familiarize you with the special advantages of your vehicle, allowing you to arrive at your destination safely every time. We recommend practicing on less rugged terrain.

Vehicles with SportDesign package

NOTICE

Risk of damage. Front, rear and side member trims are painted on vehicles with the SportDesign package.

Off-road driving can seriously damage these trims.

- ▷ When driving off-road, make sure these parts are not damaged.
- ▷ Make sure there is sufficient clearance between obstacles and the underside of the vehicle.
- ▷ Avoid driving through water.
- ▷ Do not use side member trims or rear wheel spoilers as a running board.

Information

Please bear in mind that off-road driving subjects all vehicle components to considerably more wear than normal driving, making professional inspection and maintenance after every use vital preconditions for functioning and safety.

Grains of sand, dirt particles and other abrasive materials entering the brakes can cause excessive wear or unpredictable braking action.

Rules for off-road driving

- ▷ Ensure vehicle is equipped with approved all-terrain tires.
- ▷ Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle.
- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program. Please see the chapter “SELECTING DRIVING PROGRAM” on page 185.
- ▷ Switch on terrain level or special terrain level, if necessary, before starting to drive off-road. Do not brake the car to a stop while adjusting the level.
- ▷ The level should only be adjusted on a level surface.
- ▷ Stow or fasten luggage and loads securely. For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter “LOADING INFORMATION” on page 221.
- ▷ If unknown terrain is obscured from view, examine it on foot first and drive with extreme caution. This way, obstacles are easier to recognize and damage to the vehicle is avoided.
- ▷ Always drive with the engine running. Power steering assistance is provided only with the engine running.
- ▷ Drive slowly and consistently.
- ▷ Always make sure that the wheels are touching the ground.
- ▷ Before driving through water, check the water depth, the condition of the surface beneath it and the speed of the water.
- ▷ Look out for obstacles, such as boulders, holes, tree stumps or ruts.
- ▷ Always keep the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system and the side windows closed while driving.

- ▷ Do not deviate from marked routes or paths.
- ▷ Respect nature. Always obey off-limits signs.

Driving Systems for Off-Road Driving

Specially adapted driving programs or power-transmission and chassis control systems are available for off-road driving:

- Off-road PTM
- Off-road PTV Plus (depending on vehicle equipment)
- Off-road PSM
- Off-road ABS
- ▷ For further information on the functioning of chassis control systems: Please see the chapter “TRANSMISSION AND CHASSIS CONTROL SYSTEMS” on page 188.

Before driving off-road

Tires

- ▷ Check tread depth and inflation pressure of tires.
- ▷ Check for damage and remove any foreign objects (e.g. stones) from the tread.
- ▷ Replace missing valve caps.

Rims

- ▷ Replace dented or damaged rims before driving off-road.

Vehicles with SportDesign package

NOTICE

Risk of damage. Front, rear and side member trims are painted on vehicles with the SportDesign package.

Off-road driving can seriously damage these trims.

- ▷ When driving off-road, make sure these parts are not damaged.
- ▷ Make sure there is sufficient clearance between obstacles and the underside of the vehicle.
- ▷ Avoid driving through water.
- ▷ Do not use side member trims or rear wheel spoilers as a running board.

After driving off-road

Off-road driving is harder on the vehicle than normal driving on roads.

We recommend that you inspect the vehicle after off-road driving. Potential damage poses an accident risk and impairs driving comfort.

Damage to the vehicle is recognized in good time if the vehicle is checked.

WARNING

Effect of Vehicle and Tire Damage

Vehicle damage poses an accident risk for the vehicle occupants and other road users.

- ▷ If in doubt, have your vehicle checked at an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Examine tires for signs of damage, such as cuts, tears, bulges or foreign objects stuck in the tread. Replace a damaged tire if necessary.
- ▷ Have any damage to your vehicle repaired by an authorized Porsche dealer without delay.

Recommended procedure

- ▷ Switch off the off-road driving program.
- ▷ Clean headlights and tail lights and check them for signs of damage.
- ▷ Clean the front and rear license plates.
- ▷ Clean the tire tread with a jet of water and remove any foreign objects.
- ▷ Clean wheels, wheel housings and the underbody with a jet of water.
- ▷ Check whether the vehicle has picked up plant parts or branches.
These materials increase the risk of fire and can damage fuel lines, brake hoses, boots of the axle joints and drive shafts.
- ▷ After off-road driving, always check the entire floor assembly, tires, body structure, steering system, chassis and exhaust system for signs of damage.
- ▷ After driving for an extended period through mud, sand, water or substances with a similar soiling effect, check the brake disks, brake pads, wheels and axle joints and have them cleaned.
- ▷ If you experience severe vibrations after driving off-road, check the wheels for foreign substances. These substances can produce an imbalance which might be responsible for the vibrations. Removing these deposits may remedy the problem.

Off-Road driving on uphill gradients

DANGER Avoiding Overturning

- ▷ Do not turn round when driving on uphill gradients.
- ▷ If it is not possible to climb an uphill gradient, the vehicle must be backed down in reverse gear.
- ▷ Do not drive over embankments or slopes at steep diagonal angles.
- ▷ If the vehicle starts to tilt, immediately steer in the direction of the tilt (line of slope).
- ▷ When driving on uphill gradients, never let the vehicle roll back when in neutral or not in gear. Exclusive use of the footbrake is too risky in such situations.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program before taking extreme uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▷ Do not perform manual gear changes when driving, and try to avoid stopping.
- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.

Traction on uphill gradients

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.
- ▷ When driving uphill, go easy on the accelerator and make sure that wheels have sufficient traction (do not spin).
- ▷ Do not adjust the vehicle level on a slope.
- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.
- ▷ Drive slowly.

Off-Road driving on downhill gradients

DANGER Avoiding Overturning

- ▷ Do not drive over embankments or slopes at steep diagonal angle.
- ▷ Drive downhill slowly, with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.
- ▷ If the vehicle starts to tilt, immediately steer in the direction of the tilt (line of slope).
- ▷ When driving downhill, never let the vehicle roll when in idle.
- ▷ Use engine braking effect.
If the engine braking effect is not sufficient to appropriately check the speed, gently apply the footbrake.
- ▷ Activate Porsche Hill Control (PHC).
Please see the chapter "PORSCHE HILL CONTROL (PHC)" on page 193.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program. Off-road ABS is switched on automatically.
- ▷ Do not perform manual gear changes when driving, and try to avoid stopping.
- ▷ Do not adjust the vehicle level on a slope.

The special control mechanism of the off-road ABS permits controlled brief lock-up of the front wheels so that they can dig into the loose surface more effectively.

Locked wheels slip and can no longer be steered.

- ▷ When driving down steep hills on unpaved surfaces, brake carefully to prevent sliding.

Humps

- ▷ Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.
- ▷ Just before reaching the hump, ease off the accelerator slightly and use only the vehicle's momentum to cross the hump. This will prevent the vehicle from jumping over the hump and landing on the next downward slope at excessive speed.
- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.

Driving through water

- ▷ Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle.

DANGER Fast-flowing Deep Water

- ▷ Before driving through water, check the water depth, water speed and the condition of the surface beneath it.
The water must not be deeper than 19.7 in. (50 cm). The water must not be deeper than 21.9 in. (55.5 cm) for vehicles with level control and height adjustment.
- ▷ Do not drive through deep or rapidly flowing water.
Deep or rapidly flowing water, such as mountain streams or flooded roads, can cause the vehicle to deviate from the desired path and roll over.
- ▷ Never open the doors when driving through water.

WARNING Impaired Braking / Soiling

- Soiling can impair the braking action.
- ▷ Check and clean the brakes if they are soiled.

WARNING Impaired Steering - Driving in Water

- Danger of steering assistance failing during a long trip in water if the drive belt slips.
- ▷ If steering assistance fails, more effort will be required to steer.

NOTICE

- Danger of damage to electrical systems.
- ▷ Avoid driving through salt water.

NOTICE

- Risk of damage to the engine and accessories if water gets into the vehicle.

- ▷ Before driving through water, check the water depth, water speed and the condition of the surface beneath it.
The water must not be deeper than 19.7 in. (50 cm). The water must not be deeper than 21.9 in. (55.5 cm) for vehicles with level control and height adjustment.
- ▷ Make sure that the door sills and rubber seals are clean before starting to drive.
- ▷ Avoid producing bow waves by driving at an appropriate speed.
- ▷ Do not drive through deep or rapidly flowing water.
Deep or rapidly flowing water, such as mountain streams, can cause the vehicle to deviate from the desired path.
- ▷ Never open the doors when driving through water.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.
 - ▷ Switch the air-conditioner off.
 - ▷ Switch the headlights off.
 - ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.
 - ▷ Do not perform manual gear changes when driving, and try to avoid stopping.
Moving off in water can be difficult due to the high resistance and the loose surface involved.
 - ▷ Raise the vehicle level before driving through water.
 - ▷ Start driving through water at a shallow place at walking speed.
 - ▷ After checking the body of water, take the shortest path through it.
 - ▷ Never drive into water with momentum.
The resulting bow wave could damage the engine and accessories.
 - ▷ Adjust your driving style to unfamiliar surroundings.
 - ▷ Drive through the water slowly and at a constant speed.
 - ▷ Never turn around when crossing a body of water.
 - ▷ If it is not possible to cross a body of water, the vehicle must be backed out in reverse gear.
- The power-steering pump and alternator can fail if the vehicle is driven through water for an extended period.
- ▷ If the power-steering pump fails, substantially more force is necessary in order to steer.

Information

The vehicle requires a particularly thorough check after driving through water.

- ▷ Remove mud from the tire tread.
- ▷ Briefly “brake” the brake pads dry after driving through water.

Crossing obstacles

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the underbody and chassis parts.

These parts can be damaged if you do not drive properly over obstacles.

- ▷ Always check the ground clearance of your vehicle.
- ▷ Slowly drive over the middle of tree stumps, boulders or other obstacles with one of the front wheels.
- ▷ Cross the obstacle with the rear wheel in the same way.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.
- ▷ Get your passenger to direct you if necessary.
- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.
- ▷ Drive slowly.

Driving on sand

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.

Loose sand is an especially tricky surface for off-road driving.

You can often become stuck in sand within minutes if you do not drive correctly in such situations.

- ▷ Drive rapidly and do not stop under any circumstances. Otherwise, the vehicle will become bogged down.
- ▷ Follow existing tracks – provided they have not been covered by blown sand, are not too deep and the vehicle’s ground clearance is sufficient.
Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle.
- ▷ If you need to stop the vehicle on sand, choose a downward slope if possible to allow you to drive off again more easily.

When driving on slopes with soft sand on vehicles with Tiptronic S:

- ▷ To achieve a high engine speed, use the manual selection mode **M** as well as the off-road driving program if necessary.

If your vehicle still gets stuck:

- ▷ Do not spin the wheels. Instead, use branches, mats or similar items to provide adequate traction so that you can drive out of the critical area.

Off-road driving on track ruts

Other vehicles leave ruts on many off-road tracks or gravel roads.

- ▷ Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle floor.

The vehicle floor could be damaged when driving through track ruts that are too deep.

- ▷ Always bear in mind the vehicle’s ground clearance.
- ▷ Do not drive through ruts that are too deep.

Information

- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program and engage differential lock(s) if necessary.
- ▷ If in doubt, drive with one wheel on the strip of grass between the ruts.
- ▷ Avoid high engine speeds.
- ▷ Drive slowly.

Storage, Luggage Compartment and Roof Transport System

| | |
|--|-----|
| Loadspace | 204 |
| Cargo Management System | 205 |
| Luggage Compartment Cover | 208 |
| Luggage Safety Net | 209 |
| Ski Bag | 211 |
| Roof Transport System..... | 212 |
| Storage..... | 215 |
| Cupholder..... | 216 |
| Front Ashtray/Storage Compartment..... | 217 |
| Rear Ashtray..... | 218 |
| Cigarette Lighter | 218 |



Loadspace

The maximum permissible load on the loadspace floor is 880 lbs (400 kg). The weight must be distributed evenly over the entire loadspace.

- ▷ For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.

Opening the loadspace floor

1. Pull handle **A** and lift the loadspace floor.



2. Unclip support arm **B** and insert it into fixing recess **C** in the loadspace floor.

Closing the loadspace floor

1. Lift the loadspace floor and clip support arm **B** into its holder in the vehicle floor.
2. Close the loadspace floor.



Tie-down rings

You can secure the load in the luggage compartment to prevent it from slipping. Tie-down straps or the luggage net can be fastened to the tie-down rings **D**.

- ▷ Make sure that all rings are equally loaded when securing a load.

Information

The tie-down rings are not designed to restrain a heavy load in an accident.

Cargo Management System

The cargo management system is a variable system for securing objects in the luggage compartment.

It comprises two telescopic rails integrated in the loadspace, a telescopic bar, four tie-down rings as well as a strap reel and a reversible mat.

The reversible mat has an anti-slip structure on the underside.

- ▷ For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.



Inserting and adjusting the telescopic bar

1. Insert the two end elements of the telescopic bar in the openings **A** of the mounting rails.
2. Press the end elements down and push against the load. When the bar is correctly positioned, the load should no longer be able to move.
3. Release the end elements.
4. Check that the elements are locked in position by pushing against them.



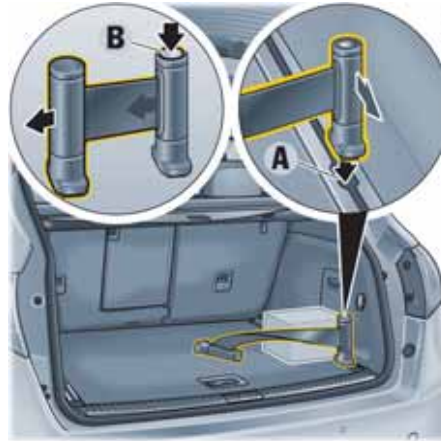
Inserting and adjusting the strap reel

The strap reel is stored together with the tie-down rings in the supplied bag in the luggage compartment or in the spare-wheel well.

1. Take the strap reel out of the bag.
2. Press button **B** on the end element of the strap reel and pull both elements out to the width of the two mounting rails.



3. Insert the two end elements of the strap reel in the openings **A** of the mounting rails.
4. Press both end elements down and push against the load.
5. Release the end elements.
6. Check that the elements are locked in position by pushing against them.
7. Press button **B** and tension the strap so that the load cannot move.
8. Release button **B**.



Inserting strap reel on one rail

1. Press button **B** on the end element and pull both elements apart slightly.

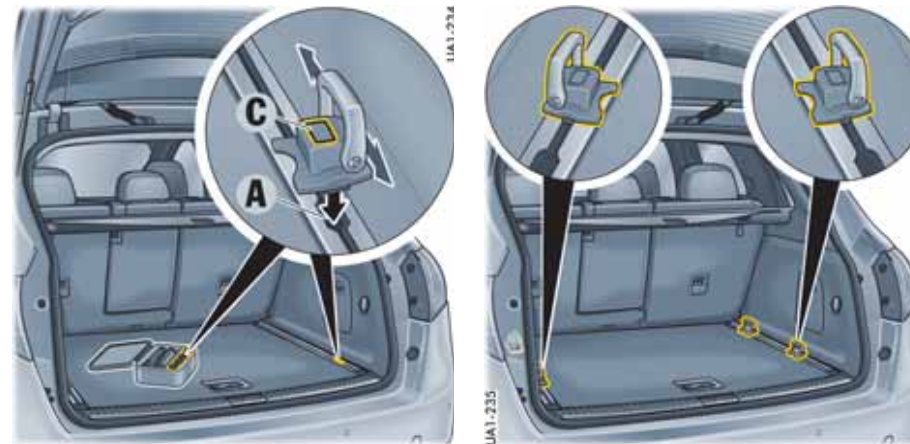


2. Insert one end element of the strap reel in the opening **A** of a mounting rail, press down and slide into position.
3. Insert the second element in the same opening **A**, press down and slide in the opposite direction.
4. Check that the elements are locked in position by pushing against them.
5. Press button **B** and place the strap around the item of luggage.
Tension the belt so that the item of luggage cannot move.
6. Release button **B**.

Inserting and adjusting tie-down rings

Tie-down straps, the luggage net or the luggage safety net can be fastened to the tie-down rings. Make sure that all rings are equally loaded when securing a load.

The tie-down rings are not designed to restrain loads in serious accidents.



1. Insert the tie-down ring in the opening **A** of the mounting rail.
2. Press button **C** down and slide the tie-down ring in the corresponding direction.
3. Release button **C**.
4. Check that the tie-down ring is locked in position by pushing it.

5. Insert the remaining tie-down rings.

i Information

The opposing tie-down rings must always be inserted in the opposite direction.

Luggage Compartment Cover

Items in the luggage compartment may be hidden from view by using the luggage compartment cover.

- ▷ Always pull out the luggage compartment cover when transporting objects in the luggage compartment.
The luggage compartment cover is not designed to carry objects.
- ▷ Do not hang bags or objects on the support brackets. The support brackets can break off.

⚠ WARNING

Misuse of Luggage Compartment Cover

In the event of braking, direction changes or in an accident, objects can slide into the passenger compartment and endanger the occupants.

- ▷ Do not place objects on top of the luggage compartment cover.



Pulling out luggage compartment cover

- ▷ Pull out the cover by the handle and insert it into the guides on the left and right side walls.

Retracting luggage compartment cover

- ▷ Disengage the luggage compartment cover from guides on the side walls and carefully guide it back into the retractor roller.



Retractable covers

The area between the luggage compartment cover and the adjustable rear seat backrests can be covered by two retractable covers.

Pulling out retractable cover

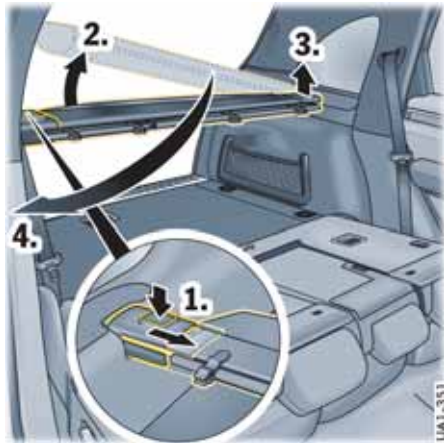
- ▷ Pull the retractable cover forward and engage it at the holders on the rear seat backrest.

Rolling in retractable cover

- ▷ Disengage the retractable cover from the holders and carefully guide it back into the retractor roller.

****i** Information**

- ▷ The retractable covers must be disengaged when adjusting the rear seats (fore-and-aft adjustment, backrest angle).
- ▷ When folding over the rear seat backrest, first disengage the retractable cover from the holder and guide it carefully back into the retractor roller.



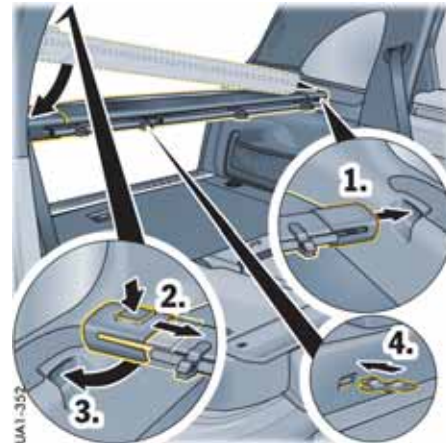
Removing luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover is installed and removed through the rear right door.

- ▷ First disengage the retractable covers from the rear seat backrests and fold the backrests forward.

Please see the chapter “FOLDING REAR SEAT BACKRESTS FORWARD” on page 41.

1. Press the release button and slide the side panel in direction of arrow.
2. Take the cover up out of the receiving holder on the right side.
3. Then remove the cover on the left side.
4. Remove the cover from the vehicle through the open door.



Installing luggage compartment cover

1. Insert the cover into the receiving holder on the left side.
2. Insert the cover on the right side down into the holder by pressing the release button and sliding the side panel in direction of arrow.
3. Press the cover down until it locks securely with an audible click.
4. Move the backrests into vertical position and engage the retractable covers on the rear seat backrests.

Luggage Safety Net

The luggage safety net can hold back only lightweight objects in the event of braking, changes in direction or in an accident.

- ▷ For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter “LOADING INFORMATION” on page 221.

WARNING Unsecured Loads

Unsecured loads can slip and endanger the occupants in the event of braking, changes in direction or in an accident.

- ▷ Always secure the passenger compartment with the luggage safety net.
- ▷ Always fasten the load at the tie-down rings.
- ▷ Never load the vehicle higher than the top edge of the seat backrest.
- ▷ If the luggage safety net was heavily stressed or damaged during braking or in an accident etc., have the safety net and its retaining bracket checked by an authorized Porsche dealer.



Installing luggage safety net

i Information

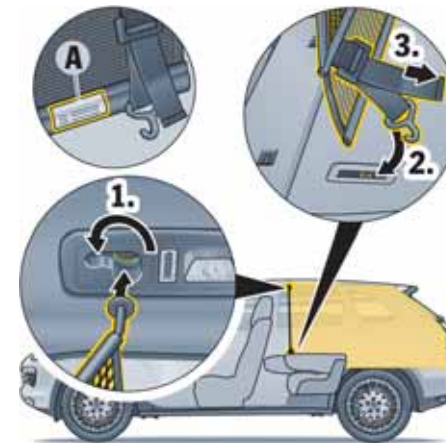
- ▷ When installing the luggage safety net, check that the correct side of the net is facing to the rear (see attached label **A** on the net).

Seat backrests not folded over

1. Engage the luggage safety net in the rear fixing rings on the ceiling using the left and right fastening hooks.

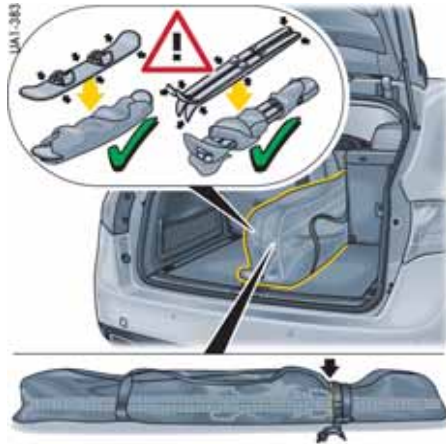


2. Position the tie-down rings in the loadspace floor in such a way that they are the same distance from the end of the rail. It must be possible to tension the net vertically and the net must not be bent around the rear seats.
3. Attach the luggage safety net in the tie-down rings on the loadspace floor using the bottom hooks.
4. Tighten the net by pulling on the belt strap.



Seat backrests folded over

- ▷ Fold backrests forward:
Please see the chapter "FOLDING REAR SEAT BACKRESTS FORWARD" on page 41. Always make sure that the backrests are secured correctly.
1. Attach the luggage safety net in the front fixing rings on the ceiling using the left and right fastening hooks.
 2. Attach the luggage safety net on the backrests using the bottom hooks.
 3. Tighten the net by pulling on the belt strap.



Ski Bag

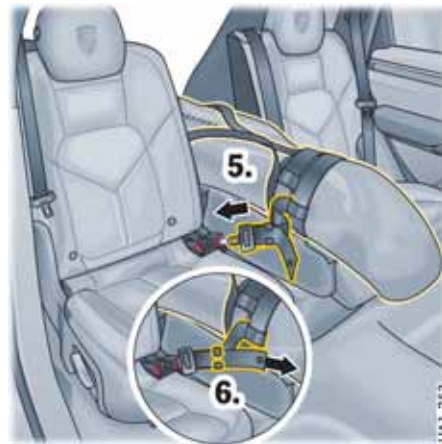
Snowboard or skis, can be transported neatly and without damaging the passenger compartment.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the ski bag from sharp edges on the load (e.g. snowboard).
 ▷ Protect sharp edges on the load.

Putting snowboard or skis into the ski bag

1. Provide the snowboard or the skis with edge protection.
2. Place the snowboard or the skis into the ski bag and close it. The skis must be placed into the ski bag with the rear ends facing the front of the vehicle. The zip of the ski bag must face the rear of the vehicle.
3. Tighten the snowboard or the skis with the tightening strap. The bindings must be behind this strap.



Loading and securing ski bag

1. Move the rear seats to the furthest rear position. Please see the chapter "REAR SEATS" on page 40. Alternatively, remove the middle headrest. Please see the chapter "REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE MIDDLE HEADREST OF THE REAR SEAT" on page 36.
2. Lift up the belt buckle on the middle seat.
3. Fold the backrest on the middle rear seat forward: Please see the chapter "FOLDING MIDDLE SEAT BACKREST FORWARD" on page 42.
4. Slide the ski bag through the loadspace over the folded seat backrest. Make sure not to damage the center console with the ski bag.
5. Insert belt tongue into the buckle.
6. Tighten the belt.

Stowing the ski bag

1. Empty the ski bag and pull it into the passenger compartment.
2. Adjust the middle seat backrest to vertical position: Please see the chapter "ADJUSTING MIDDLE SEAT BACKREST TO VERTICAL POSITION" on page 42.
3. Only fold up the ski bag when it is dry and store it in the gear bag.
4. Secure the bag in the loadspace with the Velcro strips.

i Information

Maximum ski bag load (75 lbs (34 kg) total weight):

- 4 pairs of normal carving skis with ski sticks **or**
- 3 pairs of normal carving skis with ski sticks and one snowboard.

Roof Transport System

- ▷ Only use roof transport systems from the Porsche Tequipment range for your vehicle or roof transport systems that have been tested and approved by Porsche. It is **not** possible to fit commercially available roof rack systems.

The **Porsche Roof Transport System** allows you to carry various sports and hobby equipment. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to tell you about the various different uses of the Roof Transport System.



WARNING

Roof Load Instability

- ▷ Do not exceed the permissible roof load, permissible gross weight and permissible axle loads.
Details of these weights and loads can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual:
Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.
- ▷ Distribute load evenly, with heavy items as low as possible. Items of luggage must not project beyond the side of the load area.
- ▷ Fix and secure every item to the basic carrier with a rope or lashing strap (do not use elastic rubber tensioners).
- ▷ Before every trip, and at regular intervals during long trips, check that the Roof Transport System and load are secure. Retighten if necessary and secure further by locking. Tighten all fastening screws again.

When the Roof Transport System is loaded, the maximum speeds depends on the nature, size and weight of the load being carried.

- ▷ Driving, braking and steering behavior change due to the higher center of gravity and the greater wind resistance. You should adapt your driving style accordingly.
Nevertheless, Porsche recommends that you do not exceed the posted speed limit.
 - ▷ Never drive faster than 90 mph (140 km/h) when the Roof Transport System is fitted and loaded.
 - ▷ With the basic carrier fitted and no load, do not exceed a maximum speed of 110 mph (180 km/h).
-

NOTICE

Washing the vehicle in a car wash or failure to observe the overall vehicle height or the permitted gross weight can damage the vehicle or Roof Transport System.

- ▷ Remove the roof transport system completely before washing the vehicle in a car wash.
- ▷ Check the overall vehicle height with the Roof Transport System fitted before driving into multi-storey car parks, garages underground garages and tunnels.
- ▷ Do not exceed the permissible roof load, permissible gross weight and permissible axle loads.

Details of these weights and loads can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual:

Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.



Information

- ▷ Since fuel consumption and noise are increased with the Roof Transport System is fitted, it should not remain on the vehicle if not in use.
 - ▷ For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.
-



- A - Front carrier bar
- B - Rear carrier bar
- C - Cover trims
- D - Torque wrench
- E - Key

Fitting carrier bars

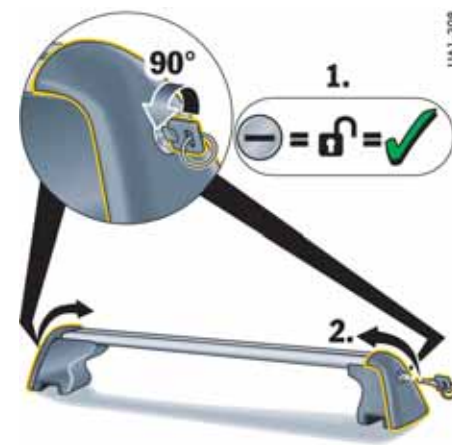
A sticker on the underside of the carrier bars identifies the front and rear bars (**illustration**).

- ▷ Fit the carrier bars so that the sticker is on the left side of the vehicle.

Always observe these markings when fitting the carrier bars on the roof rails.



1. Secure the carrier bars in the marked areas only. There is one bore at the inside of each roof rail. The locking pin in the support must engage in this bore.



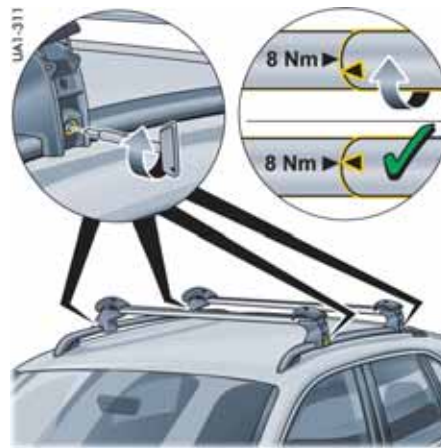
2. Open the cover on the supports in order to fit the carrier bars. To do this, insert the key and turn it counter-clockwise to the horizontal position. Then fold up the cover.

i Information

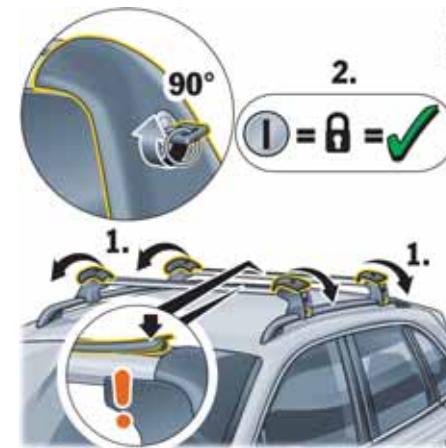
Clean the carrier bar support area of the roof rails before installing.



3. Before fitting the carrier bars, unscrew the fastening screws as far as they will go.
4. Carefully position the carrier bars on the roof rails and straighten them. Guide the locking pin **A** into the corresponding bore **B** in the roof rail and secure it at this position.



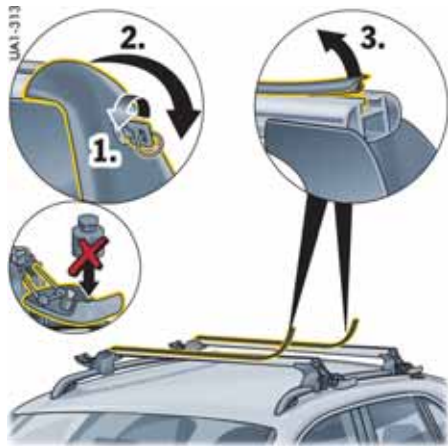
5. Then tighten the tensioning screws in all the supports to 6 ftlb. (8 Nm) one after the other using the torque wrench. The two arrows on the torque wrench must be perfectly aligned to do this (6 ftlb./8 Nm). This secures the two carrier bars both lengthwise and crosswise.



6. Close all covers and lock the locks. To do this, turn the key clockwise to the vertical position and remove it. Then fit the cover trims if necessary.

i Information

- ▷ Check the screws and fastenings after a short trip, re-tighten them if necessary and check them again at the relevant intervals.
- ▷ The screws must be checked more frequently on bad roads. If this is not done, the Roof Transport System can become loose or fall off and can endanger other road users.



Installing accessories

1. To install accessories, open the support cover and fold it down.
Do not strain the folded-down cover.
2. Remove the profile trim and guide the accessories into the available T-groove.
Close the support cover again.
3. Please observe the relevant installation instructions for attaching and securing carrier attachments.

Storage

⚠ WARNING Unsecured Loads

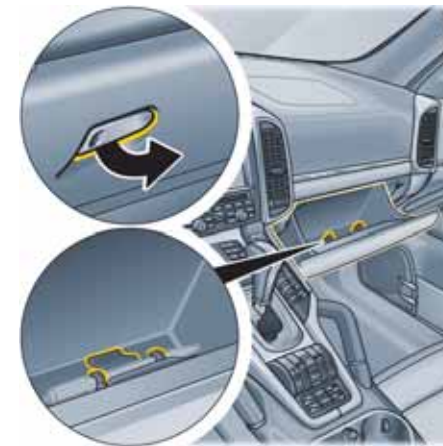
Unsecured or incorrectly positioned loads can slip and endanger the occupants in the event of braking, changes in direction or in an accident.

- ▷ Do not transport items of luggage or objects unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- ▷ Do not transport any heavy objects in open storage trays.
- ▷ Always keep the covers of the storage trays closed while driving.
- ▷ Always protect the passenger compartment with a safety net and a luggage compartment cover.

i Information

An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load can slip out of place or endanger the vehicle occupants during braking, direction changes or in accidents.

- ▷ For information on stowing loads and luggage: Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.



Glove compartment

⚠ WARNING Open Glove Compartments

An open glove compartment may cause injury during an accident.

- ▷ Keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

The glove compartment contains a pen and paper holder.

Opening

- ▷ Pull the latch handle (**arrow**) and open the lid.

Locking

- ▷ Always lock the latch handle with the emergency key to secure the contents from unauthorized access.

For information on cooling the glove box:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "COOLED GLOVE COMPARTMENT" on page 75.



Storage tray in the armrest between the front seats

The armrest can be moved forward or back.

- ▷ Press the lever to the first pressure point, move the armrest forward or back and engage in the end position.

i Information

- ▷ Only move the armrest horizontally when it is closed.

Opening the storage tray

- ▷ Press the lever as far as the second pressure point and open the storage tray.

i Information

The storage tray can only be opened when the armrest is in the rear position.

Other storage options

There are other storage options available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Storage compartment and bottle holder in the front and rear door panel
- Storage compartment in the center console (instead of the ashtray)
- Map pockets
- Clothes hooks on the rear grab handles
- Cargo net on the left in the luggage compartment



Cupholder

You can place drinks cans and cups in the cupholder.

- ▷ Keep the rear cupholder closed while driving.

⚠ WARNING Hot Drink Spills

Hot drinks can cause scalding, if spilled, causing potential loss of vehicle control.

- ▷ Only use containers that fit.
- ▷ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.



Cupholders in the rear armrest

There are two cupholders in the armrest.

- ▷ Fold armrest down fully.



Front Ashtray/Storage Compartment

i Information

The ashtray is replaced by a storage compartment on non-smoker vehicles.

⚠ WARNING Ashtray Fire Risk

- ▷ Never use ashtray for waste paper disposal, as it could pose a fire hazard.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the storage compartment from hot ash.

- ▷ Do not fill with hot ash.

Opening

- ▷ Press briefly on the ashtray lid.

Emptying

- ▷ To release the ashtray insert, open the ashtray and press the ashtray lid down.
- ▷ Pull the ashtray insert up to remove it.
- ▷ After emptying the ashtray, replace the insert and push it down until it clicks into place.



Rear Ashtray

⚠ WARNING Ashtray Fire Risk

- ▷ Never use ashtray for waste paper disposal, as it could pose a fire hazard.

The ashtrays are located in the rear doors.

Opening

- ▷ Press briefly on the ashtray.

Emptying

- ▷ Open the ashtray.
- ▷ Hold the insert at the lid and remove it.



Front cigarette lighter

Cigarette Lighter

The cigarette lighters are ready for use regardless of the ignition lock position.

⚠ WARNING Cigarette Lighter Burns

The tip of the cigarette lighter gets very hot when in use.

- ▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▷ Never touch the heating element or sides of the lighter.
- ▷ Only hold the heated lighter by the knob.



Rear cigarette lighter

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▷ Press the lighter into the receptacle. When the element is red hot, the lighter will jump back to its initial position.

Trailer Hitch

| | |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Trailer Coupling..... | 220 |
| Loading Information..... | 221 |



UAG-368

Retrofitting

Have a trailer coupling retrofitted only by an authorized Porsche dealer. The dealer is familiar with the manufacturer's specifications and any necessary conversion measures.

Electrical connection

Your Porsche is equipped with a 7-pin connector **A** for the electrical connection to the trailer.

⚠ WARNING

Trailer Brake System
Electrical Failure

Failure to keep an electrical adapter clean may result in corrosion and affect operation of electrical lines, resulting in possible trailer brake system failure.

- ▷ Periodically inspect and clean adapter as needed.

Trailer Coupling

⚠ WARNING

Safe Trailer Operation

- ▷ Follow the operating instructions for the trailer recommended by the trailer manufacturer.
 - ▷ Do not modify or repair the trailer coupling.
 - ▷ Before having new ADAPTER fitted, find out from your authorized Porsche dealer about the current authorization status.
 - ▷ Use only ADAPTER makes tested and approved by Porsche.
 - ▷ Ensure that all trailer equipment conforms to the appropriate classification for total gross trailer weight and tongue weight.
-
- ▷ Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.
 - ▷ Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.

Hitching trailer

- ▷ Always turn off the alarm system before you attach a trailer.
- ▷ Follow the operating instructions for the trailer recommended by the trailer manufacturer.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.

Unhitching trailer

- ▷ Always turn the alarm system off before unhitching the trailer because otherwise the alarm will be triggered when the plug is removed.
- ▷ If the trailer is equipped with an overrun brake, do not unhitch the trailer when its brake is still applied.



Information

The alarm function cannot be triggered when disconnecting the trailer plug if the trailer lights are all designed with light-emitting diodes technology.

Loading Information

Definitions

The towing capacity (gross weight of the trailer) is the sum of the trailer's empty weight and the weight of the load.

The vertical coupling load is the weight that the trailer drawbar exerts on the trailer coupling of the vehicle.

The rear-axle load is the vehicle weight on the rear axle plus the weight of the transported load and the vertical coupling load of the trailer.

The gross weight of the vehicle and trailer is the sum of the weight of the towing vehicle and the weight of the trailer.

The Curb weight - actual weight of your vehicle - vehicle weight including standard and optional equipment, fluids, emergency tools, and spare tire assembly. This weight does not include passengers and cargo.

The Gross Vehicle Weight is sum of the curb weight and the weight of passengers and cargo combined.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is the maximum total weight of vehicle, passengers, luggage, hitch, trailer tongue load and optional equipment.

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load limit for the front or the rear axle. This information is located on the safety compliance sticker located in the driver's side door jamb. For determining the compatibility of the tire and vehicle load capabilities:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "WHEELS, TIRES" on page 309.

The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "106") is a minimum requirement. For more information:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "INSCRIPTION ON RADIAL TIRE" on page 290.

The Gross Combined Weight Rating is the maximum total weight rating of vehicle, passengers, cargo and trailer.

The Vehicle Capacity Weight - Load Limit - is the maximum total weight limit specified of the load (passengers and cargo) for the vehicle. This is the maximum weight of passengers and cargo that can be loaded into the vehicle. This information can be found on the tire pressure plate. If a trailer is being towed, the trailer tongue weight must be included as part of the cargo load.

The maximum loaded vehicle weight is the sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight and production options weight.

The load rating is the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

The maximum load rating is the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure.

The cargo capacity is the permissible weight of cargo, the subtracted weight of passengers from the load limit.

- ▷ Never exceed the permissible limits.

⚠ DANGER Riding in a Cargo Area
Injuries are much more likely in an accident if persons ride in the cargo area.

- ▷ Persons must ride only on the seats provided for this purpose.
- ▷ Make sure that everybody fastens their safety belts.

⚠ DANGER Overloading Vehicle

Overloading will lead to dangerous vehicle reactions and long braking distances.

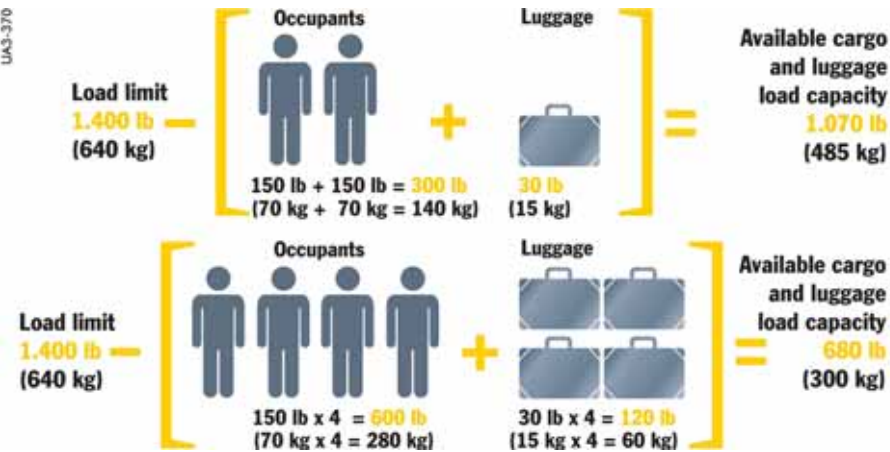
- ▷ Never exceed the specified axle loads.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle if the vehicle is overloaded.

Overloading can shorten the service life of the tires and car. Damage due to overloading is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

- ▷ Never exceed the specified axle loads.



Example for determining the combined weight of occupants and cargo

Vehicle Load Capacity

- ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed the weight shown on the tire plate in the vehicle. Please see the chapter “TIRE PRESSURE PLATE” on page 348.
- ▷ Never exceed the number of passengers shown on the tire pressure plate in the vehicle.

Determining the combined weight of occupants and cargo:

- ▷ Add the weight of all occupants and then add the total luggage weight (**figure**).

Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds” on your vehicle’s placard (depending on the date of manufacture).
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX pounds or XXX kilograms.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five - 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. [1400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.].
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Stowing load in the vehicle



WARNING

Shifting Cargo Loads

An unsecured or incorrectly positioned cargo can slip out of place or endanger the vehicle occupants during braking, direction changes or in accidents.

Never transport objects which are not secured.

- ▷ Always transport cargo in the cargo area, never in the passenger compartment (e.g. on or in front of the seats).
- ▷ Support the cargo on the seat backrests whenever possible. Always lock the backrests into place.
- ▷ Place the cargo behind unoccupied seats whenever possible.
- ▷ Stow heavy objects as close to the front of the cargo area as possible, with lightweight objects behind them.
- ▷ The cargo must never project over the top edge of the seat backrest.
- ▷ Always protect the passenger compartment with a luggage safety net and a luggage compartment cover.

Do not drive with objects on top of the luggage compartment cover.

- ▷ If the rear seats are not occupied, the backrests can be additionally secured with the safety belts. Simply cross the outer safety belts and insert each into the opposite buckle.
- ▷ Make sure that the cargo cannot damage the heating filaments of the rear window and the TV antenna of the side window.
- ▷ Do not transport any heavy objects in open storage trays.
- ▷ Always keep the covers of the storage trays closed while driving.

Luggage net

- ▷ Luggage must be stowed completely covered by the luggage net.
The luggage net can prevent only lightweight objects from slipping.

Tie-down belts

- ▷ Do not use elastic belts or straps to tie down cargo.
- ▷ Do not place belts and straps over sharp edges.
- ▷ Observe the directions for use and information for the tie-down equipment.
- ▷ Use only belts with a tear strength of at least 1543 lbs. (700 kg) and a maximum width of 1 in. (25 mm).
- ▷ Cross the belts over the load.

Driving

- ▷ The car's handling changes depending on the vehicle loading. Adapt your driving style to the changed driving behavior.
 - ▷ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and the axle load.
This information can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual: Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.
 - ▷ Never drive with the tailgate open.
Exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment.
 - ▷ Adapt the tire pressure to the load.
If you change the tire pressure, you must also update the setting for Tire Pressure Monitoring. For information on setting Tire Pressure Monitoring on the multi-purpose display: Please see the chapter "SELECTING "CHARGE" IN THE TIRE PRESSURE MENU" on page 121.
 - ▷ Information on tire pressures for partially and fully loaded vehicles can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual: Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.
-

Towing a trailer



WARNING

Safe Driving with a Trailer

- ▷ Always see the permissible towing capacity, vertical coupling load and rear-axle load. Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.
- ▷ When connected, the trailer must always be horizontal behind the towing vehicle. If necessary, use a trailer with an adjustable drawbar.
- ▷ When the vehicle is driven in the mountains, the engine output decreases as altitude increases. The maximum weights stated are the values at sea level. The total permissible weight of the car-trailer combination must therefore be reduced by 10% for each increment of 3280 ft. (1000 meters) altitude. A fractional increment counts as the full 3280 ft. (1000 meters). Please take this into consideration when planning your route.

Distributing the load

- ▷ Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible. Always safeguard all objects against slipping and tie them down securely.
- ▷ You should make the best possible use of the trailer coupling's rated vertical coupling load when loading the trailer, but never exceed it.

Tire pressure

- ▷ Select the vehicle tire pressure for full load when towing a trailer.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.
- ▷ Check the tire pressure of the trailer's wheels according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Door mirrors

- ▷ If the width of the trailer obstructs your view of the traffic behind the trailer, you must have additional door mirrors fitted.

Headlights, lights

- ▷ Always check the headlight adjustment before driving with a trailer. If necessary, correct with the headlight beam adjustment function.
- ▷ Check whether the plug of the trailer is plugged into the towing vehicle and whether all lights function.

Driving with a trailer

When towing a trailer you must under all circumstances adapt your speed to prevailing road and driving conditions. Towing at excessive speed can result in loss of control. Observe country-specific laws for driving with trailers.

- ▷ Carefully and gradually familiarize yourself with the handling and braking behavior of the car-trailer combination.
- ▷ Do not drive with the towing vehicle empty and the trailer loaded. If this unfavorable combination is unavoidable, please drive especially slowly.
- ▷ Bear in mind the different vehicle handling and size in situations such as braking, parking, cornering and overtaking, etc.
- ▷ The driving stability of the car-trailer combination worsens as the speed increases. Therefore, drive especially slowly on downhill stretches and in the case of unfavorable road and weather conditions (such as wind).
- ▷ Drive in an appropriately low gear on downhill stretches in order to make use of the engine braking effect.

- ▷ Slow down immediately if the trailer starts to sway. Do not countersteer; brake if necessary. Never attempt to straighten out the car-trailer combination by accelerating.
- ▷ Activate the off-road driving program when driving off on steep slopes.
- ▷ Under no circumstances may people, animals or objects be in the space between the trailer and the towing vehicle when the vehicle is moving.
- ▷ When reversing, bear in mind that ParkAssist is not active.
- ▷ Always see the permissible towing capacity, vertical coupling load and rear-axle load. Please see the chapter "WEIGHTS" on page 312.



Information

- ▷ Please take into consideration that driving with a trailer places markedly greater stress on all vehicle components. Expert inspection and maintenance after every use are indispensable prerequisites for proper functioning and safety.

Parking

| | |
|---|-----|
| ParkAssist | 226 |
| Rearview Camera | 228 |
| Swivelling Down Mirror Glass as Parking Aid | 229 |
| Garage Door Opener | 229 |

ParkAssist

When the driver is parking and maneuvering the vehicle, ParkAssist indicates the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle by means of signal tones.

- ▷ For information on the ParkAssist visual display and the rearview camera, please refer also to the section "ParkAssist" in the operating instructions for the Porsche communication systems PCM and CDR.

ParkAssist is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on. If the vehicle has front ParkAssist, this is also active when

- the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle in front is less than approx. 47 in. (120 cm).

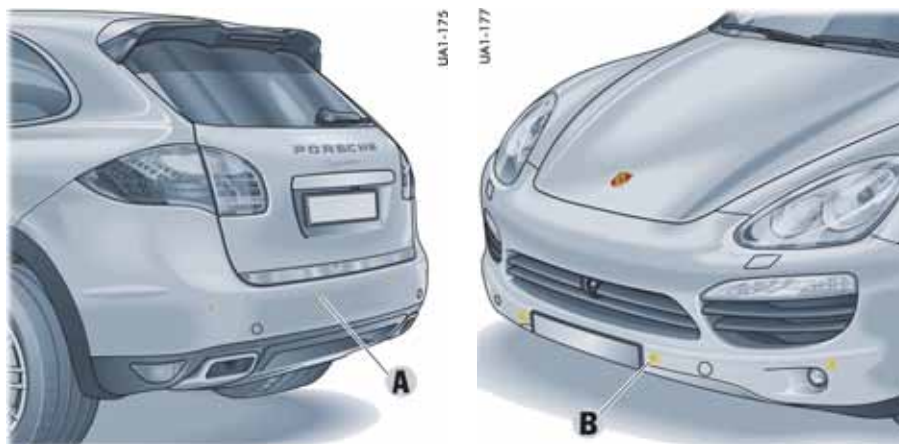
A warning signal sounds.

- the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle in front is less than approx. 32 in. (80 cm).

The ParkAssist visual display appears on the central screen of the Porsche communication system.

Front and rear ParkAssist is not active:

- At a speed of more than approx. 9 mph (15 km/h) or
- When the electric parking brake is activated or
- Tiptronic selector lever is in position **P**.



Sensors

Four ultrasound sensors **A** in the rear bumper and four sensors **B** in the front bumper (depending on vehicle equipment) measure the distance to the closest obstacle:

- Range behind the vehicle: approx. 71 in. (180 cm)
- Range at the side of the vehicle: approx. 24 in. (60 cm)
- Range in front of the vehicle: approx. 47 in. (120 cm)

Obstacles cannot be detected in the "blind" sensor area (above and below the sensors, e.g. objects hanging down or close to the ground).

WARNING

ParkAssist Limits

Responsibility for parking and for assessing the risk to persons around the vehicle lies completely with the driver.

- ▷ Make sure that no persons, animals or obstacles are within the maneuvering area.
- ▷ If the continuous tone sounds, stop and do not move your vehicle further in that direction.



Information

- ▷ The sensors must always be kept free of dust, ice and snow in order to ensure that they are fully functional.
- ▷ Do not damage sensors by abrasion or scratching.
- ▷ Maintain sufficient distance when cleaning with high-pressure cleaning equipment. The sensors will be damaged if the pressure is too high.

Signal tones/function

When reverse gear is selected, ParkAssist confirms that it is switched on by issuing a **short signal tone**.

If the vehicle has front ParkAssist, **no** signal tone will be issued when reverse gear is selected. Instead, the ParkAssist visual display will appear on the central screen of the Porsche communication system.

A detected obstacle is signalled by an **intermittent tone**. The intervals decrease as the obstacle is approached.

If the distance drops to less than approx. 14 in. (35 cm), a **continuous tone** sounds.

- ▷ Set the radio volume so that the signal tones are not drowned out.

You can adjust the volume of the signal tones to your own requirements.

For information on changing the signal tone volume:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "ADJUSTING VOLUME OF WARNING AND INFORMATION TONES" on page 137.

⚠ WARNING

Care Required Parking

Even when using ParkAssist, the driver is still responsible for taking due care when parking and when assessing obstacles.

A continuous tone sounds when there is a risk of collision.

- ▷ Do not drive rearward any further once a continuous tone sounds.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

- ParkAssist cannot detect sound-absorbing obstacles (e.g. winter driving, powder snow),
- sound-reflecting obstacles (such as glass surfaces and flat painted surfaces),
- and very thin obstacles (e.g. thin posts).

Other ultrasound sources (such as the pneumatic brakes of other vehicles and jack hammers) can interfere with the detection of obstacles.



Deactivating ParkAssist

- ▷ Press button **A** on the overhead operating console. The indicator light on the button lights up. ParkAssist is switched off.

Fault indication

Correct operation is no longer guaranteed if there is a temporary fault (e.g. caused by ice formation or heavy soiling on the sensors).

ParkAssist is ready for operation again when the interference has been eliminated.

In the event of a **permanent fault** in ParkAssist, a continuous tone sounds for three seconds after reverse gear has been selected.

Possible causes:

- Dirt, ice or snow on the sensors.
- ▷ Clean the sensors carefully.
- Defect or system fault.
- ▷ Have the fault corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Towing a trailer

The ParkAssist rear monitoring area is switched off when the trailer's power supply is plugged in.



Rearview Camera

⚠ WARNING

Rearview Camera

The rearview camera is not a safety device. It serves only to assist the driver in identifying objects directly behind the middle of the vehicle. The camera does NOT cover the complete area behind the vehicle. While the camera's display is generally accurate, objects can be much closer than they appear in the display screen and can be distorted in both size and proportion.

⚠ WARNING

Backing Up and Using Camera

- ▷ Never rely solely on the rearview camera when backing up. You must always use methods of viewing the area behind you, including looking over both shoulders as well as continuously checking all three rearview mirrors. Due to the difficulty of insuring that the area behind you remains clear, always backup slowly and stop immediately if you even suspect that a person, and especially a child, might be behind you.

The rearview camera is located on the underside of the tailgate.

- ▷ Please refer to the chapter "REARVIEW CAMERA" in the separate PCM/CDR operating instructions.
- ▷ Always keep the rearview camera clean and free of ice and snow so that vision is not impaired.

For car care instructions:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS" on page 255.



Swivelling Down Mirror Glass as Parking Aid

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror on the **passenger's side** swivels down slightly to show the curb area.

Preconditions

- The ignition must be switched on.
- The function must be activated on the multi-purpose display.

For further information on setting the parking aid:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "LOWERING DOOR MIRROR ON PASSENGER'S SIDE WHEN PARKING" on page 134.

Swivelling down mirror glass manually

If the function was deactivated on the multi-purpose display, the door mirror on the passenger's side can also be swivelled down manually.

1. Engage reverse gear.
The indicator light on the selection button **A** for adjusting the door mirror on the driver's side lights up.
2. Press the selection button **B** for adjusting the door mirror on the passenger's side.
The mirror on the passenger's side swivels down.

i Information

The position of the automatically lowered mirror glass can be changed as required using the adjustment button **C**. On vehicles with driver memory or comfort memory, this setting is stored on the car key or the person buttons on the driver's side.

Moving mirror to its initial position

The mirror swivels back to its initial position:

- after a certain time delay, if the vehicle is shifted out of reverse gear, **or**
- immediately, if the vehicle reaches a speed of more than 9 mph (15 km/h).




The door mirror on the passenger's side can also be moved to its initial position manually.

- ▷ Press the selection button **A** for the door mirror on the driver's side.



Garage Door Opener

The garage door opener of your Porsche replaces up to three original remote controls used to operate various devices (e.g. garage door, gate to your property, alarm system).

You have the option of assigning up to 3 different signals to the buttons ,  and  on the overhead operating console keypad, provided the original remote control is compatible with the HomeLink® system.

i Information

- ▷ Please read the instructions for the original remote control.

⚠ WARNING Garage Door Opener Use

When opening and closing the equipment being operated, parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.

- ▷ When using the garage door opener, ensure that no persons, animals or objects are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.
- ▷ Observe the safety notes for the original remote control.

i Information

- ▷ When the button is pressed, the transmitter unit sends the signal forward in direction of travel.
Always align the vehicle with the receiver. Otherwise, range restrictions cannot be ruled out.
- ▷ Before selling the vehicle, delete the programmed signals for the garage door opener on the keypad.
- ▷ Please read the instructions for the original remote control to find out whether the original remote control has fixed or changeable code.



Operating the garage door opener

- ▷ Press the corresponding button on the overhead operating console keypad. The indicator light **A** lights up during signal transmission.

Programming garage door opener: Deleting and storing signals

Preconditions

In order to delete programmed signals and store garage door opener signals,




- the ignition must be switched on **and**
- the turn signals must be off.
- ▷ When using the garage door opener, the vehicle must be within the range of the receiver.

▷ **Canada only:**


If programming a garage door opener or gate, it is advised to unplug the device during “cycling” process to prevent possible motor burn-up.

Deleting programmed signals from the keys

This process deletes the standard factory-set codes. Do not repeat this process if you want to assign additional signals to the buttons.

- ▷ Keep the two outer buttons  and  on the overhead operating console keypad pressed for approx. 20 seconds until the indicator light **A** on button  starts to flash quickly.


Assigning garage door opener signal to key with fixed code system

1. The standard factory-set codes must be deleted before programming for the **first** time.
2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead operating console keypad until the indicator light **A** on the button  starts to flash slowly.
You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.



3. Hold the original remote control approx. 12 in. (30 cm) away from the marked position (**illustration**) and press and hold the transmit button until the vehicle's turn signal lights flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** starts flashing quickly.
The turn signal lights flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully.
Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.
4. The turn signal lights will flash once when the 5 minutes teaching time are up.
Repeat steps 2 to 3.
 - ▷ Repeat steps 2 to 4 to assign signals to the other buttons.

Assigning garage door opener signal to button with changeable code system


1. The standard factory-set codes must be deleted before programming for the **first** time.
2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead operating console keypad until the indicator light **A** on the button  starts to flash slowly.
You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.
3. Hold the original remote control approx. 12 in. (30 cm) away from the marked position (**illustration**) and press and hold the transmit button until the vehicle's turn signal lights flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** starts flashing quickly.
The turn signal lights flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully.
Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.
4. **To synchronize the system:**
Press the programming button on the receiver of the garage door opener.
Afterwards, you usually have approx. 30 seconds to initiate step 5.
5. Press the button you selected in step 2 on the overhead operating console keypad.
(You must press the button on the keypad several times to complete the setting process for some devices.)
6. Repeat steps 2 to 5 to assign signals to the other buttons.



Information

- ▷ Please consult an authorized Porsche dealer if you have not been able to successfully assign signals to the buttons even though you have carefully followed the instructions in this section and the operating instructions for the original remote control. Your authorized Porsche dealer has a list of all garage door opener signals that can be adapted.
- ▷ Make sure that the battery in the remote control for the garage door opener is new. If the battery voltage is inadequate, faults may occur in signal transmission. The system in the vehicle then learns the wrong code, which will not be recognized reliably by the garage door opening mechanism.

Reprogramming an individual button on the keypad

1. Press and hold the button you want to program on the overhead operating console keypad (approx. 20 seconds) until the indicator light **A** on the button  starts to flash slowly. You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.
 2. Hold the original remote control approx. 12 in. (30 cm) away from the marked position **(illustration)** and press and hold the transmit button until the vehicle's turn signal lights flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** starts flashing quickly. The turn signal lights flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully. Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.
 3. The turn signal lights will flash once when the 5 minutes teaching time are up. Repeat steps 1 to 2.
- ▷ Repeat steps 1 to 3 to assign signals to the other buttons.

Alarm System and Theft Protection

| | |
|--|-----|
| Alarm System and Passenger Compartment | |
| Monitoring | 234 |
| Immobilizer | 237 |
| Steering Column Lock | 237 |
| Theft Protection | 237 |

Alarm System and Passenger Compartment Monitoring

USA: KR55WK50138

Canada: 7812D-5WK50138

This device complies with:
Part 15 of the FCC Rules
RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:

- It may not cause harmful interference, and
- it must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.



Information

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modification could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



Information

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Porsche could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Avoiding false alarms

- ▷ If people or animals are remaining in the locked vehicle or the vehicle is being transported on a train or ship, for example, the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor must temporarily be switched off.
- ▷ Always close the sliding/lifting roof or the Panorama roof system, and all door windows.
- ▷ Do not leave a cell phone switched on in the vehicle.
- ▷ Always turn off the alarm system before you attach or uncouple a trailer. The alarm system could trigger an alarm unintentionally.

Switching off the alarm system if it is triggered

- ▷ Unlock vehicle doors with the remote control
or
- ▷ Switch ignition on.

The following alarm contacts are monitored

- Alarm contacts in doors, tailgate, engine compartment lid and headlights
- Passenger compartment monitoring: Movement in the interior when the vehicle is locked, e.g. attempted theft after breaking a window.
- Inclination sensor: Tilting of the vehicle (e.g. attempt to tow away the vehicle).
- Trailer hitch socket, e.g. unauthorized unhitching of the trailer.

If one of these alarm contacts is interrupted, the alarm horn sounds for approx. 30 seconds and the emergency flasher flashes. After 5 seconds of interruption, the alarm is triggered again. This cycle is repeated ten times.

Switching on

- ▷ The alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked.

Switching off

- ▷ The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.



Information

- ▷ If you unlock the vehicle with the emergency key in the door lock, you must switch the ignition on (ignition lock position **1**) within 10 seconds of opening the door in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.

The vehicle is locked again automatically after 20 seconds if no doors are opened.

Temporarily deactivating passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor

If people or animals are remaining in the locked vehicle or the vehicle is being transported on a train or ship, for example, the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor must be switched off temporarily.

- ▷ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Using the car key

- ▷ Quickly press button  on the remote control **twice**.

The emergency flasher flashes slowly once. The indicator light for the alarm system will start to flash after 10 seconds.

The doors are locked but can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.



On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive

- ▷ Quickly press button **A** in the door handle **twice**.

The emergency flasher flashes slowly once. The indicator light for the alarm system will start to flash after 10 seconds. The doors are locked but can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.

Information

The passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor remain switched off if:

- The passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor were switched off when you last locked the vehicle **and** the vehicle was locked automatically 30 seconds after unlocking because no door was opened.



Using the rocker switch

The rocker switch to switch off the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor is located next to the driver's seat.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.
2. Remove ignition key.
On vehicles **with** Porsche Entry & Drive: Switch off the ignition.
3. Open the driver's door.
4. Press the rocker switch.
The rocker switch symbol lights permanently.
5. Lock the vehicle.

Emergency flasher flashes **twice and an acoustic signal will sound twice**.

The vehicle doors and the tailgate are locked but the doors can be opened from inside by pulling once on the front inner door handle or by pulling twice on the rear inner door handle.

- ▷ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.



Information

If the ignition is switched on after pressing the rocker switch, the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor are activated again. The symbol on the rocker switch will flash.

Activating the alarm system and the passenger compartment monitoring system

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle and lock it again.

Fault indication

If the monitoring system could not be deactivated the symbol on the rocker switch will flash (e.g. the rocker switch is pressed with the ignition on).

For deactivating the passenger compartment monitoring and inclination sensor:

- ▷ Switch off ignition.
- ▷ Press the rocker switch.
- ▷ Lock the vehicle.



B - Indicator light for alarm system – example: driver's door

Function indication

The locking condition of the vehicle is indicated by the indicator lights **B** in the front doors flashing at different frequencies.

The indicator lights go out when the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm system is activated

- The indicator lights flash quickly while you are locking the vehicle, then flash normally.

Alarm system is activated, passenger compartment monitoring and inclination sensor are switched off

- The indicator lights flash quickly while you are locking the vehicle, go out for 10 seconds and then flash normally.

Faults in the central locking system and alarm system

The indicator lights come on for 10 seconds, flash at double speed for 20 seconds and then flash normally.

Immobilizer

There is a transponder (an electronic component), containing a stored code, in each key. Before the ignition is switched on, the ignition lock checks the code.

The immobilizer can be deactivated and the engine started only using an authorized ignition key.

Data is exchanged via radio transmission on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.

Steering Column Lock

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive

Unlocking the steering column automatically

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the key via radio remote control
- or**
- insert the ignition key into the ignition lock.

Locking the steering column automatically

- ▷ Remove the ignition key.

Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive

Unlocking the steering column automatically

- ▷ Deactivate the alarm system via radio remote control using the key and open the driver's door
- or**
- open the driver's door using Porsche Entry & Drive
- or**
- switch on ignition.

Locking the steering column automatically

- ▷ Open the driver's door (with the ignition switched off) or lock the vehicle.

Theft Protection

When leaving the vehicle, always:

- ▷ Apply the electric parking brake.
- ▷ Close all door windows.
- ▷ Close the sliding/lifting roof or Panorama roof system.
- ▷ Remove the ignition key (or switch ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive).
- ▷ Lock the glove box.
- ▷ Close all storage compartments.
- ▷ Remove valuables, vehicle registration documents, cell phone and house keys from the vehicle.
- ▷ Cover luggage compartment with the luggage compartment cover.
- ▷ Close the tailgate.
- ▷ Lock all doors.

Maintenance and Car Care

| | |
|--|-----|
| Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your vehicle | 239 |
| Engine Oil..... | 241 |
| Checking Engine Oil Level..... | 242 |
| Topping Up Engine Oil..... | 242 |
| Checking Coolant Level and Adding Coolant.. | 244 |
| Brake Fluid | 245 |
| Washer Fluid..... | 246 |
| Power Steering..... | 247 |
| Changing Air Cleaner..... | 248 |
| Changing Particle Filter | 248 |
| Wiper Blades | 248 |
| Emission Control System..... | 249 |
| How Emission Control Works | 249 |
| Fuel Economy..... | 250 |
| Operating Your Porsche in other Countries ... | 251 |
| Fuel | 251 |
| Fuel Can..... | 253 |
| Fuel Recommendations | 254 |
| Fuel Evaporation Control | 254 |
| Car Care Instructions | 255 |

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your vehicle

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. If you are not fully familiar with proper repair procedures, do not attempt the adjustments described on the following pages.

This caution applies to the entire vehicle.

DANGER

Fire and Explosion Hazards

Many vehicle fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine and transmission oil. Fuel vapors can cause an explosion. When a battery is being charged, highly explosive gases can develop.

- ▷ Do not smoke or allow an open flame around the battery or fuel.
Pay attention to sparks, e.g. when coming into contact with cables.
Keep a fire extinguisher close at hand.
- ▷ Ensure that there are no open flames in the area of your vehicle at any time when fuel fumes might be present. Be especially cautious of devices such as hot water heaters which ignite a flame intermittently.
- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.

WARNING

Fluid Health Hazards

Refill fluids, e.g. engine oil, brake fluid or coolant are hazardous to health (poisonous, irritant, caustic).

- ▷ Keep these fluids out of children's reach and dispose of them in accordance with the appropriate regulations.
- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.

WARNING

Exhaust Gas Inhalation

Engine exhaust is dangerous if inhaled.

Engine exhaust fumes have many components which you can smell. They also contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is a colorless and odorless gas.

Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.

WARNING

Hot Engine Parts, Exhaust System and Fluids

The engine and surroundings components, the exhaust system and coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant reservoir is pressurized. Careless opening of the coolant reservoir can lead to hot coolant suddenly spraying out.

- ▷ Take care when working near hot parts of the vehicle, in particular engine parts and parts of the exhaust system.
- ▷ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▷ Allow the engine to cool down before opening the cap of the coolant reservoir and protect your hands, arms and face from any possible escape of hot coolant.

WARNING

Moving Engine Parts

Take great care to ensure that hands, fingers, articles of clothing (e.g. ties, sleeves, etc.), necklaces or long hair cannot be caught up by the radiator fans, drive belt or other moving parts.

The radiator fans can start or continue running as a function of temperature, even with the engine switched off.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewelry do not get caught in the radiator fan, drive belt or other moving parts.
- ▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off and exercise extreme caution.

WARNING

Electric Shock from Ignition System

When the ignition is on, all cables and wires of the ignition system carry a high voltage.

- ▷ Exercise special care when working on the ignition system.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to Secure Vehicle

If the vehicle is not secured, or incorrectly secured, during repair work, it could move unexpectedly or fall from the car jack or car lift.

- ▷ Be alert and cautious around the engine at all times while it is running.

If you have to work on the engine while it is running, always apply the electric parking brake **and** put the gearshift lever in neutral or the Tiptronic selector lever in position **P or N**.

- ▷ Always support your car with safety stands if it is necessary to work under the car. The jack supplied with the car is not adequate for this purpose.

Switch off level control of air suspension and height adjustment.

Please see the chapter "LIFTING THE VEHICLE WITH A LIFTING PLATFORM, TROLLEY JACK OR STANDARD JACK" on page 274.

- ▷ Jack up the vehicle only at the specified jacking points on the underside of the vehicle.
- ▷ Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked or lifted up. Vibration from the engine could cause the vehicle to fall.
- ▷ When working under the car without safety stands but with the wheels on the ground, make sure the car is on level ground, the wheels are blocked, and that the engine cannot be started.

Withdraw ignition keys (switch ignition off in vehicles that have Porsche Entry & Drive).



Information

- ▷ Incomplete or improper servicing may cause problems in the operation of the car. If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Porsche dealer. Improper maintenance during the warranty period may affect your Porsche warranty coverage.
 - ▷ Some countries require additional tools and special spare parts to be carried in your vehicle. Please make enquiries before driving abroad.
-

Technical Modifications

- ▷ Modifications may be carried out on your vehicle only if approved by Porsche. This ensures that your Porsche will remain reliable and safe to drive, and that it will not be damaged as a result of the modifications. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.



Information

- ▷ Only use genuine Porsche spare parts for your vehicle or spare parts of similar quality which have been manufactured according to the specifications and production requirements of Porsche. These parts are available from your authorized Porsche dealer or a qualified specialist workshop. Safety-related accessories should only be used if they are from the Porsche Tequipment range or are tested and approved by Porsche. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you and answer any questions you may have.

However, the use of other parts or accessories may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, and Porsche can take no responsibility for any loss or damage caused by their use.

Even if the supplier of other accessories or parts is a recognized supplier, the safety of your vehicle may still be affected if such items are installed.

Due to the large variety of products offered in the accessory market, it is not possible for Porsche to inspect and approve every one.

- ▷ In addition, please note that the use of replacement parts that are not genuine Porsche parts or approved parts, or the use of accessories not approved by Porsche may also detrimentally affect your vehicle warranty.
- ▷ Check your vehicle regularly for signs of damage. Damaged or missing aerodynamic components, such as spoilers or underbody panels, impair vehicle handling and must therefore be replaced immediately.

Radiator fan

For information on radiator fans:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “RADIATOR FANS” on page 245.



WARNING

Radiator Fans

The fans can start running depending on the temperature, even with the engine switched off.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewelry do not get caught in the radiator fan.
 - ▷ Exercise extreme caution when working in the area of the radiator fans.
-

Measurements on test stands

Performance test

Performance tests on roller-type test stands are not approved by Porsche.

Brake tests

Brake tests must be performed only on roller-type test stands.

The following limit values must not be exceeded on roller-type test stands:

- Test speed 4.7 mph (7.5 km/h)
- Test duration 20 seconds

Testing the electric parking brake

Electric parking brake tests on the brake test stand must only be performed with the ignition switched on and with the manual gearshift lever in neutral or the Tiptronic S selector lever in position **N**.

The vehicle switches automatically to brake test stand mode, in which the electric parking brake can be tested.

The message “Electric parking brake in service mode” appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

Balancing wheels on the vehicle

During finish balancing of the wheels, the entire vehicle must be lifted and the wheels must be free to turn.

Engine Oil

It is important to perform oil changes regularly in accordance with the intervals specified in your **Maintenance Schedule**.

Engine oil consumption

It is normal for your engine to consume oil.

The rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of oil, the speed at which the engine is operated, the climate, road conditions as well as the amount of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant.

If the vehicle is used for repeated short trips, and consumes a normal amount of oil, the engine oil measurement may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 600 miles (1000 km) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is driven at high speeds, as on an expressway, making it then appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

If the conditions you drive your vehicle in are dusty, humid, or hot, the frequency of the oil change intervals should be greater.

If the vehicle is driven at a high rate of speed, climatic conditions are warm, and the load is high, the oil should be checked more frequently, as driving conditions will determine the rate of oil consumption.

- The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore, the engine oil should be checked regularly and kept at the required level.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked with every refueling.

- The oil pressure warning light is not an oil level indicator.
The oil pressure warning light indicates serious engine damage may be occurring when lit, if engine rpm is above idle speed.

Checking Engine Oil Level

- ▷ Check the oil level on the multi-purpose display at regular intervals before refueling.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “DISPLAY AND MEASUREMENT OF THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL” on page 113.

⚠ DANGER Swallowing Engine Oil
Engine oil is hazardous to your health and may be fatal if swallowed.

- ▷ Keep engine oil out of children’s reach.

⚠ WARNING Engine Oil Cancer Risk
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals.

- ▷ Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.
- ▷ If you suspect an oil leak in the engine have your authorized Porsche dealer check it out immediately.

Top-up quantity

The difference between the minimum and maximum marks on the segment display is approx. 1.06 qt. (1 liter) for each.
One segment of the display corresponds to a top-up quantity of approx. 0.26 qt. (0.25 liter).

- ▷ Never add more engine oil than required to reach the maximum mark.



Oil-level warning

If the oil level is too low, this is indicated by the oil-warning light on the multi-purpose display.

- ▷ Correct the oil level as soon as possible.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES” on page 139.

Measuring the oil level after topping up engine oil or opening the engine compartment lid

The oil level can be checked after waiting for approx. 2 minutes with the vehicle parked on a level surface and the engine at operating temperature.

Topping Up Engine Oil

Porsche recommends **Mobil 1**.

The right oil for your vehicle

| Vehicle | Complies with approval ¹⁾ | Viscosity class ²⁾ |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Cayenne S, Cayenne Turbo: | Porsche A40 | SAE 0W - 40 ³⁾ SAE 5W - 40 ⁴⁾ SAE 5W - 50 ⁴⁾ |
| Cayenne (V6) | Porsche C30 or VW 504 00 | SAE 5W - 30 ³⁾ |

¹⁾ Generally, you can find specifications relating to manufacturer approvals on the oil containers or as a notice displayed by the retailer.

The current approval status is also available from your authorized Porsche dealer.

²⁾ SAE viscosity class - Example: SAE 0W - 40
Specification 0W = Viscosity specification for low temperatures (winter).

Specification 40 = Viscosity specification for high temperatures.

³⁾ For all temperature ranges.

⁴⁾ For the temperature range over 13 °F (-25 °C).

Always observe the following points:

- Use only engine oils approved by Porsche. This is a precondition for optimum and problem-free driving.
- Regular oil changes are part of servicing. It is important that the service intervals, particularly the oil change intervals, are observed in accordance with the specifications in the Maintenance Schedule.

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed at your authorized Porsche dealer.

- Oils approved by Porsche can be mixed with each other.
- Porsche engines are designed so that no oil additives may be used.
- A label is located in the engine compartment, which provides you with information on suitable oil for your engine.

Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

⚠ WARNING Engine Oil Fire Hazard

Fire hazard if engine oil comes into contact with hot engine parts.

- ▷ Exercise extreme caution when topping up engine oil.
- ▷ Top up engine oil only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.

⚠ WARNING Hot engine Parts

Risk of burns from hot parts in the engine compartment.

- ▷ Exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE” on page 239.

⚠ WARNING Engine Moving Parts

Take great care to ensure that hands, fingers, articles of clothing (e. g. ties, sleeves, etc.), necklaces or long hair cannot be caught up by the radiator fans, drive belt or other moving parts.

The temperature in the engine compartment is monitored for a period of time after the engine is switched off. The radiator fan can start running during this period when a certain temperature is reached.

- ▷ Exercise special care when working in these areas and only when the engine is switched off.



Engine oil filling point on V6 engine

NOTICE

Risk of damage if engine oil comes into contact with the drive belt.

- ▷ Exercise extreme caution when topping up engine oil.
 - ▷ Top up engine oil only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.
-
- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE” on page 239.



Engine oil filling point on V8 engine

1. Unscrew cap of the oil filler opening.
 2. Top up engine oil according to the display on the multi-purpose display.
One segment of the display corresponds to a top-up quantity of approx. 0.26 qt. (0.25 liter).
 3. Carefully close cap on the oil filler opening.
- After opening the engine compartment lid, the oil level can be checked after waiting for approx. 2 minutes with the vehicle parked on a level surface and the engine at operating temperature.

Checking Coolant Level and Adding Coolant

The coolant provides year-round protection from corrosion and freezing down to -31 °F (-35 °C) (-40 °F (-40 °C) in Nordic countries).

Observe the following points:

- ▷ Use only antifreeze authorized by Porsche.
- ▷ Check the coolant level regularly.

Check coolant level

- ▷ Remove cover.
- ▷ Read off the engine coolant level.
When the **engine is cold** and the vehicle is level, the coolant level must be between the markings **A** and **B**.
- ▷ If the coolant level is below the MIN marking **B**, add coolant.

Please see the chapter "OPEN CAP ON THE RESERVOIR CAREFULLY AND ALLOW ANY OVERPRESSURE TO ESCAPE. THEN UNSCREW CAP COMPLETELY." on page 245.

If the coolant level is too low, a message will appear on the multi-purpose display:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "OVERVIEW OF WARNING MESSAGES" on page 139.

Adding coolant



DANGER Swallowing Engine Coolant

Coolant is hazardous to health. Coolant can be deadly to children or pets if consumed.

- ▷ Keep coolant out of children's reach.
- ▷ Also, keep coolant away from your pets. They can be attracted to it should there be a spill, or to used coolant left in an open container.



WARNING Hot Engine Coolant

The coolant becomes very hot when the engine is running and can burn you.

The coolant reservoir is pressurized. Careless opening of the coolant reservoir can lead to hot coolant suddenly spraying out.

- ▷ Do not open the cap on the reservoir when the engine is hot.
- ▷ Allow the engine to cool down before opening the cap and protect your hands, arms and face from any possible escape of hot coolant.



1. Open cap on the reservoir carefully and allow any overpressure to escape. Then unscrew cap completely.
2. Do not exceed the **A** marking. Only add a mixture of antifreeze and water in equal parts.
Antifreeze in coolant:
50 % provides antifreeze protection down to -31 °F (-35 °C).
3. Screw the cap on the reservoir closed until it locks securely.
4. Have the cooling system checked at your authorized Porsche dealer.

i Information

If pure water is added in an emergency, the mixing ratio will have to be corrected. A significant loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system.

- ▷ The cause must be eliminated without delay. Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

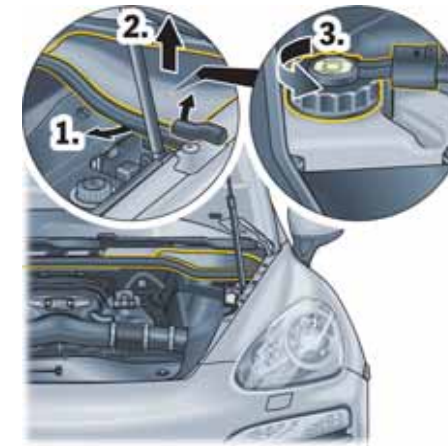
Radiator fans

The radiators and radiator fans are in the front of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING Radiator Fans

The fans can start running depending on the temperature, even with the engine switched off.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewelry do not get caught in the radiator fan.
- ▷ Exercise extreme caution when working in the area of the radiator fans.



Brake Fluid

Regular checking of the brake fluid is part of servicing.

The fluid level should always be between the MIN and MAX markings.

A slight decrease in the fluid level due to wear and automatic readjustment of the disk brakes is normal.

However, if the fluid level falls significantly or goes below the MIN marking, the brake system may have developed a leak.

- ▷ Have the brake system checked immediately at your authorized Porsche dealer.

⚠ DANGER**Swallowing Brake Fluid**

Brake fluid is hazardous to your health, and may be fatal if swallowed.

- ▷ Keep brake fluid out of children's reach.
- ▷ If brake fluid gets into your eye, immediately rinse with clean water for a few minutes. Then see a doctor immediately.
- ▷ Please note all the information on the refill container of the brake fluid.

NOTICE

Brake fluid attacks and can damage paintwork.

- ▷ Immediately rinse off spilled brake fluid with clean water.

Changing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over time. The absorbed water can impair braking efficiency.

- ▷ It is important therefore to have the brake fluid changed in accordance with the change intervals specified in the "Maintenance" booklet.

BRAKE Brake warning light USA**ⓘ Brake warning light Canada**

The warning light on the instrument panel and the warning message on the multi-purpose display alert you to the fact that the brake fluid level is too low and could indicate brake circuit failure if the pedal travel is greater than normal.

**Information**

If the warning light and warning message appear while driving:

- ▷ Stop immediately in a suitable place.
- ▷ Do not continue driving.
Please have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Washer Fluid

Observe the following points:

- ▷ Depending on the season, mix the water with the appropriate additives (window cleaner concentrate, antifreeze) in the correct mixture ratio.

Summer filling with water + window cleaner concentrate in the mixture ratio specified on the container.

Winter filling with water + antifreeze + window cleaner concentrate in the mixture ratio specified on the container.

- ▷ Always follow all the instructions on the containers of the additives used.
- ▷ Only use window cleaner concentrate that meets the following requirements:
 - Dilutability 1:100,
 - Phosphate-free,
 - Suitable for plastic headlight lenses.

We recommend window cleaner concentrates approved by Porsche. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

The washer fluid reservoir for the windshield, rear window and headlights is located at the rear left in the engine compartment (blue cap).

Warning message

A warning message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel if the washer fluid level is too low.

- ▷ Add washer fluid at the next opportunity.

In this case, the remaining quantity is only approx. 0.53 qt. (0.5 liter). The maximum filling capacity is approx. 4.76 qt. (4.5 liters), or 7.93 qt.

(7.5 liters) on vehicles with headlight cleaning system.

LU1-180



Adding washer fluid

1. Open cap on washer fluid reservoir.
2. Add washer fluid.
3. Close cap carefully.

Power Steering

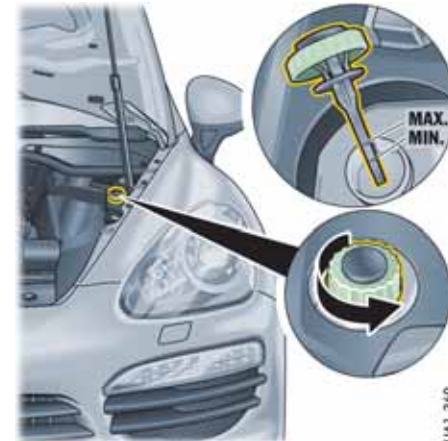
⚠ WARNING No Power Steering Assist

When the engine is stationary (e.g. when on tow) or the hydraulic system fails, there is no power steering assistance available. Therefore, substantially more force will have to be exerted to steer the vehicle.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed.
- ▷ Have the fault corrected at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Regular checking of hydraulic fluid is part of servicing.

The flow noise heard at full steering lock is design-related and does not indicate a defect in the steering system.



LU1-360

Checking and adding hydraulic fluid

Observe the following points:

- ▷ Only use genuine Porsche hydraulic fluid or hydraulic fluid of similar quality that has been approved according to Porsche specifications and production requirements.
 - ▷ Check the fluid level with the engine stopped and cold (engine temperature approx. 68 °F (20 °C))
1. Open the reservoir cap.
 2. The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX markings on the dipstick.
 3. Add hydraulic fluid if necessary.
 4. Close cap carefully.
 5. Close engine compartment lid.

i Information

- ▷ If the fluid level drops significantly, please have the cause remedied immediately by an authorized Porsche dealer.

Changing Air Cleaner

Regular replacement of the filter element is part of servicing.

- ▷ In dusty conditions, clean the filter element more frequently and replace it if necessary.

Further important information concerning “maintenance” can be found on a separate chapter.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE” on page 239.

Changing Particle Filter

Regular replacement of the filter is part of servicing.

A dirty filter can be the cause of reduced air throughput.

- ▷ Have the filter replaced by your authorized Porsche dealer.



Information

The particle filter ensures that the fresh air entering the passenger compartment is virtually free of dust and pollen.

- ▷ If the outside air is polluted by exhaust fumes, press the recirculated-air button.

Wiper Blades

Wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▷ Have the wiper blades replaced twice per year (before and after the cold season) or if wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged.
- ▷ For important information on “service topics”: Please see the chapter “CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS” on page 255.

NOTICE

Risk of damage when working on the wiper arm.

The windshield, wiper arm and blades can be damaged if the wiper arm accidentally falls back onto the windshield.

Wiper blades that are frozen in place can be damaged if they are loosened improperly.

- ▷ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.
- ▷ Thaw the wiper blades before loosening them.

- ▷ Clean the wiper blades with window cleaner at regular intervals, especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash.
We recommend Porsche window cleaner.
If the wiper blades are very dirty (e.g. soiled with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this may be due to the following:

- If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, wax residues may adhere to the windshield. These wax residues can be removed only by using window cleaner concentrate.
- The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.
- ▷ Have damaged or worn wiper blades replaced immediately.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “WASHER FLUID” on page 246.
Contact your authorized Porsche dealer for more information.

Replacing wiper blades

NOTICE

Risk of damage. If the wiper blades are not changed properly, they can come loose when the car is moving.

- ▷ Check whether the wiper blades are seated securely.
- ▷ Please read the separate instructions provided by the wiper blade manufacturer.
- ▷ We recommend that you get your authorized Porsche dealer to replace the wiper blades.

Emission Control System

In the interest of clean air

Pollution of our environment has become a problem that is of increasing concern to all of us. We urge you to join us in our efforts for cleaner air in controlling the pollutants emitted from the automobile.

Porsche has developed an emission control system that controls or reduces those parts of the emission that can be harmful to our environment. Your Porsche is equipped with such a system. Porsche warrants the Emission Control System in your new car under the terms and conditions set forth in the Warranty Booklet.

You, as the owner of the vehicle, have the responsibility to provide regular maintenance service for the vehicle and to keep a record of all maintenance work performed. To facilitate record keeping, have the service performed by authorized Porsche dealers. They have Porsche trained technicians and special tools to provide fast and efficient service.

To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:

- ▷ Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the recommendations described in your Maintenance Booklet. Lack of proper maintenance, as well as improper use of the vehicle, will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- ▷ Do not alter or remove any component of the emission control system.
- ▷ Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, etc., which are designed to protect your vehicle's emission control system. In addition

to serious engine damage, this can result in a fire if excess raw fuel reaches the exhaust system.

- ▷ Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire or other unusual operating conditions.

Parking

WARNING Fire Risk When Parking

The exhaust system becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off. Flammable material close to the exhaust system could ignite.

- ▷ Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable materials.
- ▷ If your car catches on fire for any reason, call the fire department. Do not endanger your life by attempting to put out the fire.

Undercoating

WARNING AfterMarket Undercoating

Additional undercoating or rust protection agents on or near the exhaust system can become too hot when driving and ignite, causing a fire.

- ▷ Do not apply additional undercoating or rust protection agent on or near the exhaust manifolds, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. During driving the substance used for undercoating could overheat and ignite.

How Emission Control Works

When an automobile engine is running, it uses energy generated through the combustion of a mixture of air and fuel. Depending on whether a car is driven fast or slowly or whether the engine is cold or hot, some of the fuel (hydrocarbons) may not be burned completely, but may be discharged into the engine crankcase or exhaust system. Additional hydrocarbons may enter the atmosphere through evaporation of fuel from the fuel tank. These hydrocarbons (HC), when released into the air, contribute to undesirable pollution.

In addition, carbon monoxide (CO) and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) contribute to engine emissions. They, too, are formed during the combustion process and discharged into the exhaust system. To reduce these pollutants, your Porsche is equipped with a precisely calibrated fuel injection system to assure a finely balanced air/fuel mixture under all operating conditions.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor, installed in the exhaust pipe continuously senses the oxygen content of the exhaust and signals the information to an electronic control unit. The control unit corrects the air/fuel ratio, so the engine always receives an accurately metered air/fuel mixture.

Crankcase ventilation

Through crankcase ventilation, undesirable emissions from the engine crankcase are not permitted to reach the outside atmosphere. These emissions are recirculated from the crankcase to the air intake system. From here the emissions mix with the intake air and are later burned in the engine.

Catalytic converters

The catalytic converters are efficient “clean-up” devices built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converters burn the undesirable pollutants in the exhaust gas before it is released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converters. Therefore, only unleaded fuel must be used.

The catalytic converters will be damaged by:

- Push or tow starting the vehicle,
 - Misfiring of the engine,
 - Turning off the ignition while the vehicle is moving,
 - Driving until the fuel tank is completely empty,
 - By other unusual operating conditions.
- ▷ Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, since raw fuel might reach the catalytic converters. This could result in overheating of the converters. Federal law prohibits use of leaded fuel in this car.

Fuel Economy

Fuel economy will vary depending on where, when and how you drive, optional equipment installed, and the general condition of your car.

A car tuned to specifications and correctly maintained, will help you to achieve optimal fuel economy.

- ▷ Have your vehicle tuned to specifications. Air cleaner should be dirt free to allow proper engine “breathing”. Battery should be fully charged. Wheels should be properly aligned. Tires should be inflated to the correct pressure.
- ▷ Always monitor your fuel consumption.
- ▷ Drive smoothly, avoid abrupt changes in speed as much as possible.
- ▷ Avoid jack rabbit starts and sudden stops.
- ▷ Do not drive longer than necessary in the lower gears. Shifting into a higher gear early without lugging the engine will help save fuel.
- ▷ Prolonged “warm up” idling wastes gas. Start the vehicle just before you are ready to drive. Accelerate slowly and smoothly.
- ▷ Switch off the engine if stationary for longer periods.
- ▷ Any additional weight carried in the vehicle reduces fuel economy. Always keep cargo to a minimum and remove all unnecessary items.
- ▷ Organize your trips to take in several errands in one trip.
- ▷ All electrical accessories contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- ▷ Only switch on the air conditioning when necessary.
- ▷ Do not drive with the Roof Transport System mounted unless you need it.

The EPA estimated miles per gallon (mpg) is to be used for comparison purposes, actual mileage may be different from the estimated mpg, depending on your driving speed, weather conditions and trip length. Your actual highway mileage may be less than the estimated mpg.

- ▷ Please observe all local and national speed limits.

Operating Your Porsche in other Countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, cars built for the U.S. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your Porsche outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

- Unleaded fuel may not be available,
- Unleaded fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Excessive engine knock and serious damage to both engine and catalytic converters could result,
- Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or diagnostic equipment,
- Replacement parts may not be available or very difficult to get.

Porsche cannot be responsible for the mechanical damage that could result because of inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

If you purchased your Porsche abroad and want to bring it back home, be sure to find out about shipping and forwarding requirements, as well as current import and customs regulations.

Fuel

When the ignition is on, the fuel level is displayed on the instrument panel.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "FUEL GAUGE" on page 107.

DANGER

Refueling Fire Risk

- ▷ Fire, open flame and smoking are prohibited when handling fuel.

WARNING

Fuel Vapors and Skin Contact

Fuel and fuel vapors are hazardous to health.

- ▷ Avoid contact with skin or clothing, since injury to your skin may occur.
- ▷ Do not inhale fuel vapors, since they may make you ill and possibly cause death if inhalation is prolonged and occurs in a closed space.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the emission control system and engine:

- ▷ Never drive the tank dry.
- ▷ Avoid high cornering speeds after the warning lights have come on.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "FUEL ECONOMY" on page 250.

To avoid permanent damage to the functionality of the catalytic converters and oxygen sensors, use **unleaded fuel only**.

The engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel consumption if **unleaded premium fuel with 98 RON/88 MON** is used. If unleaded fuels with octane ratings of **less than 98 RON/88 MON** are used, the engine's knock control automatically adapts the ignition timing. Porsche recommends that you use fuel with **at least 95 RON/85 MON** in your vehicle.

The emission control system can be damaged in various ways (e.g. fueling incorrectly, shortage of fuel, tow-starting).

Please see the chapter "HOW EMISSION CONTROL WORKS" on page 249.



Information

Information on the fuel quality can normally be found on the pump.

If this is not the case, ask a gas station attendant. If the recommended fuel is not available, you can also use unleaded regular fuel (91 RON/82.5 MON) in an emergency.

However, this could reduce performance and increase fuel consumption.

- ▷ Avoid driving at full throttle.

In some countries the available fuel quality may not meet requirements and can result in coking around the intake valve.

In this case, the fuel may be mixed with the additive sold and recommended by Porsche after consulting an authorized Porsche dealer.

Porsche part number 000 043 206 89.

- ▷ Observe the instructions and mixture ratios stated on the container.

It is important that the service intervals, particularly the oil change intervals, are observed in accordance with the specifications in the "Maintenance" booklet.

Refueling

DANGER

Refueling Fires / Cellphones

The RF energy from a cellphone can cause a sparking on bare metal, much like aluminum foil in a microwave oven. The spark could ignite gasoline fumes present while refueling.

- ▷ Do not use a cellphone while pumping gas.

DANGER

Refueling Fires / Static Electricity

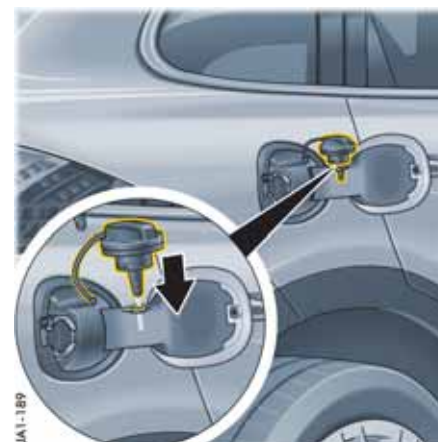
Static discharge from your body can ignite gasoline fumes present when you get back out of the vehicle and touch the fuel nozzle.

- ▷ Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping gas.



The correct fuel type for your vehicle is printed on a sticker on the inside of the filler flap.

1. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.
2. Open the filler flap by pressing on the rear part of the filler flap (**arrow**). The vehicle must be unlocked.



3. Slowly unscrew the tank cap. Put the tank cap into the holder (**arrow**).
4. Add the fuel additive recommended by Porsche if necessary.
5. Insert the pump nozzle fully into the filler neck. The handle of the pump nozzle must point downwards.
Total capacity:
Cayenne, Cayenne S
approx. 22.45 US gallons (85 liters)
(26.42 US gallons (100 liters) optional)
The reserve is approx. 3.96 US gallons (15 liters).
Cayenne Turbo
approx. 26.42 US gallons (100 liters).
The reserve is approx. 3.96 US gallons (15 liters).

6. Operate the pump nozzle and refuel the vehicle.
Do not add further fuel once the correctly operated automatic pump nozzle has switched off. Fuel could spray back or could flow over when heated.
7. Replace the tank cap immediately after refueling and close it until you hear and feel it locking.
8. Close the filler flap and press on the rear of the filler flap until it engages securely.

i Information

If you lose the tank filler cap, you must replace it only with an original part.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to decorative film as a result of contact with fuel.
Decorative film can fade if it comes into contact with fuel.

- ▷ Wipe off any spilled fuel immediately.



Emergency unlocking of the filler flap

If the electrical unlocking mechanism is faulty, the filler flap can be opened as follows:

- ▷ Pull emergency release strap behind the right luggage compartment trim panel.
The filler flap pops open.

UA1-358

Fuel Can

⚠ DANGER Transporting Filled Fuel Containers

If the fuel can is damaged in an accident and fuel escapes, it could ignite or explode.

- ▷ Do not carry a fuel can on journeys.
- ▷ Observe the relevant laws which prohibit fuel transport.

⚠ WARNING Fuel Container Vapor Hazard

Vapors from the fuel are hazardous to health.

- ▷ Do not carry a fuel can in the occupant compartment.

Fuel Recommendations

Your Porsche is equipped with catalytic converters and must use **UNLEADED FUEL ONLY**.

Your engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel economy using unleaded premium fuel with an octane rating of **98 RON (93 CLC or AKI)**. Porsche therefore recommends the use of these fuels in your vehicle.

Porsche also recognizes that these fuels may not always be available. Be assured that your vehicle will operate properly on unleaded premium fuels with octane numbers of at least **95 RON (90 CLC or AKI)**, since the engine's "Electronic Oktane™ knock control" will adapt the ignition timing, if necessary.

It is important to observe the regular service intervals, and particularly the oil change intervals, specified in the "Maintenance" booklet.

The use of UNLEADED FUEL ONLY is critically important to the life of the catalytic converters. Deposits from leaded fuels will ruin the converters and make them ineffective as an emission control device.

Cars with catalytic converters have a smaller fuel tank opening, and gas station pumps that dispense unleaded fuel have smaller nozzles. This will prevent accidental pumping of leaded fuel into cars with catalytic converters.

Unleaded fuels may not be available outside the continental U.S. and Canada. Therefore, we recommend you do not take your car to areas or countries where unleaded fuel may not be available.

Octane ratings

Octane rating indicates a fuel's ability to resist detonation. Therefore, buying the correct octane gas is important to prevent engine "damage".

The RON octane rating is based on the research method. The CLC (U.S. Cost of Living Council octane rating) or AKI (antiknock index) octane rating usually displayed on U.S. fuel pumps is calculated as research octane number plus motor octane number, divided by 2, that is written as:

$$\frac{\text{RON} + \text{MON}}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\text{R} + \text{M}}{2}$$

The CLC or AKI octane rating is usually lower than the RON rating:

For example: 95 RON equals 90 CLC or AKI.

Fuels containing ethanol

Do not use any fuels containing more than 10 percent ethanol by volume.

We recommend, however, to change to a different fuel or station if any of the following problems occur with your vehicle:

- Deterioration of driveability and performance.
- Substantially reduced fuel economy.
- Vapor lock and non-start problems, especially at high altitude or at high temperature.
- Engine malfunction or stalling.

Fuel Evaporation Control

Fuel tank venting

The evaporation chamber and the carbon canister prevent fuel vapors from escaping to the atmosphere at extreme high outside temperatures, when driving abruptly around curves and when the car is parked at an incline or in any other nonlevel position.

Vapor control system and storage

When the fuel tank is filled, vapors are collected in the evaporation chamber by a vent line leading the vapors to the carbon canister where they are stored as long as the engine does not run.

Purge system

When the engine is running, the fuel vapors from the canister will be mixed with fresh air from the ambient air of the canister. This mixture will be directed to the intake air housing by the tank vent line, mixed with the intake air and burned during normal combustion.

Car Care Instructions

- ▷ Please see the chapter “EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE” on page 239.

Regular and correct care helps to maintain the value of your car and is also a precondition for the New Vehicle Warranty and the Anti Corrosion Warranty.

Your authorized Porsche dealer has specially developed car-care products from the Porsche program available either singly or as complete car-care sets. They will be pleased to help you select suitable products. Whether you use Porsche products or other commercially available cleaning agents first make sure of their correct application.

A Porsche that is well-cared for can look like new for years. It all depends on the amount of care the owner is willing to give the car.

WARNING Chemical Cleaners

Cleaning agents may be hazardous to your health. Most chemical cleaners are concentrates which require dilution. High concentrations might cause problems ranging from irritation to serious injury.

- ▷ Keep cleaning agents out of reach from children.
- ▷ Observe all caution labels.
- ▷ Always read directions on the container before using any product. These directions may contain information necessary to avoid personal injury.
- ▷ Do not use fuel, kerosene, naphtha, nail polish remover or other volatile cleaning fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Only use spot removing fluids in a well vented area.
- ▷ Do not clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc., without protecting your hands and arms as you may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle or property from cleaning agents.

- ▷ Observe all caution labels.

High-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners

NOTICE

Risk of damage as a result of using high-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners or similar.

High-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners or similar can damage the following components:

- Tires,
- Logos, emblems,
- Painted surfaces
- Wheel arch extensions,
- Alternator, valve covers,
- ParkAssist sensors,
- Radar sensor for adaptive cruise control,
- Rearview camera.
- ▷ Always read the operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer.
- ▷ Always cover the lid of the brake fluid reservoir prior to cleaning. Never point the cleaning jet directly at the lid.
- ▷ When cleaning with a flat-jet nozzle or a so-called “dirt blaster”, maintain a minimum distance of 21 in. (50 cm).
- ▷ Never use high-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners, etc. with a round-jet nozzle. High-pressure cleaning equipment with a round nozzle will damage your vehicle. The tires are particularly susceptible to damage.
- ▷ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at any of the aforementioned components.

Decorative film

NOTICE

Risk of damage due to separation of the decorative film when using high-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners or similar cleaning equipment.

- ▷ Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment, steam cleaners, etc. to clean decorative films.

Care of door lock

- ▷ To prevent the door lock from freezing during the cold season, cover the lock barrel with suitable adhesive tape while washing the vehicle.

If the lock still freezes, use an ordinary de-icer. In many cases, a well warmed key can help. Never use excessive force.

Car washing

The best protection for the vehicle from the damaging effects of the environment is frequent washing and preservation.

The longer road salt, road dust, industrial dust, insect remains, bird excrement, and tree exudations (e.g. resin, pollen), etc. are allowed to remain on the bodywork, the more harmful their effect.

Observe the following points in order to ensure that the vehicle is washed thoroughly without damaging the paintwork:

- ▷ The underside of the vehicle should also be thoroughly washed at the end of the gritting season at the latest.
- ▷ Wash your vehicle only at sites provided for this purpose to prevent soot, grease, oil and heavy metals from entering the environment.
- ▷ Dark colors are slightly more susceptible to scratching and require particularly careful paint care.
Dark paints make even the smallest surface blemishes (scratches) more conspicuous than lighter colors.
- ▷ Do not wash your Porsche in direct sunlight or when its body is hot.
- ▷ When washing by hand, use a car shampoo, plenty of water, and a soft sponge or washing brush.
We recommend Porsche car shampoo.
- ▷ Start washing the vehicle by thoroughly wetting the paintwork and rinsing the heavy dirt off.
- ▷ After washing the vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with water and rub it dry with chamois-leather. Do not use the same chamois for rubbing dry as you use for cleaning the windshield and windows.

WARNING

Wet Brakes

Reduced or uneven braking action may be caused by wet brakes.

- ▷ After washing the vehicle, test the brakes and steering and briefly brake the disks dry. When doing so, make sure that vehicles traveling behind you are not affected.

Cleaning in car washes

Optional add-on parts or parts that project beyond the contours of the vehicle may be damaged by design features of car washes.

The following parts are particularly at risk:

- Windshield wipers and rear wiper (always switch them off – wiper stalk in position **0** – to prevent them wiping unintentionally in intermittent or sensor operation).
- Door mirrors (always fold in).
- External antenna (always unscrew).
- Roof transport system (always remove completely).
- Spoiler.
- Wheels (the wider the rim and the lower the tire height, the greater the risk of damage).
- ▷ Please consult the operator before using automatic car washes.
- ▷ All parts not reached by a car wash, such as door and lid seams or door sills, must be washed and polished by hand.



Information

Automatic car washes spray water at odd angles and high pressures, which are not seen in normal driving. Therefore, water can sometimes find its way into the passengers compartment during or shortly after the car wash.

Paint care

In order to protect the paintwork on your vehicle in the best possible way against mechanical and chemical damage, you should:

- Preserve it regularly,
- Polish it if necessary,
- Remove spots and stains,
- Repair damaged paintwork.

General Notes

- ▷ Never rub a dusty vehicle with a dry cloth, because the grains of dirt will damage the paintwork.
- ▷ Do not treat matt-painted components with preservatives or polishes as these remove the matt effect.

Preservation

The paint surface becomes dull over time due to weathering.

- ▷ Preserve paint regularly.
- ▷ Apply paint preservative after washing the vehicle and polish it smooth to preserve the paintwork.

This keeps the paint shiny and elastic. Dirt is prevented from adhering to the paint surface and industrial dust is prevented from penetrating the paint.

Polishing

Only when the original shine can no longer be obtained using preservatives should paint polish be used to clean the paint.

We recommend Porsche paint polish.

Removing spots and stains

- ▷ Remove tar spatters, traces of oil, insects etc. as soon as possible using an insect remover, as they discolor the paint if left to work on it over time.
- ▷ Wash the treated areas carefully afterwards.

Repairing minor paint damage

- ▷ Have minor paint damage (cracks, scratches or stone damage) repaired immediately by your authorized Porsche dealer **before** corrosion begins.

If traces of corrosion have already formed, these must be thoroughly removed. An anti-corrosion primer must then be applied to these spots, followed by top-coat paint.

Paint data can be found on the vehicle data carrier.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "VEHICLE DATA BANK" on page 307.

Cleaning the engine compartment

NOTICE

Risk of damage, e.g. to the alternator, electrical components and plug connections, painted surfaces and valve covers.

- ▷ Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle.
- ▷ Always observe a minimum distance of 21 in. (50 cm).
- ▷ Always cover the lid of the brake fluid reservoir prior to cleaning with a high-pressure cleaner. Never point the cleaning jet directly at the lid.
- ▷ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at any of the aforementioned components.

Cleaning windows

- ▷ Clean all windows regularly, inside and out, with Porsche window cleaner.
- ▷ Make sure not to damage the heating filaments of the rear window and the TV antenna of the side window when cleaning.
- ▷ Do not use the same chamois for painted surfaces and for drying the windows. Preservative residues could reduce transparency.
- ▷ Remove insect residues with insect remover.



Information

The front side windows have a water-repellent (hydrophobic) coating, which prevents soiling of the windows.

This coating is subject to natural wear and can be renewed.

- ▷ Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer.

Care of windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "WIPER BLADES" on page 248.
- ▷ Have the wiper blades replaced twice per year (before and after the cold season) or if wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged.
- ▷ Clean the wiper blades with window cleaner at regular intervals, especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash.
We recommend Porsche window cleaner. If wiper blades are very dirty (e.g. covered with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this may be due to the following:

- If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, wax residues may adhere to the windshield. These wax residues can be removed only by using window cleaner concentrate.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "WASHER FLUID" on page 246.

Contact your authorized Porsche dealer for more information.

- The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.
- ▷ Have damaged or worn wiper blades replaced immediately.

Repairing the underbody protection

The underside of your car is durably protected against chemical and mechanical influences.

As it is not possible to exclude the risk of damage to this protective coating in day to day driving, it is advisable to have the underside of the car inspected at certain intervals - preferably before the start of winter and again in spring - and the undercoating restored as necessary.

Your authorized Porsche dealer is familiar with the bodyseal treatment procedures and has the necessary equipment for applying factory approved materials. We recommend that you entrust them with such work and inspections.

Unlike conventional spray oils, undercoating and rust-proofing compounds based on bitumen or wax do not attack the sound-proofing materials applied at the factory.



WARNING

Exhaust System Fire Risk

The exhaust system becomes very hot when the engine is running. Flammable material close to the exhaust system could ignite. Additional undercoating or rust protection agents on or near the exhaust system can become too hot when driving and ignite.

- ▷ Do not apply additional undercoating or rust-proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. During driving the substance used for undercoating could overheat and ignite.
- ▷ Before applying fresh underseal, carefully remove deposits or dirt and grease. Once it has dried, the new undercoating compound forms a tough protective coating which provides efficient rust-proofing of the floor panels and components.

- ▷ Always apply a fresh coating of suitable preservative to unprotect areas after cleaning the underside of the body, the transmission, the engine or carrying out repairs to underbody, engine or transmission components.

Effective rust-proofing is particularly important during the cold weather season. If your car is driven frequently in areas where salt has been spread on the roads, the whole engine compartment should be cleaned thoroughly after the winter to prevent salt from causing any lasting damage. A full under-body wash should also be performed at the same time.

Cleaning headlights, lights, interior and exterior plastic components, adhesive films, radar sensor for adaptive cruise control and rearview camera

Observe the following points:

- ▷ Use **only** clean water and a little dishwashing liquid or interior window cleaner to clean headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces.
Use a soft sponge or a soft, lint-free cloth.



Information

An interior window cleaner can also be used to clean plastic surfaces (always read the cleaning instructions on the container!).

We recommend Porsche interior window cleaner.

- ▷ Gently wipe the surface without applying too much pressure.
- ▷ Do not clean when dry.
- ▷ Never use other chemical cleaners or solvents.
- ▷ Rinse cleaned surfaces with clear water.

Alloy wheels

Metal particles (e.g. brass or copper in brake dust) must not remain too long on alloy wheels. Contact corrosion can cause pitting.



Information

Cleaners with an oxide-removing effect or wrong pH value, as are commonly used for other metals, as well as mechanical tools and products, will damage the oxide layer and are therefore unsuitable.

- ▷ **Use only cleaners for alloy wheels (pH value 9.5). Products with the wrong pH value can destroy the protective layer on the wheels.**

We recommend Porsche cleaner for alloy rims.

- ▷ If possible, wash the wheels every two weeks with a sponge or washing brush. If the wheels are exposed to road salt, grit or industrial dust, weekly cleaning is necessary.
- ▷ Every three months, after cleaning, grease the wheels with car wax or an acid-free grease (e.g. Vaseline).
Rub the grease in well with a soft cloth.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "CLEANING IN CAR WASHES" on page 256.

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning Agents on Brake Disks

If cleaning agents (e.g. wheel cleaning agents) come into contact with the brake disks, the resulting film on the brake disks can impair braking performance.

- ▷ Make sure that no cleaning agent comes into contact with the brake disks.
- ▷ If cleaning agent has come into contact with the brake disks, clean the brake disks thoroughly with a strong jet of water.
- ▷ Paying attention to any road users behind you, dry the brake disks by applying the brakes.

Stainless steel tailpipes

Stainless steel tailpipes can discolor due to soiling, strong heat and combustion residues.

The original shine can be achieved again using commercially available metal lustre paste or metal polish.

Cleaning door, roof, lid and window seals

NOTICE

The lubricant coating on the inner door seals may be damaged by unsuitable cleaning and care agents.

- ▷ Do not use any chemical cleaning agents or solvents.
- ▷ Do not use any preservative agents.
- ▷ Wash dirt (e.g. abrasion, dust, road salts) from all seals regularly using warm soapy water.
- ▷ If there is a risk of frost, protect the outer door seals and lid seals against freezing into place with a suitable care product.

Leather care

The natural surface markings of leather, e.g. creases, healed scars, insect sting marks, structural differences and slight variations in shade and grain add to the attractiveness of the high-quality natural leather product.

Observe the following care instructions:

NOTICE

The leather will be damaged by the use of unsuitable cleaning and care agents and by inappropriate treatment.

- ▷ Do not use caustic cleaners or hard cleaning objects!
- ▷ Perforated leather must under no circumstances get wet on its reverse side.
- ▷ Clean all types of leather regularly to remove fine dust using a soft, damp, white woollen cloth or a commercially available microfibre cloth.
- ▷ Remove heavy contamination with a leather cleaner.
Always read the instructions for use given on the containers.
We recommend Porsche leather care liquid.
- ▷ Treat cleaned leather only with a leather care product.
We recommend Porsche leather care product.

Cleaning carpet, floor mats

- ▷ Use a vacuum cleaner or a brush (not too soft) for cleaning.
- ▷ Heavy dirt and stains can be removed with a stain remover.
We recommend Porsche stain remover.

To protect carpets, the Porsche range of accessories includes mats of the correct size and with the appropriate fastening.



WARNING Obstructed Pedals

Improperly secured floor mats can obstruct pedal travel.

- ▷ Always check the movement of the pedals before driving and make sure that they are not obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.
- ▷ Secure the floor mat to prevent it from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle – do not lay them loosely in the vehicle.
Your authorized Porsche dealer will be glad to offer you floor mats of correct size including a securing possibility.

Cleaning airbag covers



DANGER Vehicle Interior Modifications

Incorrect modifications may damage the airbag system. The airbag may not deploy properly in the event of an accident.

- ▷ Do not make any modifications whatsoever to individual components, such as the padded covers on the steering wheel, the underside of the instrument panel, front seats, roof pillars, roof liners and the rear interior trim panels around the seat backrest.
- ▷ Have your authorized Porsche dealer to clean these components.

Cleaning fabric linings

- ▷ Fabric linings on pillars, roofliner and sun visors, etc. must be cleaned only using suitable cleaning agents or a suitable dry foam and a soft brush.

Alcantara care

- ▷ Do not use leather care products to clean Alcantara.

For regular care, it is sufficient to clean the cover with a soft brush.

Strong abrasion or rubbing when cleaning will produce a lasting change to the surface.

Cleaning when lightly soiled

- ▷ Wet a soft cloth with water or a neutral soap solution and wipe off the dirt.

Cleaning when heavily soiled

- ▷ Wet a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab the dirt from the outside in.

Cleaning the safety belts

- ▷ Use mild detergent to clean soiled belts.
- ▷ When drying, avoid direct sunlight.
- ▷ Only use suitable cleaning agents.
- ▷ Do not tint or bleach the belts.
The belt fabric could be weakened, thus affecting safety.

Laying up your Porsche

If you wish to keep your Porsche off the road for a lengthy period, we recommend that you contact your authorized Porsche dealer.

They will be glad to advise you about the necessary measures, e.g. corrosion prevention, care, maintenance and storage.

Further important information on laying up your Porsche can be found in other sections.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on page 290.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle when the battery is disconnected:
Please see the chapter "NOT ALL VEHICLE DOORS ARE LOCKED" on page 33.

Minor Repairs

| | |
|---|-----|
| Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your vehicle..... | 262 |
| Warning triangle..... | 263 |
| First aid kit | 264 |
| Tool kit..... | 264 |
| Tires and Wheels..... | 265 |
| Jack..... | 274 |
| Spacers | 274 |
| Wheel Bolts | 275 |
| Changing Wheels..... | 275 |
| Fixing a Flat Tire..... | 276 |
| Inflating Tires | 285 |
| Electrical System | 286 |
| Battery | 290 |
| External Power Supply, Emergency Starting with Jumper Cables | 292 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery | 294 |
| Replacing Bulbs | 294 |
| Headlight Adjustment..... | 301 |
| Towing | 302 |

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your vehicle

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. If you are not fully familiar with proper repair procedures, do not attempt the adjustments described on the following pages.

This caution applies to the entire vehicle.



DANGER

Fire and Explosion Hazards

Many vehicle fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine and transmission oil. Fuel vapors can cause an explosion. When a battery is being charged, highly explosive gases can develop.

- ▷ Do not smoke or allow an open flame around the battery or fuel.
Pay attention to sparks, e.g. when coming into contact with cables.
Keep a fire extinguisher close at hand.
- ▷ Ensure that there are no open flames in the area of your vehicle at any time when fuel fumes might be present. Be especially cautious of devices such as hot water heaters which ignite a flame intermittently.
- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.



WARNING

Fluid Health Hazards

Refill fluids, e.g. engine oil, brake fluid or coolant are hazardous to health (poisonous, irritant, caustic).

- ▷ Keep these fluids out of children's reach and dispose of them in accordance with the appropriate regulations.
- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.



WARNING

Exhaust Gas Inhalation

Engine exhaust is dangerous if inhaled.

Engine exhaust fumes have many components which you can smell. They also contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is a colorless and odorless gas.

Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

- ▷ Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.



WARNING

Hot Engine Parts, Exhaust System and Fluids

The engine and surroundings components, the exhaust system and coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant reservoir is pressurized. Careless opening of the coolant reservoir can lead to hot coolant suddenly spraying out.

- ▷ Take care when working near hot parts of the vehicle, in particular engine parts and parts of the exhaust system.
- ▷ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▷ Allow the engine to cool down before opening the cap of the coolant reservoir and protect your hands, arms and face from any possible escape of hot coolant.



WARNING

Moving Engine Parts

Take great care to ensure that hands, fingers, articles of clothing (e.g. ties, sleeves, etc.), necklaces or long hair cannot be caught up by the radiator fans, drive belt or other moving parts.

The radiator fans can start or continue running as a function of temperature, even with the engine switched off.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewelry do not get caught in the radiator fan, drive belt or other moving parts.
- ▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off and exercise extreme caution.



WARNING

Electric Shock from Ignition System

When the ignition is on, all cables and wires of the ignition system carry a high voltage.

- ▷ Exercise special care when working on the ignition system.

⚠ WARNING Failure to Secure Vehicle

If the vehicle is not secured, or incorrectly secured, during repair work, it could move unexpectedly or fall from the car jack or car lift.

- ▷ Be alert and cautious around the engine at all times while it is running.

If you have to work on the engine while it is running, always apply the electric parking brake **and** put the gearshift lever in neutral or the Tiptronic selector lever in position **P or N**.

- ▷ Always support your car with safety stands if it is necessary to work under the car. The jack supplied with the car is not adequate for this purpose.

Switch off level control of air suspension and height adjustment.

Please see the chapter “LIFTING THE VEHICLE WITH A LIFTING PLATFORM, TROLLEY JACK OR STANDARD JACK” on page 274.

- ▷ Jack up the vehicle only at the specified jacking points on the underside of the vehicle.
- ▷ Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked or lifted up. Vibration from the engine could cause the vehicle to fall.
- ▷ When working under the car without safety stands but with the wheels on the ground, make sure the car is on level ground, the wheels are blocked, and that the engine cannot be started.

Withdraw ignition keys (switch ignition off in vehicles that have Porsche Entry & Drive).

i Information

- ▷ Incomplete or improper servicing may cause problems in the operation of the car. If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Porsche dealer. Improper maintenance during the warranty period may affect your Porsche warranty coverage.
- ▷ Some countries require additional tools and special spare parts to be carried in your vehicle. Please make enquiries before driving abroad.



Warning triangle

The warning triangle is stored behind a cover in the tailgate.

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Open the cover.



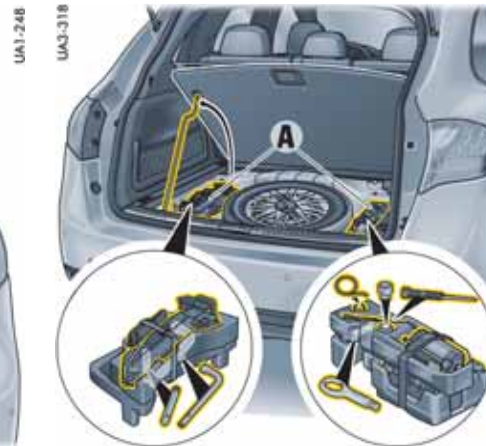
First aid kit

Vehicles without spare wheel

The first aid kit is stored behind a cover in the luggage compartment.

Vehicles with spare wheel

The first aid kit is stored in the spare-wheel well.
 ▷ Always replace any items you remove from the first aid kit immediately.



Vehicles with collapsible spare wheel

Tool kit

The tool kit **A** is stored under the luggage compartment floor. The tools provided in the tool kit depend on vehicle equipment.

Information

The tools required for changing a wheel (e.g. jack, wheel bolt wrench, assembly aids, folding wedges) are only supplied with the vehicle if the vehicle comes with a collapsible spare wheel or full-size spare wheel as standard. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.



Vehicles with spare wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel have an additional compressor with pressure gauge under the loadspace floor at the right.

For information on inflating tires using the compressor under the loadspace floor:

▷ Please see the chapter "INFLATING TIRES" on page 285.

Vehicles without a collapsible spare wheel or spare wheel have tire sealant and a compressor with pressure gauge under the loadspace floor at the right:

▷ Please see the chapter "USING TIRE SEALANT" on page 277.

Tires and Wheels

The original equipment tires and wheel rims on your Porsche comply with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

For your safety remember the following:

- Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your Porsche.
- If you intend to use other than original equipment wheels, be sure that they conform to Porsche specifications for your model. Only tires with the same make and with the same specification code (e.g. "N0", "N1"...) can be mounted.
- The use of wheel rims and wheel bolts that do not meet specifications of the original factory installed equipment will affect the safe operation of your vehicle and affect warranty coverage.
- Before you plan on exchanging wheels, or snow tires already mounted on the wheel rims, consult your authorized Porsche dealer. Your dealer has the technical information necessary to advise you which wheel rims and wheel bolts are compatible with the original factory installations.

DANGER

Tire Damage While Driving

Driving with damaged tires could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ If while driving, your vehicle experiences a sudden vibration or ride disturbance, and/or you suspect that possible damage to your tires or vehicle has occurred, you should immediately reduce your speed without excessive use of the brakes.
- ▷ Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and inspect the tires.
If you cannot determine the cause for the disturbance, have your vehicle towed to the nearest Porsche or tire dealer to have your vehicle or tire(s) inspected.
- ▷ Continuing to operate the vehicle without correction could result in a loss of control.



Example

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specific government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1-1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



Information

The traction grade assigned to this is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turned) traction, acceleration, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperatures can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



WARNING

Tire Abuse

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed for the tires fitted to the vehicle.
 - ▷ Ensure that the tires are set to the correct inflation pressure.
 - ▷ Observe the maximum load for the vehicle.
-

Tire pressures



DANGER

Low Tire Pressure

Driving the vehicle with low tire pressure increases risk of a tire failure and resulting loss of control. Furthermore, low tire pressure increases rate of wear of the affected tires and causes damage.

- ▷ Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking inflation pressures.
 - ▷ Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure listed on the tire sidewall. (Also refer to "Technical data").
 - ▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE PLATE" on page 268.
 - ▷ Cold tire inflation pressure means: all tires must be cold, ambient temperature maximum 68 °F (20 °C), when adjusting the inflation pressure. Avoid sunlight striking the tires before measuring cold pressures, since the pressures would rise from temperature influence.
 - ▷ Valve caps protect the valve from dust and dirt, and thus from leakage. Always screw caps tightly down. Replace missing caps immediately.
 - ▷ Use only plastic valve caps.
 - ▷ For safety reasons, don't use tire inflating bottles.
-

- ▷ Please see the chapter “TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)” on page 310.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring (TPM) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPM is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPM low tire pressure tell-tale.

For further information on the tire pressure monitoring:

- ▷ Please see the chapter “TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING (TPM)” on page 119.

When tires are warm, the tire pressure is increased.

- ▷ Never let air out of hot tires. This could cause the tire pressure to fall below the prescribed value.

Insufficient tire pressure can cause tires to overheat and thus be damaged – even invisibly. Hidden tire damage is not eliminated by subsequently correcting the tire pressure.

Overloading

DANGER Overloading Tires

Overloading can lead to dangerous vehicle reactions and long braking distances.

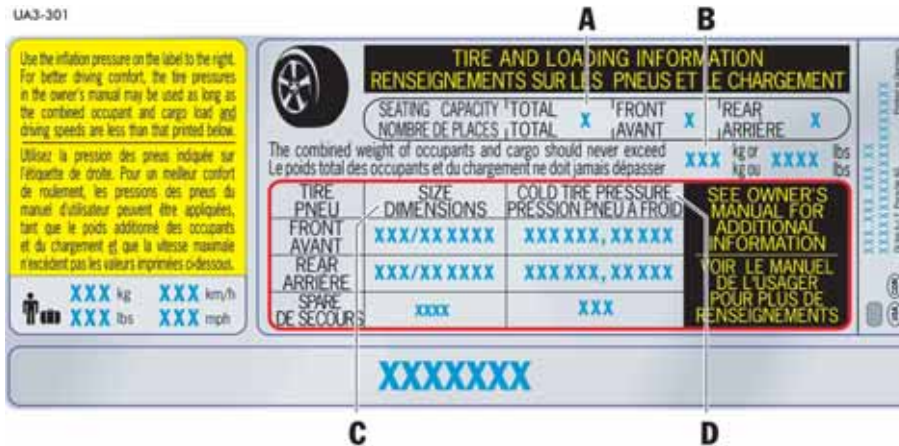
- ▷ Do not overload your vehicle. Be careful about the roof load.
- ▷ If you plan to load the vehicle, first correct the tire pressure. Tire pressure for loaded vehicle can be found on the tire pressure plate and in the chapter technical data.
- ▷ Never exceed the specified axle load.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle and to the tires. Damage due to overloading is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Tire damage may also be caused by overloading, and this damage is not covered by your tire warranty.

- ▷ Do not overload your vehicle. Be careful about the roof load.
 - ▷ If you plan to load the vehicle, first correct the tire pressure. Tire pressure for loaded vehicle can be found on the tire pressure plate and in the chapter technical data.
 - ▷ Never exceed the specified axle load.
-
- ▷ Please see the chapter “LOADING INFORMATION” on page 221.



Example of a tire pressure plate

Tire Pressure plate

Information on the tire pressure plate

A Seating capacity

Maximum number of vehicle occupants, including the driver.

B Vehicle load limit

Is the maximum total weight limit specified of the load (passengers and cargo) for the vehicle. This is the maximum weight of passengers and cargo that can be loaded into the vehicle.

Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on page 221.

C Original tire size

Size of tires mounted at the factory.

D Recommended cold tire inflation pressure

These values are for cold tires (68 °F/20 °C).

Tire traction

WARNING Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water may build up between the tires and the road. This phenomenon is known as "hydroplane" and may cause partial or complete loss of traction, vehicle control or stopping ability.

▷ Reduce speed on wet surfaces to prevent this.

Tire life

Tire life depends on various factors, i.e., road surfaces, traffic and weather conditions, driving habits, type of tires and tire care.

▷ Inspect your tires for wear and damage before driving off. If you notice uneven or substantial wear, wheels might need alignment or tires should be balanced or replaced.

Tire wear

The original equipment tires on your Porsche have built-in tire wear indicators. They are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves and will appear as approximately 1/2 in. (12 mm) bands when the tire tread depth is down to 1/16 of an in (1.6 mm). When the indicators appear in two or more adjacent grooves, it is time to replace the tires. We recommend, however, that you do not let the tires wear down to this extent.

Worn tires cannot grip the road surface properly and are even less effective on wet roads.

In the United States, state laws may govern the minimum tread depth permissible. Follow all such laws.

DANGER Excessively-worn Tires

Driving on worn tires can result in loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious personal injuries or death.

▷ Do not drive with worn tires or tires showing cuts or bruises as they may lead to sudden deflation and loss of control which could cause severe personal injury.

- ▷ If you notice that tires are wearing unevenly, consult your authorized Porsche dealer. Uneven wear may not always be due to improper wheel alignment. It can be the result of individual driving habits such as cornering at high speeds. If the tire pressure is not checked and adjusted regularly, abnormal tire wear can also occur.

Tire care

- ▷ Avoid damaging tires and wheel rims.
- ▷ If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and at an obtuse angle.
- ▷ Check tires for uneven wear and damage before driving off.
- ▷ Remove imbedded material.
- ▷ Replace worn or damaged tires immediately.
- ▷ Keep oil, fuel, brake fluid, etc. away from tires.
- ▷ Replace missing valve stem caps.
- ▷ Keep tires inflated correctly.
- ▷ Wash tires when washing the vehicle. Also clean inner side of wheels.
- ▷ Do not use abrasive cleaners when washing the wheels.
- ▷ Check wheel rims for corrosion.
- ▷ Remove road salt, if driving in winter.

Tire damage, puncture

- ▷ Please see the chapter “HIGH-PRESSURE CLEANING EQUIPMENT, STEAM CLEANERS” on page 255.

DANGER Damaged Tire Check

Driving the vehicle with low tire pressure increases risk of a tire failure and resulting loss of control. Furthermore, low tire pressure increases the rate of wear of the affected tires.

- ▷ Check tires – including sidewalls – regularly for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- ▷ After driving off road, examine tires for signs of damage such as cuts, tears, bulges or foreign objects stuck in the tread. Replace a damaged tire if necessary.
- ▷ Cross curb edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Avoid driving over steep or sharp curbs.
- ▷ In cases of doubt, have the wheel (particularly the inner side) checked by an authorized Porsche dealer.

In case of tire damage, where it is uncertain whether there is a break in the ply with all its consequences or tire damage caused by thermal or mechanical overloading due to loss of pressure or any other prior damage, we recommend that the tire be replaced for safety reasons.

If one faulty tire is replaced it should be noted that the difference in tread depth on one axle must not exceed 30%. Handling inconsistencies may result.

- ▷ Perform a visual inspection if necessary.

Tire replacements

- ▷ Use only tire makes and types tested by Porsche.

If you do not use a Porsche recommended replacement tire, make sure that you purchase your new tires from a reputable tire dealer and that the dealer complies with all manufacturers warnings for those tires.

Only tires with the same manufacturer and with the same specification code (e.g. “NO”, “N1”...) should be mounted on the vehicle.

Before mounting new tires, check with your Porsche dealer about the current release status.

Tires should be replaced no less than on one axle at the time. Only tires of the same make and type must be used. Mixed tires are not permissible and will affect vehicle performance, safety, and can affect vehicle warranty.

Porsche dealers can recommend the most current replacement tire options for your vehicle.

Initially, new tires do not have their full traction. You should therefore drive at moderate speeds during the first 60 - 120 miles (100 - 200 km).

Tires must always remain on the same side of the vehicle.

When wheels are removed, the direction of rotation and position of each wheel should be marked.

If new tires are installed only on **one** axle, a noticeable change in handling occurs due to the different tread depth of the other tires. This happens especially if only rear tires are replaced. However, this condition disappears as the new tires are broken in.

- ▷ Please adjust your driving style accordingly. Installation of new tires should only be done by a qualified tire technician.

Valves

- ▷ Use only plastic valve caps.
- ▷ The rubber valves must be replaced whenever the tires are changed.
- ▷ The fitting and replacement specifications must be observed for metal valves.
- ▷ Only use Original Porsche metal valves.
- ▷ Protect the valve inserts against soiling with valve caps. Soiled valve inserts can cause a gradual loss of air.

Parking at the curb

 **DANGER** Curb Impact / Tire Damage

Hard impacts against curbs (or traffic islands) are dangerous and may cause hidden tire damage which is not noticeable until later. Such damage can result in accidents at high speeds. Depending on the force of impact, the edge of the rim can also be damaged.

- ▷ After such an impact, have the wheel checked by an expert.
- ▷ If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and at an obtuse angle. Exercise care when parking along curbs.



Information

Tire repairs are not permissible under any circumstances.

Wheel alignment, wheel balancing

As a precaution, have wheels with summer tires balanced in the spring, and those with mud and snow tires before winter. Unbalanced wheels may affect car handling and tire life.

Only the specified weights may be used for wheel balancing.

Self-adhesive weights must not come into contact with cleaning agents, since they could drop off. Uneven tread wear indicates wheel imbalance. In this event, the vehicle should be checked at an authorized Porsche dealer.

 **DANGER** High-Speed tire Vibration

If, during a trip, uneven running or vibrations occur that could be caused by damage to tires or the car, the speed must be reduced immediately, but without braking sharply. If you continue your trip without having the cause of the fault remedied, you might lose control of your vehicle.

- ▷ Stop the vehicle and check the tires.
- ▷ If no cause for the fault can be found, drive carefully to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) sensors

Before changing wheels, make sure that the wheels are compatible with your vehicle's TPM.

- ▷ Check this with your authorized Porsche dealer.

Removing and storing tires

- ▷ After changing, adjust tire pressure and torque wheel bolts diagonally. Please see the chapter "CHANGING WHEELS" on page 275.
- ▷ Store tires in a cool and dry place. Rotate periodically to avoid flat spots.
- ▷ Avoid contact with fuel, oil and grease.

Tires must always remain on the same side of the vehicle.

When wheels are removed, the direction of rotation and position of each wheel should be marked.

Example

FR (front right), FL, RR and RL.

Wheels must always be fitted in accordance with their marking.

The perception that tire durability and performance are not affected by storage and age is unfounded.

Chemical additives, which make the rubber elastic, lose their effectiveness over the course of time and the rubber becomes brittle and cracks.

Therefore, the tires should be inspected from time to time.



Information

Under no circumstances should tires older than 6 years be used on your Porsche.

The age of the tire can be obtained from the "DOT" code number. If, for example, the last four numbers read 1208, then the tire was produced in the 12th week of 2008.

Snow tires

The installation of Porsche approved snow tires is recommended.

Use Porsche approved snow tires for grip on snow and ice.

Check with your local Motor Vehicle Bureau for possible restrictions.



WARNING

Snow Tire Use

The standard tires profile and rubber mixture are optimized for wet and dry driving conditions, and may not prove favorable for snow conditions.

- ▷ Install snow tires before driving in such conditions.

NOTICE

Risk of insufficient road grip leading to loss of control and damage to the vehicle.

The standard tires profile and rubber mixture are optimized for wet and dry driving conditions, and may not prove favorable for snow conditions.

- ▷ Install snow tires before driving in such conditions.

Before mounting snow tires, consult with your Porsche dealer. They have the technical information necessary to advise you on wheel and tire compatibility.

- ▷ Snow tires should have the same load capacity as original equipment tires and should be mounted on all four wheels.



DANGER

Tire Hazards

Driving the vehicle with low tire pressure increases risk of a tire failure and resulting loss of control. Furthermore, low tire pressure increases the rate of wear of the affected tires and causes damage. Tires with badly worn treads are very dangerous and could cause accidents.

- ▷ Make sure they are replaced immediately.
- ▷ Do not exceed the snow tire speed rating. Snow tires do not have the same degree of traction on dry, wet or snowfree roads as normal tires.

Furthermore, snow tires wear rapidly under these conditions.



Information

We recommend fitting winter tires on the vehicle at temperatures below 45 °F (7 °C) since the driving performance of summer tires is reduced at low temperatures. Summer tires may be permanently damaged at extremely low temperatures.

Winter tires do not fulfill their purpose if the tread depth is less than 5/32 in. (4 mm).

Comply with all state and local laws governing snow tire and tread depth requirements.



DANGER

Excessive Speed for Tires

Exceeding the maximum permitted speed for the tires fitted could cause tire failure.

- ▷ Always check the maximum speed rating on the tire sidewall on any tire on the vehicle.
- ▷ Never exceed the maximum speed rating of the tires.

Wheel change

- ▷ When wheels are removed, mark the direction of rotation and position of each wheel. Example: FR (front right), FL, RR and RL.
- ▷ Always fit the wheels in accordance with the markings.

Snow chains

NOTICE

Risk of damage to body, axle or brake components.

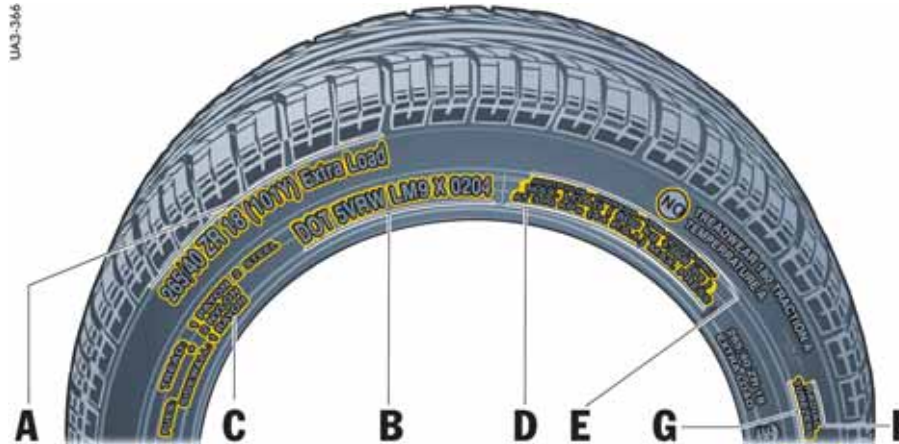
- ▷ Use only the fine-link snow chains recommended and authorized by Porsche so that sufficient clearance between the wheel well and the chain is assured.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "WHEELS, TIRES" on page 309.
- ▷ Follow instructions issued by the supplier of the chains.

The best possible handling characteristics are achieved when snow chains are fitted on all four wheels of the vehicle. However, it is also possible to fit snow chains only on the rear axle.

- ▷ Remove spacers if snow chains are mounted.
- ▷ Before fitting chains, remove accumulated ice and snow from the wheel well.
- ▷ Vehicles with snow chains must not be driven faster than **30 mph (50 km/h)**.

Different states and countries have varying statutory requirements regarding maximum speed.

- ▷ Check with local authorities for possible restrictions.
- ▷ Remove chains as soon as the roads are free of ice and snow.



Example of Inscription

Inscription on radial tire

A – Tire size

Example: P 265/40ZR18 (101Y)

- **P** - The tire is designed for Passenger vehicle. This information is not included on all tires.
- **265** - Indication of tire width in mm
- **40** - Indication of tire height to tire width ratio in percent
- **ZR** - Belt type code letter for radial
- **18** - Indication of rim diameter in inches
- **101** - Load capacity coefficient

- **Y** - Speed code letter
- **XL (Extra Load)** - Tire with increased load rating

B – TIN (Tire Identification Number)

Example: DOT xx xx xxxx xxxx

- DOT
- The DOT symbol indicates that the tires comply with the requirements of the US Department of Transportation and provides information about:
 - first two-digit code means manufacture's identification mark.
 - second two-digit code means tire size.
 - third four-digit code means tire type code.
 - fourth four-digit code means date of manufacture.

If, for example, the last four numbers read 0204, the tire was produced in the 2nd week of 2004.

C – Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers in the tread and sidewalls and their material composition.

D – Maximum permissible inflation pressure

The maximum permissible cold inflation pressure to which a tire can be inflated.

- ▷ Do not exceed the permissible inflation pressure.

E – Maximum Load rating

The maximum load in kilograms and pounds can be carried by the tire. If you replace tires always use a tire that has the same maximum load rating as the factory installed tire.

F – Radial

The identification indicates if the tire has radial structure.

G – Term of tubeless or tube tire

Identification for tubeless tires.

Speed code letters

The speed code letter **Y** indicates the maximum permitted speed for the tire.

This code letter is shown on the tire sidewall.

- T** = up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
- H** = up to 131 mph (210 km/h)
- V** = up to 150 mph (240 km/h)
- W** = up to 167 mph (270 km/h)
- Y** = up to 186 mph (300 km/h)



Information

Tires with a maximum speed rating that is lower than the specified maximum vehicle speed may be mounted only if they bear an M+S identification on the tire sidewall.

- ▷ Please note that in addition to snow tires, all-season tires are also subject to speed limits and bear this identification.



UA3-184

- A** - Rim width in inches
- B** - Rim-flange contour code letter
- C** - Symbol for drop-center rim
- D** - Rim diameter in inches
- E** - Double hump
- F** - Rim offset in mm

Inscription on alloy wheels

The information is provided on the rear of the spokes. The rim width in inches **A** and the rim offset **F** are visible from the outside. This information can be found near the tire valve.

Jack

The jack is stored with the tool kit under the loadspace floor at the left.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "TOOL KIT" on page 264.

WARNING

Misuse of Vehicle Jack

The jack must be used only to raise the car for wheel changing.

The jack must never be used as a support to work underneath the vehicle. If the jack is accidentally dislodged, you or bystanders could suffer severe personal injury.

- ▷ Never jack up other vehicle or other loads with the jack.
- ▷ Always place the car on stable supports if you have to work under the car. When working under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.

Lifting the vehicle with a lifting platform, trolley jack or standard jack

- ▷ For information on wheel changing: Please see the chapter "CHANGING WHEELS" on page 275.
- ▷ For information on jacking points: Please see the chapter "JACKING POINTS FOR LIFTING PLATFORM, TROLLEY JACK OR STANDARD JACK" on page 279.

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine or vehicle if you lift the vehicle improperly.

- ▷ Lift only at the jacking points provided.
- ▷ Before driving the vehicle onto a lifting platform, make sure that there is sufficient space between the lifting platform and the vehicle.
- ▷ To avoid serious damage, never jack up the vehicle at the engine, transmission or at the axles.
- ▷ Use only level anti-slip rubber pads on a lifting platform.
- ▷ Do not damage any sensitive components in the vicinity of the jacking points.

Raising vehicles with a level control system

Before driving onto a lifting platform or before raising the vehicle using a lifting platform, trolley jack or standard jack:

- ▷ Manually set normal level and then switch off the leveling system. Please see the chapter "RAISING THE VEHICLE WITH THE JACK" on page 197.

Spacers

- ▷ Use the spacers only together with wheels approved by Porsche. Before having spacers fitted, find out about the current approval status.
- ▷ Remove spacers if snow chains or a collapsible spare wheel are fitted.

WARNING

Fitting Collapsible Spare Tire

- ▷ Always remove 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers before fitting the collapsible spare wheel because otherwise the wheel cannot be fitted correctly.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the wheel housings if the spacers on the rear axle are not removed before fitting snow chains.

- ▷ 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers must always be removed from the rear axle when snow chains are to be fitted.



Information

- ▷ For information on removing the spacers: Please see the chapter "CHANGING A WHEEL AND REMOVING 0.67 IN. (17 MM) SPACERS" on page 281.
- ▷ For information on fitting the spacers: Please see the chapter "FITTING 0.67 IN. (17 MM) SPACERS" on page 283.



UAI-340

Wheel Bolts

- ▷ Always clean the wheel bolts before fitting.
- ▷ Wheel bolts must not be greased.
- ▷ Replace damaged wheel bolts. Only use genuine Porsche wheel bolts assigned especially to this model or wheel bolts of similar quality which have been manufactured according Porsche specifications and product requirements.

Tightening torque

Tightening torque for wheel bolts:
118 ftlb. (160 Nm).

Security wheel bolts

The adapter (wrench socket) for the security wheel bolts is in the tool kit.

- ▷ To loosen or tighten the wheel bolt with anti-theft protection, the adapter must be used between the wheel bolt and the wheel bolt wrench.
- ▷ When positioning the wrench socket, ensure that it engages fully in the teeth of the wheel bolt.



Information

On vehicles with 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers on the rear axle, the wheels are secured with steel nuts. There is no anti-theft protection for the wheel nuts.

- ▷ If the wheels have to be removed at the workshop, please do not forget to hand over the socket for the security wheel bolts along with the car key.

Changing Wheels



DANGER

Unsafe Stopping

Other vehicles could collide with your vehicle if you are parked in a dangerous position.

- ▷ If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
- ▷ Do not remain in the car. Someone approaching from the rear may not realize your vehicle is stopped and cause a collision.



WARNING

Stopping Over Nearby Flammable Matter

Exhaust fumes and the exhaust system are very hot when the engine is running. The exhaust system remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- ▷ Do not park your vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.



WARNING

Jacking Risks

If the vehicle is not secured, or incorrectly secured, during a wheel change, it could move unexpectedly or fall from the car jack.

- ▷ Passengers must not be in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
- ▷ Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a board under the jack to ensure that the jack does not sink into the ground.
- ▷ Set the electric parking brake and block the wheels opposite the flat tire on the other side of the vehicle.
- ▷ The jack is only to be used for changing a wheel. Do not use it as a support to work under the car.
- ▷ The car must be jacked up only at the illustrated jacking points. Lifting at any other place may result in personal injury.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine or vehicle if you lift the vehicle improperly.

- ▷ The car must be jacked up only at the illustrated jacking points. Lifting at any other place may result in damage to the vehicle.
- ▷ Never jack up the car by the body, bumpers, engine, transmission or at the axles.
- ▷ -Do not damage any sensitive components in the vicinity of the jacking points.
- ▷ For safety reasons do not use tire inflating bottles. Do not use commercially available sealant bottles. Use only the tire inflating bottle located in the luggage compartment.

Sequence of operation

WARNING

Working Under Vehicle

The jack must be used only to raise the car for wheel changing. The jack must never be used as a support to work underneath the vehicle. If the jack is accidentally dislodged, you or bystanders could suffer severe personal injury.

- ▷ Never jack up other vehicles or other loads with the jack.
- ▷ Always place the car on stable supports if you have to work under it. When working under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.

- ▷ Please use a suitable knee rest to protect your clothing against soiling.

Fixing a Flat Tire

The tools required for changing a wheel (e.g. jack, wheel bolt wrench, assembly aids, folding wedges) are only supplied with the vehicle if the vehicle comes with a collapsible spare wheel or full-size spare wheel as standard. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

1. Stop the vehicle as far away from the driving lane as possible.

The vehicle must be parked on a firm and flat surface with adequate grip.

2. Switch emergency flasher on.
3. Activate the electric parking brake.
4. Put the vehicle in 1st gear or move the Tiptronic selector lever to position **P**.
5. Straighten the front wheels.
6. Remove the ignition key, or the control unit on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, in order to lock the steering and prevent the engine from being started.
7. Get all passengers to leave the vehicle. Pay attention to other traffic.
8. Set up the warning triangle at a suitable distance.



A - Wedges

Securing the vehicle against rolling

To secure the vehicle, use the two folding wedges **A** supplied in the tool kit.

- ▷ You can remove the wedges after undoing the Velcro fastening.
1. Unfold the wedges.
 2. Lock them in unfolded position.



UA1-245

Using tire sealant

The tire sealant can be used to seal small cuts, especially in the tire tread.

Sealing the tire with the tire sealant is only an emergency repair so you can drive to the nearest workshop. Even if the tire is air-tight, it may only be used for short trips in an emergency.

The tire sealant and a compressor with pressure gauge can be found under the loadspace floor at the right in the luggage compartment.

The tire sealant set comprises:

- a filler bottle,
- a filler hose,
- a valve turner,
- a spare valve insert,
- a sticker with the maximum permitted speed and
- instructions for use.

⚠ WARNING

Limits on Tire Sealant Use

Always observe the following points:

- ▷ Use the tire sealant only in the case of cuts or punctures no larger than 0.15 in. (4 mm).
- ▷ Never use the tire sealant if the rim is damaged.

⚠ WARNING

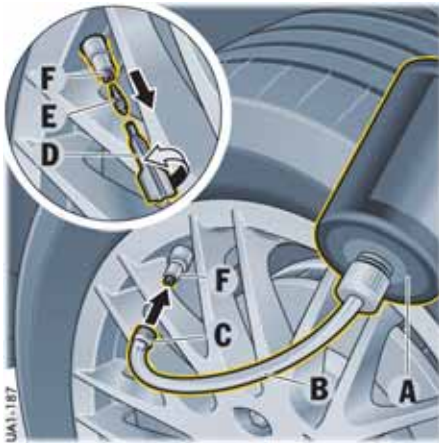
Tire Sealant
Flammability

The sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health.

- ▷ Fire, naked flame and smoking are prohibited when handling tire sealant.
- ▷ Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing due to caustic chemical properties of the tire sealant.
- ▷ Keep tire sealant away from children.
- ▷ Do not inhale vapours, due to the consequent harm to personal health resulting in serious personal injury or death.

In the event of contact with sealant:

- ▷ If sealant gets on your skin or into your eyes, thoroughly rinse the affected part of your body immediately with plenty of water.
- ▷ Change soiled clothing immediately.
- ▷ See a doctor immediately in the event of an allergic reaction.
- ▷ If sealant is swallowed, thoroughly rinse out the mouth without delay and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting. See a doctor immediately.



- A - Filler bottle
- B - Filler hose
- C - Filler hose plug
- D - Valve turner
- E - Valve insert
- F - Tire valve

Filling in sealant

1. Leave the object that caused the puncture in the tire.
2. Remove sealant and the enclosed sticker from the luggage compartment.
3. Adhere the sticker in the driver's field of vision.
4. Shake filler bottle **A**.
5. Screw filler hose **B** onto the filler bottle. The filler bottle is now open.
6. Unscrew valve cap from the tire valve **F**.
7. Remove valve insert **E** from the tire valve with valve turner **D**.
Keep the valve insert in a clean, dry place.
8. Remove plug **C** from the filler hose **B**.
9. Push filler hose onto the tire valve.

10. Hold the filler bottle higher than the level of the tire valve and squeeze it forcefully until the bottle is completely emptied into the tire.

11. Pull filler hose off the tire valve.

12. Screw the valve insert firmly into the tire valve using the valve turner.

13. Inflate the tire.

Set the prescribed tire pressure.

Information on tire pressure can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual: Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.

14. Screw valve cap onto the tire valve.

15. After driving for approx. 10 minutes, check the tire pressure.

If the tire pressure is less than 22 psi / 1.5 bar / 150 kPa, do not continue driving.

If a value of more than 22 psi / 1.5 bar / 150 kPa is indicated, correct the pressure to the prescribed value.

16. Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▷ Also follow the separate operating instructions for the tire sealing compound.



Information

- ▷ On vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring, the settings for Tire Pressure Monitoring must be updated on the multi-purpose display after filling the tire with sealant:

Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING (TPM)" on page 119.

After drying, any sealant that emerges can be peeled off like a film.

⚠ DANGER

Damaged Tires

Damaged tires could burst causing loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Have the tire replaced by a specialist workshop as soon as possible.
- ▷ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▷ Observe maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- ▷ Always observe the safety and operating instructions, which can be found in the separate operating instructions for the sealant and on the compressor.

Raising vehicle with the jack

WARNING Jacking Hazards

If the vehicle is not secured, or incorrectly secured, during a wheel change, it could move unexpectedly or fall from the car jack.

- ▷ Make sure that no one is in the vehicle when jacking up and changing a wheel.
- ▷ Never jack up the vehicle when it is parked on a surface that slopes up, down or to the side.
- ▷ Only use the jack to raise the car for wheel changing.
- ▷ Always place the vehicle on solid supports if work has to be carried out under the vehicle. The car jack is not suitable for this.

WARNING Switching Off Leveling System

Whenever it is necessary to raise the vehicle using the jack:

- ▷ Manually set normal level and then switch off the leveling system.
Please see the chapter "RAISING THE VEHICLE WITH THE JACK" on page 197.

NOTICE

Danger of injury and damage if the vehicle is not secured.

The vehicle could roll away.

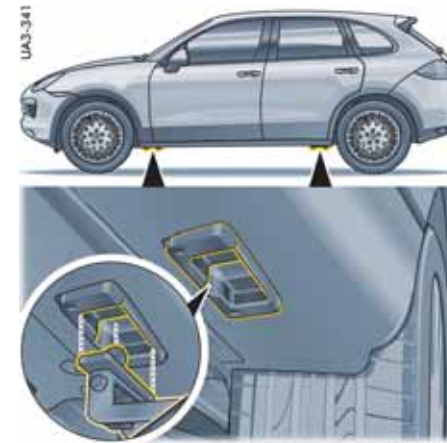
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling. To do this:
Please see the chapter "SECURING THE VEHICLE AGAINST ROLLING" on page 276.



Information

The jacking point for the jack on the vehicle must be free of dirt.

1. Slightly loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel to be changed.
2. Only attach the jack at the jacking points provided. The foot of the jack must make contact over its entire area and must be positioned directly below the head piece. Use a suitable support surface if necessary.



Jacking points for lifting platform, trolley jack or standard jack

3. Hold the jack tightly and wind it up until its head fits into the jacking point on the vehicle. When positioning the jack, make sure that the head of the jack is seated correctly in the cut-out of the jacking point (**illustration**).
4. Only jack vehicle up until only the wheel to be changed is completely off the ground.
5. After lowering the vehicle, remove the jack.



UA1-247

Changing a wheel

1. Remove 1 or 2 wheel bolts (see corresponding figure).

NOTICE

Risk of damage to brake disks.

- ▷ Always screw in the assembly aids when changing a wheel.



UA1-185

Screw in **one** assembly aid on vehicles **without** PCCB

2. Screw in assembly aids instead of wheel bolts.



UA1-186

Screw in **two** assembly aids on vehicles **with** PCCB

3. Remove the remaining wheel bolts.
For more information on wheel bolts:
Please see the chapter "WHEEL BOLTS" on page 275.
4. Take the wheel off and put a new wheel on.
5. Insert wheel bolts and tighten by hand.
6. Remove assembly aids and screw in remaining wheel bolts.
Initially tighten bolts only slightly in diagonally opposite sequence so that the wheel is centered.
7. Inflate the tire if necessary.
Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.
8. Lower the vehicle fully and remove the jack.
9. Tighten wheel bolts in diagonally opposite sequence.

10. Immediately after changing a wheel, use a torque wrench to check the prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts (118 ftlb. (160 Nm)).



Information

- ▷ On vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring, the settings on the multi-purpose display must be updated after the wheel change: Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING (TPM)" on page 119.

Changing a wheel and removing 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers

⚠ WARNING

Collapsible Spare Spacer Removal

- ▷ Always remove 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers before fitting the collapsible spare wheel because otherwise the wheel cannot be fitted correctly.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the wheel housings if the spacers on the rear axle are not removed before fitting snow chains.

- ▷ 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers must always be removed from the rear axle when snow chains are to be fitted.
- ▷ Remove spacers if snow chains or a collapsible spare wheel are fitted.
- ▷ It is not necessary to use the assembly aids to fit an equivalent wheel or spare wheel.
- ▷ For information on spacers: Please see the chapter "SPACERS" on page 274.

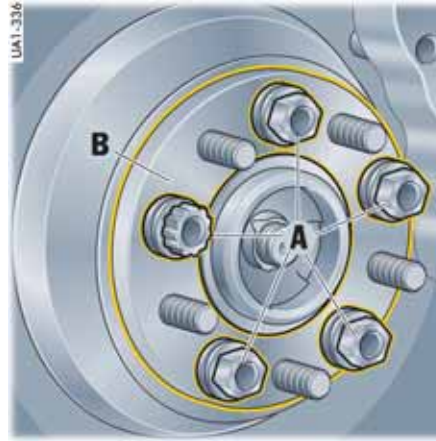


Puller

1. Remove the cap from the middle of the wheel using the puller.



2. Remove wheel nuts.



3. Unscrew the wheel bolts **A**, which secure the spacer **B**.
4. Remove the spacer **B**.
5. Screw in assembly aid instead of wheel bolt.
6. Fit the wheel.
7. Secure the wheel using the wheel bolts **A**, which were used to secure the spacer **B**. Insert wheel bolts and tighten by hand. Remove assembly aid and screw in remaining wheel bolt. Initially tighten bolts only slightly in diagonally opposite sequence so that the wheel is centered.

8. Inflate the tire if necessary. Information on tire pressure can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual: Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.
9. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
10. Tighten wheel bolts in diagonally opposite sequence.
11. **Immediately after changing a wheel, use a torque wrench to check the prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts (118 ftlb. (160 Nm)).**

i Information

- ▷ Spacer, steel nuts and plastic covers should be stored together.
- ▷ On vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring, the settings on the multi-purpose display must be updated after the wheel change: Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING (TPM)" on page 119.

Fitting 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers

1. Remove wheel.
2. Fit the spacer with the wheel bolts **A** used to fasten the wheel.
Tightening torque: **118 ftlb. (160 Nm)**
3. Fit wheel.
To do this, use the original wheel nuts for securing the wheels.
Tightening torque: **118 ftlb. (160 Nm)**
Place plastic covers on the steel nuts.



Information

There is no anti-theft protection for the wheel nuts.

Collapsible spare wheel

The collapsible spare wheel is located under the loadspace floor in the luggage compartment.

On vehicles with 0.67 in. (17 mm) spacers:

- ▷ Before fitting a collapsible spare wheel on the **rear axle** always remove the corresponding spacer.

For information on spacers:

Please see the chapter "SPACERS" on page 274.

For information on removing the spacers:

Please see the chapter "CHANGING A WHEEL AND REMOVING 0.67 IN. (17 MM) SPACERS" on page 281.



1. Unscrew the screw and take out the collapsible spare wheel.
2. Mount the collapsible spare wheel on the vehicle before inflating it. Leave the vehicle jacked up.
For information on wheel changing:
Please see the chapter "CHANGING WHEELS" on page 275.
3. Inflate the tire.
Information on tire pressure can be found under "Technical data" in this Owner's Manual:
Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.

⚠ WARNING

Collapsible Spare Hazards

The use of a collapsible spare can impair driving behavior.

- ▷ The collapsible spare wheel must be used only over short distances in cases of emergency. For safety reasons, replace the tires **before** the wear indicators appear (webs in the tire grooves, 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) high).
- ▷ Never deactivate the Porsche Stability Management (PSM) system.
- ▷ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds. The permitted top speed is **50 mph (80 km/h)** and must not be exceeded due to the changed vehicle properties and because of wear.
The tread depth of the spare wheel is subject to the same laws as the original tires.
- ▷ Do not use a collapsible spare wheel from a different vehicle type.
- ▷ Do not fit the collapsible spare wheel from your vehicle on a different vehicle.
- ▷ Only fit **one** collapsible spare wheel on the vehicle at any time.
- ▷ On vehicles with air suspension, use the tire filling connection only to inflate the collapsible spare wheel.
- ▷ To avoid damage, do not use automatic car washes when the spare wheel is installed.

After using the collapsible spare wheel

- ▷ Release air by unscrewing the valve insert.



Information

- The tire will revert to its original shape only after several hours. Only then can it be stowed in the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment.

- The collapsible spare wheel must be repaired only by the manufacturer.
- ▷ If there is a fault on the collapsible spare wheel:
Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

Spare wheel

⚠ WARNING Full-Size Spare Hazards

The wheel size, tire size and tire quality of the spare wheel and normal wheel can differ. If a spare wheel is used that differs from the normal tires used, this may impair the driving behavior.

- ▷ The spare wheel must be used only over short distances in cases of emergency.
For safety reasons, replace the tires **before** the wear indicators appear (webs in the tire grooves, 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) high).
- ▷ Never deactivate the Porsche Stability Management (PSM) system.
- ▷ If the tire on the spare wheel is more than 4 years old, the spare wheel should be used only in the event of a flat tire.
- ▷ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.

The maximum permitted speed is **50 mph (80 km/h)** if the fitted spare wheel differs from the other three wheels on the vehicle. This maximum speed must not be exceeded because of altered driving characteristics and for reasons of wear.

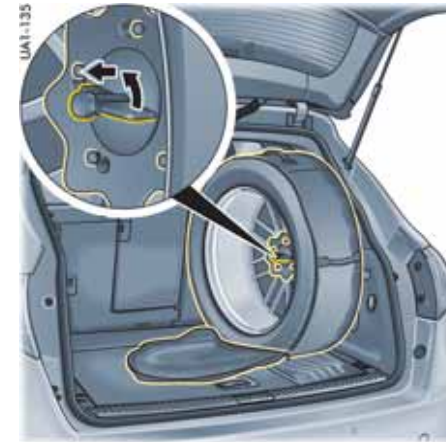


Removing spare wheel from bracket

⚠ CAUTION Removing Spare Tire

- ▷ Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel bracket with care. The wheel is very heavy (up to approx. 77 lbs. (35 kg)).

1. Open the wheel cover (zip).



2. Unscrew the wheel holder.
3. Take the wheel out of the loadspace.

Fitting spare wheel on holder

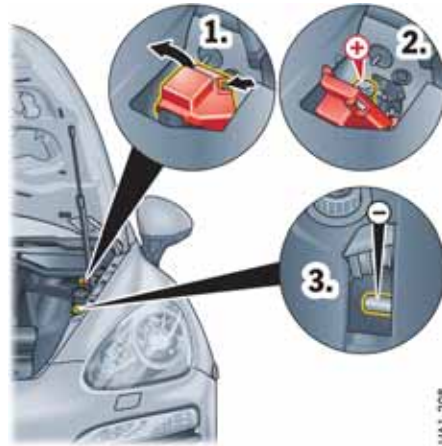
1. Put the wheel into the wheel cover and close the zip.
2. Lift the wheel and wheel cover into position.
3. Open the zip and screw on the wheel holder.

Inflating Tires

The compressor with pressure gauge is located under the loadspace floor at the right in the luggage compartment.

▷ Please read the operating instructions on the compressor.

1. Screw the compressor's filler hose onto the tire valve.
2. Remove the cover of the engine compartment lid.



+ = Positive terminal for jump-lead starting
- = Ground point for jump-lead starting

3. Connect clips of the compressor to the jump-lead starting terminals.
Always observe the sequence below:
 - Open the cap on the positive terminal for jump-lead starting (+).
 - Connect positive lead (red) to the positive terminal for jump-lead starting (+).
 - Connect negative lead (black) to the negative terminal for jump-lead starting (-).

⚠ CAUTION Inflating Tires

The compressor's filler hose can become hot during the inflation process.

▷ Wear gloves.

4. Switch on compressor.
The required inflation pressure will be reached after a few minutes.
5. Switch off compressor.
6. Check inflation pressure with the pressure gauge. Then reduce tire pressure or add more air if necessary.
Check the inflation pressure again.
7. Unscrew the compressor's filling hose.

Reducing inflation pressure

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Open air bleed screw on the filling hose until the correct inflation pressure is achieved.

Electrical System

In order to avoid damage and faults in electrical or electronic systems, electrical accessories should be installed at your authorized Porsche dealer.

- ▷ Use only accessories approved by Porsche.

WARNING

Changing Fuses

Replacing fuses or relays with the engine running or the ignition on could cause electrical shock.

- ▷ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on page 290.

Relays

Relays should be checked or changed only at an authorized workshop.

Sockets

Electrical accessories can be connected to the 12 V sockets.

Sockets are located in the following positions, depending on vehicle equipment:

- under the glove box
- in the front cupholder
- in the storage tray in the center console (right)
- in the loadspace (left)
- in the rear center console



Information

- The maximum electrical load of a socket is 20 A, but only if no other loads are switched on. Do not exceed 10 A per socket if several loads are operating simultaneously.
- The sockets and thus the connected electrical accessories function even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is removed. If the engine is not running and the accessories are switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. The power supply is interrupted after 30 minutes to protect the vehicle battery.
- If the load is to be switched on again, the ignition must be switched on once.

Changing fuses

In order to prevent damage to the electrical system due to short circuits and overloads, the individual circuits are protected by fuses.

One fuse box is in the engine compartment.

Two additional fuse boxes are located in the outer ends of the dashboard.

1. Switch off the load with the defective fuse. Before replacing a fuse, switch off all electrical consumers and remove the ignition key.
2. Open the fuse box cover.
3. Remove the corresponding fuse from its slot in order to check it using the plastic gripper. A blown fuse can be identified by the melted metal strip.

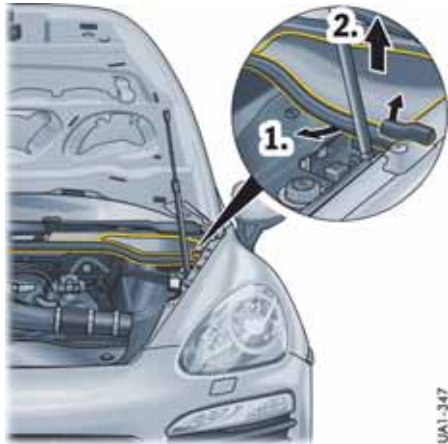
4. Replace only with fuses of the same rating.

We recommend that you use genuine Porsche fuses for replacement.



Information

- ▷ If a fuse blows repeatedly, please consult an authorized Porsche dealer immediately, so that the short circuit can be located and corrected.
- ▷ Never try to "repair" fuses: you may cause serious damage to other parts of the electrical system.
- ▷ Use the plastic gripper when replacing the fuses. This can be found in the fuse box cover on the dashboard.
- ▷ Spare fuses can be found in both fuse box covers on the dashboard (left: 7.5 and 10 A; right: 20 and 25 A).

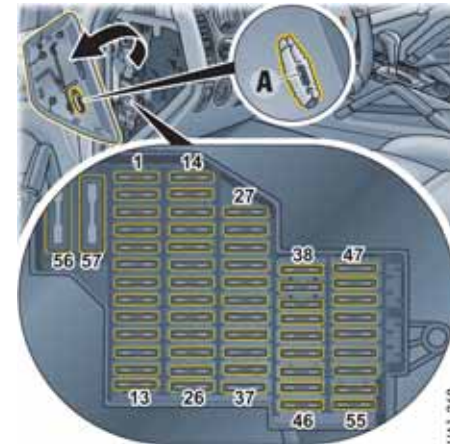


Opening fuse-box lid in engine compartment

1. Remove cover.



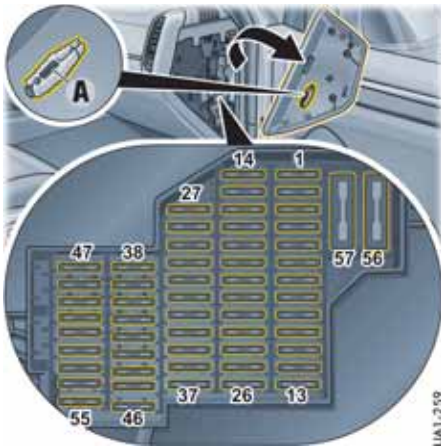
2. Turn twist-locks of the fuse-box lid 90° anti-clockwise with a screwdriver and remove the lid.



Fuse box on left side of dashboard

Opening fuse box cover at the left and right of the dashboard

1. Carefully lever off the plastic cover with a screwdriver and remove it.
2. Carefully remove the fuses using the plastic gripper.



Fuse box on right side of dashboard

Fuse box on left side of dashboard

| No. | Designation | A |
|-----|---|-----|
| 1 | Seat memory control unit, seat adjustment switch for left seat | 25 |
| 2 | Parking heater control unit | 30 |
| 3 | Relay for two-tone horn | 15 |
| 4 | Front wiper motor | 30 |
| 5 | Motor for sliding/lifting roof, Panorama roof system | 30 |
| 7 | Steering column adjustment control unit | 15 |
| 8 | Tire Pressure Monitoring control unit, chassis control switch | 5 |
| 9 | Windshield heating, light switch, rain sensor, light sensor | 5 |
| 10 | Motor for roll-up sunblind for Panorama roof system | 30 |
| 13 | Subwoofer (Bose/Burmester) | 30 |
| 14 | BCM1 | 30 |
| 16 | Central locking control unit/power windows, driver's door | 30 |
| 17 | Engine compartment lid contact switch, backup horn | 5 |
| 18 | BCM1 | 30 |
| 19 | V6/V8: Engine control unit | 5 |
| 20 | BCM1 | 30 |
| 21 | V8 engine: Circulating pump, air conditioning/parking heater Non-V8 engine: Residual heat circulating pump relay | 10 |
| 22 | BCM1 | 30 |
| 23 | CAN network gateway/diagnosis, electronic ignition lock, electric steering column lock | 7.5 |
| 24 | Windshield heating, left | 30 |
| 25 | Windshield heating, right | 30 |
| 26 | Hybrid engine: Battery fan | 15 |
| 27 | Hybrid engine: Battery management system, NT display relay, level control unit | 5 |
| 28 | Hybrid engine: Power electronics | 5 |
| 29 | Hybrid engine: Spindle actuator | 5 |

| No. | Designation | A |
|-----|--|-----|
| 30 | Hybrid engine: Single Power Pack (hydraulic pump), steering | 5 |
| 32 | Hybrid engine: Air-conditioning compressor | 15 |
| 33 | Central locking control unit/power windows, rear left door | 30 |
| 36 | EPB, Autohold switch | 5 |
| 37 | Hybrid engine: Battery fan | 15 |
| 38 | Hybrid engine: Power electronics, battery fan relay | 5 |
| 39 | Hybrid engine: Spindle actuator | 30 |
| 40 | Hybrid engine: Battery fan relay | 30 |
| 41 | Hybrid engine: Battery management system | 10 |
| 42 | Interior mirror | 5 |
| 43 | Headlights (halogen) | 7.5 |
| 44 | Seat ventilation | 5 |
| 46 | Lane Change Assist (LCA) | 5 |
| 47 | CAN network gateway/diagnostic socket, garage door opener, ParkAssist, Bluetooth handset charging tray, mobile phone preparation | 5 |
| 48 | Starter relay, clutch sensor (EPB), refrigerant pressure sensor V6 engine: Mass air flow sensor | 10 |
| 49 | ACC radar sensor | 7.5 |
| 52 | Rear wiper motor | 15 |
| 53 | Steering column switching module, left tail light | 5 |
| 54 | Xenon headlights, left | 25 |
| 56 | Leveling system compressor relay | 40 |
| 57 | Blower regulator for front air conditioning | 40 |

Fuse box in right side of dashboard

| No. | Designation | A |
|-----|---|----|
| 1 | PDCC control unit | 10 |
| 2 | PASM control unit | 15 |
| 3 | Rear differential lock control unit | 10 |
| 4 | Rear differential lock control unit | 30 |
| 5 | Pivot motor control unit, trailer hitch, brake booster preparation, trailer hitch preparation | 25 |
| 6 | TV tuner, Rear Seat Entertainment | 10 |
| 7 | Trailer hitch control unit | 15 |
| 8 | Trailer hitch control unit | 15 |
| 9 | Central locking control unit/power windows, rear right door | 30 |
| 10 | Luggage compartment light | 15 |
| 11 | Central locking control unit/power windows, passenger's door | 30 |
| 12 | HangOn actuator | 30 |
| 14 | Airbag control unit, seat occupancy detection | 10 |
| 16 | PSM control unit, EPB, PDCC | 5 |
| 17 | Xenon headlights, right | 25 |
| 19 | Transmission control unit/transmission pre-wiring | 5 |
| 20 | Seat memory control unit, seat adjustment switch for right seat | 20 |
| 21 | Seat heating, rear | 25 |
| 22 | Seat heating, front | 25 |
| 23 | Powerlift tailgate control unit | 25 |
| 26 | Heated rear window | 30 |
| 28 | Transmission control unit (w/o Start/Stop), transmission oil pump | 20 |
| 29 | PSM control unit/PSM valves | 30 |
| 30 | HangOn actuator | 5 |
| 31 | BCM2 | 20 |
| 32 | Blower regulator for rear air conditioning | 30 |
| 33 | BCM2 | 15 |
| 34 | BCM2 | 15 |
| 35 | Vehicle Tracking System control unit | 5 |
| 36 | BCM2 | 20 |

| No. | Designation | A |
|-----|--|----|
| 38 | Cigarette lighter, storage tray socket, socket under glove box | 15 |
| 39 | Rear sockets, socket in luggage compartment | 15 |
| 40 | Trailer hitch control unit | 15 |
| 42 | Trailer hitch control unit | 5 |
| 43 | Rear differential lock control unit, HangOn actuator | 10 |
| 44 | Air conditioning sun sensor/air quality sensor, right tail light | 5 |
| 45 | DC/DC converter (Start/Stop) | 30 |
| 46 | DC/DC converter (Start/Stop) | 30 |
| 50 | Front air conditioning, rear air conditioning control panel | 10 |
| 51 | PCM 3.1, radio | 10 |
| 52 | Instrument cluster | 5 |
| 53 | Steering column switching module/ heated steering wheel, rearview camera control unit, compass display | 10 |
| 54 | Roof console | 10 |
| 56 | PSM control unit/PSM pump | 40 |
| 57 | EPB control unit | 40 |

Fuse and relay carriers in engine compartment

| No. | Fuse carrier A | A |
|-----|--|----|
| 1 | V6/V8: Starter relay | 40 |
| 3 | V6/V8 engine: SLP relay | 40 |
| 4 | Hybrid engine: Vacuum pump relay | 30 |
| 7 | V8 engine: Rod ignition coil | 15 |
| | V6 engine: Rod ignition coils | 20 |
| 8 | V8 engine: Tank vent valve, boost pressure valve, diverter valve, intake pipe switchover valve, crankcase de-icer | 15 |
| | V6 engine: Water pump charge-air cooler | 10 |
| 9 | V8 engine: Engine control unit, flow control valve | 20 |
| | V6/hybrid engine: Engine control unit | 30 |
| 10 | V8 engine: Tank leakage diagnosis, secondary air pump relay, hall sensor, oil-level sensor V6 engine: Tank leakage diagnosis Hybrid engine: Vacuum pump, secondary air pump relay, tank leakage diagnosis pump All engines: Radiator fan control unit, brake pedal sensor | 10 |
| 11 | V8 engine: Valve lift adjuster, camshaft controller, map thermostat | 15 |
| | V6 engine: PCV heating, heated point of entry, temperature/oil level sensor | 10 |
| 12 | V6 engine: Intake pipe switching valve, tank vent valve, valve for water pump with ON/OFF control, cooling water switching valve, camshaft adjustment, charge motion flap | 10 |
| 13 | Fuel pump control unit (ECKSM) | 25 |
| 14 | V6 engine: Camshaft control, flow control valve/high-pressure fuel pump | 10 |
| | Hybrid engine: Control valve-regulated oil pump, flow control valve for high-pressure pump, tank vent valve, secondary air valve, main water pump valve, E-machine bypass valve | 15 |

| No. | Fuse carrier A | A |
|-----|---|----|
| 15 | All engines: Main relay Hybrid engine: Engine control unit | 10 |
| 16 | V6 engine: Electric water pump | 10 |
| 17 | Oxygen sensor upstream of catalytic converter | 15 |
| 18 | Oxygen sensor downstream of catalytic converter | 10 |

Battery

DANGER Electric Shock

- ▷ Observe all warning notes on the battery.
- ▷ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▷ Do not lay tools or other metal objects on the battery as they could cause a short circuit across the battery terminal.

DANGER Battery Explosion Hazard

- ▷ Charge battery in a well ventilated area.
- ▷ Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- ▷ Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electrical spark or a lit cigarette, since they can ignite hydrogen gas from the battery.

DANGER Static Electricity

- ▷ Do not wipe the battery with a dry cloth.
- ▷ Before touching the battery, discharge any static electricity by touching the vehicle.

WARNING Chemical Exposure

- ▷ After handling battery, always protect your skin and remove surface chemicals by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

WARNING Battery Acid and Electrolyte Exposure

- ▷ Wear eye protection.
- ▷ Do not allow battery acid to come in contact with your skin or eyes.
- ▷ If you get electrolyte, which is an acid, in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the fabric, metal or paint from battery acid or electrolyte.

- ▷ Do not allow battery acid to come in contact with fabric or painted surfaces.
- ▷ Spilled electrolyte must be rinsed off at once with a solution of baking soda and water to neutralize the acid.

The battery is located in the battery box under the left front seat.

- ▷ Have the battery removed and installed only by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Charge state

A well-charged battery prevents starting problems and has a longer service life.

In order to avoid unintentional battery discharge:

- ▷ Switch off unnecessary electrical loads in city traffic, on short trips or in a line of traffic.
- ▷ Always remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle or switch off the ignition on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
- ▷ Avoid using the Porsche Communication Management system and the audio system when the engine is not running.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "CHARGING THE BATTERY" on page 293.

Information

In the cold season in particular or if the vehicle is used primarily for short distances, it may be necessary to recharge the battery from time to time.

Battery care

- ▷ Ensure that battery is securely mounted.
- ▷ Keep battery surface clean and dry.
- ▷ Keep terminals and connections clean. Corrosion can be prevented by coating the terminals and connections with petroleum jelly or silicone spray.
- ▷ Ensure that terminal clamps and the vent hose are firmly secured.

Winter driving

The ability of the battery to deliver and store power decreases at low outside temperatures. Moreover, the battery is more heavily loaded in the winter months, e.g. by the heated rear window, the more frequent use of additional lights, the blower and the windshield wipers, etc.

- ▷ Have the charge state of the battery checked at your authorized Porsche dealer before winter begins.

Information

Keep the battery fully charged to prevent it from freezing.

A flat battery can freeze even at 23 °F (-5 °C), but a fully charged one only freezes at -40 °F (-40 °C).

- ▷ If the battery is frozen, thaw it out before connecting jumper cables.

Vehicle storage

If the vehicle is left for long periods in the garage or workshop, the doors and lids should be closed.

- ▷ Remove the ignition key and, if necessary, disconnect the battery.

Information

- ▷ When the battery is disconnected, the alarm system ceases to function. If the vehicle was locked before the battery was disconnected, the alarm will be triggered when the battery is reconnected. To deactivate the alarm system:
 - ▷ Lock the vehicle and unlock it again.

Alarm system, central locking

- ▷ The status of the central locking and alarm system does not change when you disconnect the battery.

Information

Even if you put your vehicle out of operation, the battery still discharges.

- ▷ The battery must be charged, i.e. connected to a charger, approximately every 6 weeks in order to preserve battery function.
- ▷ Store a battery that has been removed in a dark, cool place that is not exposed to frost.

Replacing the battery

The battery is subject to normal wear: its service life depends heavily on the care you give it, climatic conditions and the conditions of use (distances, loads).

It is not possible to use the details on the battery case to determine a comparable battery that meets all the specific requirements of Porsche.

- ▷ Have the battery removed and installed only by your authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Only use an original Porsche battery, with the correct part number, as a replacement. Only this battery meets the specific requirements of the vehicle.
- ▷ After you install a new battery, it must be initialised in the control unit. Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Please observe the disposal instructions for batteries.

Putting vehicle into operation

After the battery is connected or after a **fully discharged** battery is charged, the PSM warning light lights up on the instrument panel and a message appears on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel to indicate a fault.

This fault can be corrected with a few simple steps:

1. Start the engine.
To do this, turn the ignition key or the control unit (on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive) to ignition lock position **2 twice**.
2. With the vehicle stationary, perform a few steering movements to the left and right and then drive a short distance in a straight line until the PSM warning light goes out and the message is erased from the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.
3. If the warnings do **not** disappear, then:
Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer and have the fault corrected.
4. After the warnings go out:
Stop the vehicle in a suitable place.
5. Store the end position for the power windows.
To do this:
Please see the chapter "STORING END POSITION OF THE DOOR WINDOWS AFTER CONNECTING THE VEHICLE BATTERY" on page 82.
6. Teach tires on vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring. To do this:
Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING (TPM)" on page 119.

7. Store end position on vehicles with a sliding/lifting roof. To do this:
Please see the chapter "STORING END POSITION OF THE SLIDING/LIFTING ROOF" on page 84.
Store end position on vehicles with a Panorama roof system. To do this:
Please see the chapter "STORING END POSITION OF THE PANORAMA ROOF SYSTEM" on page 86.

External Power Supply, Emergency Starting with Jumper Cables

If the battery is flat, the battery of another vehicle can be used for starting or as an external power supply with the help of jumper cables.

Both batteries must be 12 V batteries.

The capacity (Ampere hour, Ah) of the donor battery must not be substantially less than that of the flat battery.

The flat battery must be connected correctly to the vehicle's electrical system.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on page 290.

WARNING

Jumper Cable Hazards

- ▷ Use only standard jumper cables with sufficient cross section and completely insulated alligator clips. Follow the instructions provided by the jumper cable manufacturer.
- ▷ Route the jumper cables so that they cannot be caught by moving parts in the engine compartment.
The jumper cables must be long enough so that neither vehicles nor cables touch another.
- ▷ The vehicles must not touch, otherwise current might flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- ▷ Ensure that tools or conductive jewelry (rings, chains, watch straps) do not come into contact with the positive jumper cable, the positive battery post or live parts of the vehicle.
- ▷ Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the alternator.

⚠ WARNING Battery Acid Leakage

- ▷ Do not lean over the battery due to danger of chemical burns from leaking acid.

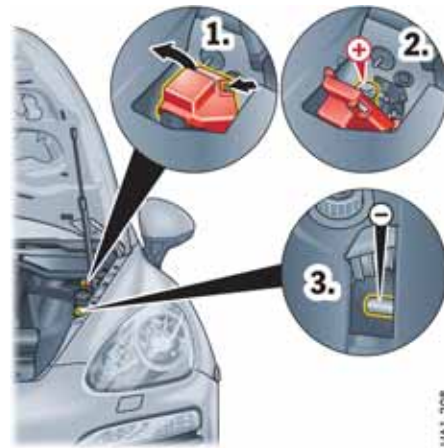
⚠ DANGER Battery Charging and Jumping Hazards

- ▷ Improper use of booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- ▷ Keep sources of ignition away from the battery, e.g. naked flame, burning cigarettes or sparks due to cable contact.
- ▷ Before connecting jumper cables, it is essential to thaw out a frozen battery.

External power supply/emergency starting with jumper cables

Always observe the sequence below:

1. Open the cap on the positive terminal for jump starting (+).
2. Attach the positive lead first to the positive terminal for jump starting (+), then to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
3. Connect the negative lead first to the negative terminal of the donor battery, then to the ground point for jump starting (-).



+ = Positive terminal for jump starting
- = Ground point for jump starting

4. Leave the engine of the donor vehicle running at a higher engine speed.
5. Start the engine.
An attempted start using jumper cables should not last more than 15 seconds. Then wait for at least one minute.
6. Disconnect the negative jumper cable from the ground point for jump starting (-) first, then from the negative terminal of the donor battery.
7. Disconnect the positive jumper cable from the positive terminal of the donor battery first, then from the positive terminal for jump starting (+).
8. Close the cap on the positive terminal for jump starting (+).

Charging the battery

Automotive batteries lose their efficiency when not in use. The charge available in your battery can be measured with a battery hydrometer. We recommend that the battery voltage be tested by your authorized Porsche dealer who has the appropriate equipment.

If the car is not driven for prolonged periods, the battery must be charged at least every 6 weeks. A discharged battery allows rapid formation of sulfates, leading to premature deterioration of the plates.

⚠ DANGER Battery Explosion Hazards

- ▷ Charge battery in a well ventilated area due to hydrogen gas explosion risk.
- ▷ Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.

⚠ CAUTION Eye or Skin Contact

- ▷ If you get electrolyte, which is an acid, in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes.

Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you about a suitable charger.

- ▷ Always observe the instructions provided by the charger manufacturer.
- ▷ When charging the battery, ensure adequate ventilation.

1. Connect the charger to the jump starting terminals.
Only plug into the mains and switch the charger on when it is connected up correctly.
2. Switch on the charger.
3. After charging the battery, first switch off the charger and then disconnect it.
4. Please see the chapter "PUTTING VEHICLE INTO OPERATION" on page 292.

Changing the Remote Control Battery



Information

- ▷ Please observe the regulations for disposing of batteries.

Car key

If the battery in the remote control becomes too weak, the message "Replace ignition key battery" will appear on the multi-purpose display of the instrument panel.

The battery should be changed in this case.



Changing battery

1. Remove the emergency key.
2. Lever off the cover on the back of the key housing using a small screwdriver.
3. Change the battery (check polarity).
4. Re-fit cover and press together firmly.
5. Insert the emergency key.

UA3-293

Replacing Bulbs



WARNING Headlight High Voltage Hazard

The headlights are under high voltage when installed.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care when working close to the headlights.

NOTICE

Risk of short circuit.

- ▷ Always switch off the relevant load when changing bulbs.

NOTICE

Risk of damage.

Bulbs of a high wattage can damage the housing.

- ▷ Only use the bulbs specified in the bulb chart.
- ▷ Bulbs must be clean and free from oil, grease or fingerprints.
- ▷ Never touch bulbs with your bare hands. Use a cloth or soft paper when replacing bulbs.
- ▷ Always carry spare bulbs with you. In certain countries, it is mandatory to carry spare bulbs.

Headlights

NOTICE

Risk of damage to headlights due to abrasion and excessive temperatures.

- ▷ Do not affix any coverings (e.g. "stone guards" or film) close to the headlights.
- ▷ Use soapy water only to clean light lenses and plastic headlight lenses. In no case may chemical cleaners or other volatile cleaning fluids be used.
- ▷ To prevent scratches, do not rub with a dry or merely moist cloth, tissue or insect sponges.



Information

The headlights can mist up due to temperature and humidity.

- ▷ To ensure optimum ventilation, do not cover the gap between headlight and body.



UA1-267



UA1-268

Removing headlights

1. Switch off the ignition and remove the ignition key, or pull out the control unit on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
2. Open the engine compartment lid.
3. Take a socket wrench out of the tool kit.
4. Place the socket wrench on the release and turn in direction of arrow until you feel and hear the headlight being released.
5. Pull headlight approx. 4 in. (10 cm) forward out of the fender.
6. Press back the release tab of the connector and pull off connector.
7. Pull headlight out completely.

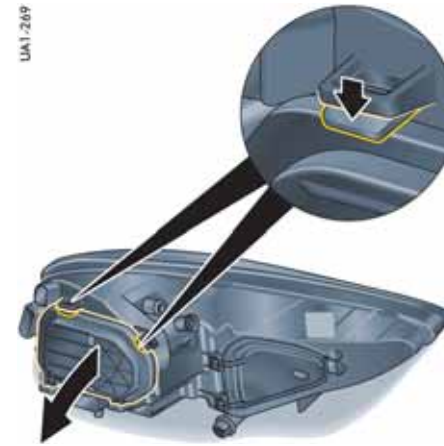


Installing headlights

1. Insert headlight into the guide rails, attach the connector and then slide the headlight fully into the fender.



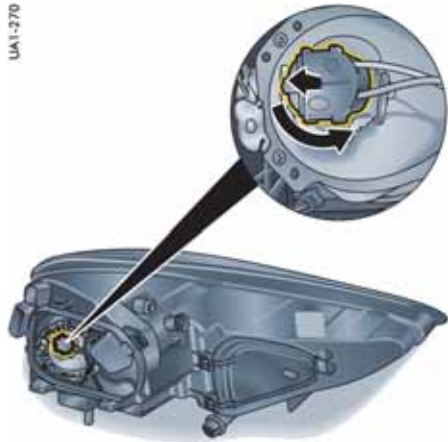
2. Press the headlight to the rear and simultaneously turn the socket wrench in direction of arrow. You should feel and hear the headlight locking mechanism engage.
3. Check that the headlight is seated securely.
4. Remove the socket wrench and place it in the tool kit.
5. Close the engine compartment lid.



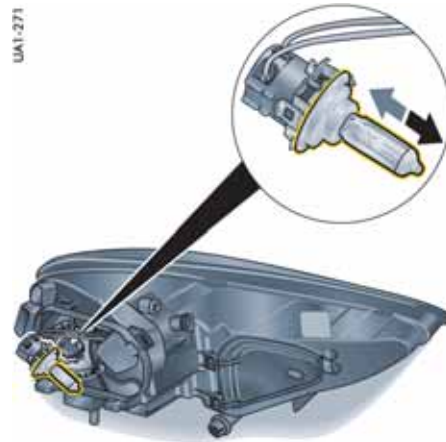
Halogen headlights

Changing bulb (H7) for low beam/high beam headlight

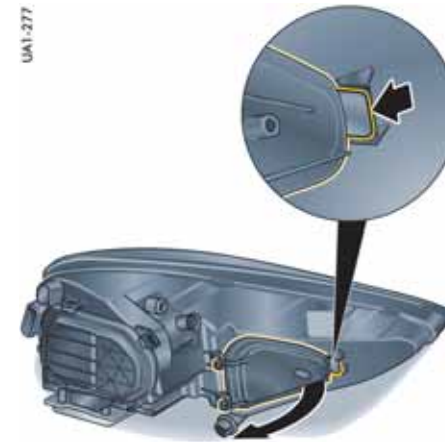
1. Remove the headlight. Please see the chapter "REMOVING HEADLIGHTS" on page 295.
2. Press both release tabs down and remove the cover.



3. Turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise and remove it.



4. Remove defective bulb and replace it.
5. Insert bulb socket and turn in clockwise direction. Make sure that the bulb is installed in the correct position.
6. Fit cover on headlight. Both release tabs must be fully engaged.
7. Install the headlight. Please see the chapter "INSTALLING HEADLIGHTS" on page 296.
8. Check operation of bulbs.

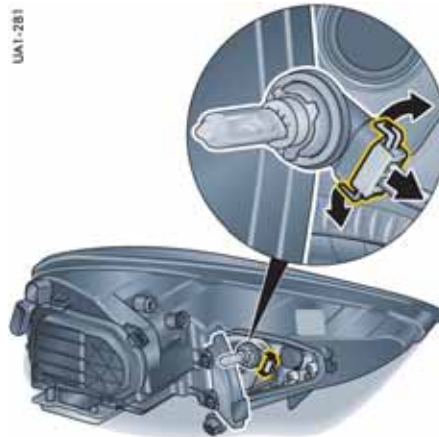


Changing bulb for static cornering light (H11)

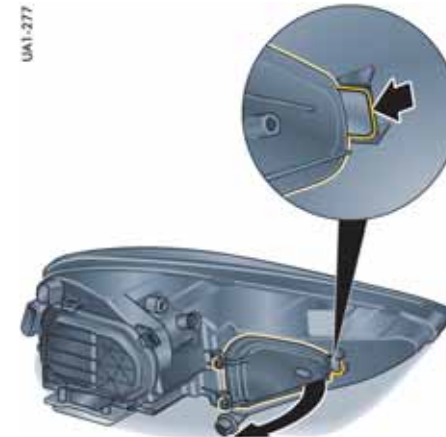
1. Remove the headlight. Please see the chapter "REMOVING HEADLIGHTS" on page 295.
2. Press the release tab and open the cover.



3. Turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise and remove it.

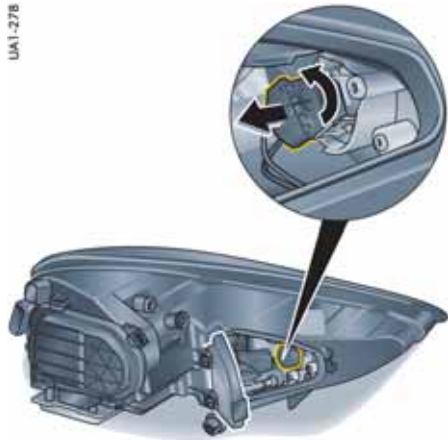


4. Pull both release tabs on the connector apart, and pull connector out of bulb socket.
5. Replace defective bulb.
Make sure that the bulb is installed in the correct position.
6. Close cover on headlight.
The release tab must engage fully.
7. Install the headlight.
Please see the chapter "INSTALLING HEADLIGHTS" on page 296.
8. Check operation of bulbs.

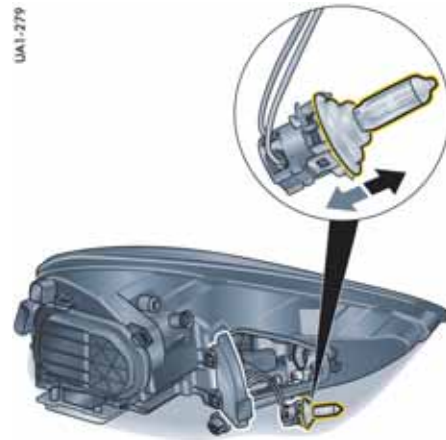


Changing bulb (H7) for auxiliary high-beam headlight

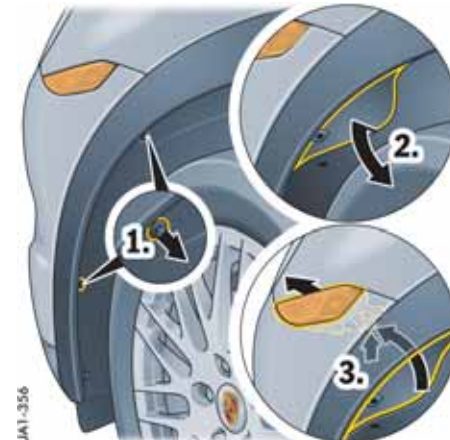
1. Remove the headlight.
Please see the chapter "REMOVING HEADLIGHTS" on page 295.
2. Press the release tab and open the cover.



- 3.** Turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise and remove it.



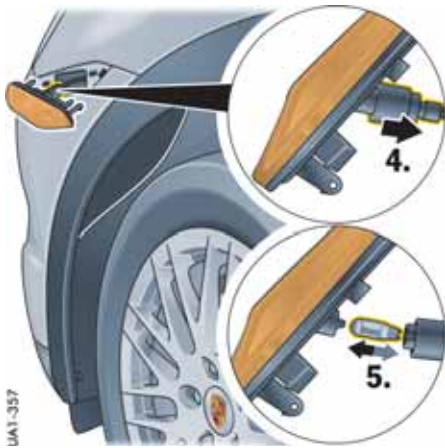
- 4.** Remove defective bulb and replace it.
- 5.** Insert bulb socket and turn in clockwise direction.
Make sure that the bulb is installed in the correct position.
- 6.** Close cover on headlight.
The release tab must engage fully.
- 7.** Install the headlight.
Please see the chapter "INSTALLING HEADLIGHTS" on page 296.
- 8.** Check operation of bulbs.



Side marker light

Changing bulb (W5W)

- 1.** Remove screws in the wheel housing trim using a Torx screwdriver.
- 2.** Open the trim panel.
- 3.** Release the safety clip by pressing from the rear with a screwdriver and press the light out of the wheel housing area from behind.



UA1-357

4. Pull the bulb socket straight out.
5. Remove defective bulb and replace it.
6. Press the bulb socket straight in as far as it will go and check that the marking on the bulb socket is horizontal.
7. Check operation of bulb.



UA1-190

License plate lights

Changing bulb (W5W)

1. Press the tab and remove the light unit.
2. Turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove defective bulb and replace it.
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
5. Clip the light unit back in again.
6. Check operation of bulb.

Changing light-emitting diodes and long-life bulbs

The following lights have light-emitting diodes and long-life bulbs:

- Daytime driving lights, front side lights, front turn signal lights, gas-discharge bulbs in Bi-Xenon headlights, tail lights and additional brake light, interior lights, fog lights and courtesy lights in the door mirrors.

Replacement of the long-life bulbs involves a greater amount of installation work.

- ▷ Have defective light-emitting diodes and long-life bulbs replaced at your authorized Porsche dealer.



Headlight Adjustment

- ▷ Check tire pressure and adjust if necessary.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES 68 °F (20 °C)" on page 310.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "REPLACING BULBS" on page 294.



Adjustment

The adjustment is made with the vehicle ready to drive and the fuel tank completely filled.

The driver's seat must be loaded by a person or a 165 lbs. (75 kg) weight and the tire pressures must meet the prescribed values. After being loaded, the car must be rolled a few meters so that the suspension can settle.

For checking the headlight adjustment, the vertical position of the cutoff of the lowbeam (see fig.) has to be projected on a vertical screen (wall) in distance of 24.6 ft. (7.5 m) from the front lens of the headlamp. The correct position of the cutoff is 2.0 in. (5 cm) at 24.6 ft. or 7.5 m (0.4°) below a horizontal line, **x** cm from ground to the center of the headlamp lens.

Lateral adjustment of the headlights should be carried out at a specialist workshop with an optical adjustment unit.

Distance

Visual aim shall be performed at not less than 24.6 ft. (7.5 m) (this value is a rounded down conversion from the 25-foot distance typical of field aim using a screen). The 24.6 ft. (7.5 m) distance is measured from the headlamp lens to the viewing screen.

Floor

The surface upon which the vehicle rests is flat and approximately level.

Screen

The screen upon which headlamp beams are projected is perpendicular to the floor and the vehicle's longitudinal axis, flat, uniformly light in color, unobstructed, and wide and high enough to accommodate the vehicle beam patterns to be aimed.

The screen should be wide enough to provide at least 3.3 ft. (1 m) of space outboard of the vehicle's headlamp spacing.



Height adjustment

1. Switch ignition on.
2. Switch on low beam.
3. Open engine compartment lid.
4. Place allen key (6 mm) on adjusting screw.
5. Adjust low beam in direction of the arrow.

UK3-376

Towing

Certain state statutes and local ordinances prohibit towing with a chain, rope or even a tow bar. In addition, damage to your vehicle may result from improper procedures. Consult your authorized Porsche dealer for details.

Flat bed towing is the preferred type of towing to be used on Porsche vehicles. Under certain circumstances, wheel lifts may be used when vehicle will not roll.

The vehicle must be towed with all four wheels off the ground, otherwise damage to the vehicle may result.



Information

- ▷ Always observe the laws governing towing and tow-starting.
- ▷ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed.
Before starting off, both drivers should familiarize themselves with the special conditions that apply to tow-starting and towing.

WARNING

Towed Vehicle Hazards

No power assistance is available on the towed vehicle when its engine is not running. Greater force is therefore required when braking and steering.

- ▷ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed.

When the engine is not running, adequate lubrication of the transmission is not guaranteed. Observe the following points to avoid damage to the transmission.

Towing a vehicle on all four wheels

NOTICE

We urge that wherever possible, a car transporter or trailer be used to transport a Cayenne vehicle that cannot move under its own power. This is the safest way to transport a down vehicle.

For those instances where a car transporter or trailer is not available, the vehicle may be towed on all four axles only, provided the following conditions are strictly met. Failure to meet these conditions will result in serious and expensive damage to the Tiptronic S transmission.

If the vehicle's transmission or shifter is already damaged, serious damage will result if the vehicle is not towed with all four wheels off the ground.

Porsche cannot be held responsible for damage incurred in cases where a vehicle has been transported on one or both of its axles.

- ▷ Put the gearshift lever in Neutral or move the Tiptronic selector lever to position **N**. The Tiptronic selector lever can no longer be operated in the event of an electrical fault. Locking of the Tiptronic selector lever in position **P** can be overridden manually: Please see the chapter “SELECTOR LEVER EMERGENCY OPERATION” on page 184.
- ▷ The vehicle must always roll on all four wheels when towed. The ignition must be switched on so that the brake lights and turn signal lights operate and the steering lock cannot engage.
- ▷ Do not exceed a maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Maximum towing distance 30 miles (50 km). If towing distances are greater, the vehicle must be transported with a car transporter or on a trailer.

Towing a four-wheel drive vehicle on one axle

NOTICE

We urge that wherever possible, a car transporter or trailer be used to transport a Cayenne vehicle that cannot move under its own power. This is the safest way to transport a down vehicle.

For those instances where a car transporter or trailer is not available, the vehicle may be towed on all four axles only, provided the following conditions are strictly met. Failure to meet these conditions will result in serious and expensive damage to the Tiptronic S transmission.

If the vehicle's transmission or shifter is already damaged, serious damage will result if the vehicle is not towed with all four wheels off the ground.

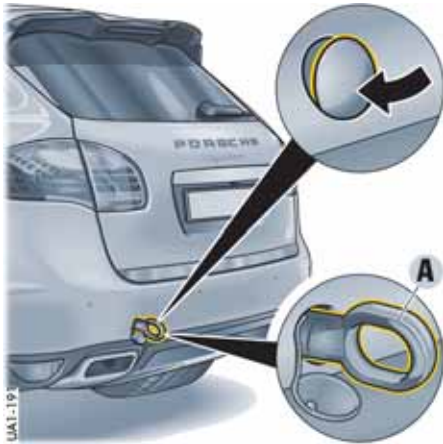
Porsche cannot be held responsible for damage incurred in cases where a vehicle has been transported on one or both of its axles.

- ▷ The vehicle must have all four wheels on the ground when being towed or it must be transported on a car transporter. It is normally not permissible to raise one axle, irrespective of whether it is the front or rear axle. If circumstances dictate that the vehicle must be towed in this manner, the drive shaft (cardan shaft) of the rolling axle must be removed.
- ▷ Put the gearshift lever in Neutral or move the Tiptronic selector lever to position **N**. The Tiptronic selector lever can no longer be operated in the event of an electrical fault. Locking of the Tiptronic selector lever in position **P** can be overridden manually. Please see the chapter “SELECTOR LEVER EMERGENCY OPERATION” on page 184.

- ▷ Switch ignition off. The ignition key must remain in the ignition lock so that the steering wheel lock does not engage. The control unit must be removed from the ignition lock and the ignition key inserted in vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Please see the chapter “EMERGENCY OPERATION – UNLOCKING THE IGNITION KEY” on page 149.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle is adequately illuminated.
- ▷ Do not exceed a maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Maximum towing distance 30 miles (50 km). If towing distances are greater, the vehicle must be transported with a car transporter or on a trailer.

Pulling out a vehicle stuck in snow, sand, etc.

- ▷ Always pull out the stuck vehicle with the greatest care.
- ▷ Do not pull out the vehicle abruptly or at an angle.
- ▷ If possible, pull the vehicle out backwards in its own tracks.
- ▷ Do not pull out the vehicle with a trailer attached.



Towing hook

The towing hook is stored with the tool kit under the luggage compartment floor.

Fitting the towing hook

1. Press the lower edge of the appropriate plastic cover into the bumper until the cover disengages.
2. Pull cover out of the bumper and let it hang by its thread.
3. Screw in towing hook **A** as far as it will go (left-hand thread) and tighten hand-tight.



Removing the towing hook

1. Unscrew the towing hook **A**.
2. Insert plastic cover at the lower edge of the opening.
3. Fold the cover up and press on its upper edge to engage it in the bumper.



Pulling vehicle onto flat bed

1. Position wooden ramps at the base of the flat bed to reduce the angle of the pull.
2. Reel in the hoist cable and check the underside of the vehicle for any interference.



Tying down vehicle on flat bed

- 1.** Carefully feed towing straps through the opening in the **rear wheels**.
Make sure metal parts of straps do not damage rim.
Make sure the strap is flat over the rim bead.
Make sure brake backing plate is not damaged.
- 2.** Secure straps to rear of flat bed.
- 3.** Reel in hoist cable only far enough to tension tie-down straps.
- 4.** Carefully feed towing straps through the opening in the **front wheels**.
Make sure metal parts of straps do not damage rim.
Make sure the strap is flat over the rim bead.
Make sure brake backing plate is not damaged.

- 5.** Secure straps to front of flat bed.
- 6.** Release tension on hoist cable, but do not disconnect.
Use hoist cable as safety cable.

Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters

- ▷ Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels.
- ▷ Deactivate passenger compartment monitoring system and the inclination sensor.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "TEMPORARILY DEACTIVATING PASSENGER COMPARTMENT MONITORING SYSTEM AND INCLINATION SENSOR" on page 235.

Tire Pressure and Technical Data

| | |
|---|-----|
| Vehicle Identification Data | 307 |
| Engine Data..... | 308 |
| Wheels, Tires..... | 309 |
| Tire Pressure for Cold Tires 68 °F (20 °C) | 310 |
| Weights..... | 312 |
| Filling Capacities | 313 |
| Driving Performance | 314 |
| Dimensions | 314 |



Vehicle identification number

Vehicle Identification Data

When ordering spare parts or making inquiries, always quote the vehicle identification number.

Vehicle data bank

You will find the vehicle data bank in the "Maintenance" booklet. It contains all important data about your vehicle.



Information

This data bank cannot be re-ordered if it is lost or damaged.

Vehicle identification number

You will find the vehicle identification number at the bottom left behind the windshield and under the front passenger's seat.



Safety compliance sticker

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new Porsche complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured.

The sticker also shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your car (perforations) as well as the **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** and the **Gross Axle Weight Rating**.



Tire pressure plate

The plate is attached to the door sill area on the left.

Engine Data

| | Cayenne | Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|--|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Type | 6-cylinder V-engine | 8-cylinder V-engine | 8-cylinder V-engine |
| Number of cylinders | 6 | 8 | 8 |
| Displacement | 219.5 cu. in. (3598 cm ³) | 293.3 cu. in. (4806 cm ³) | 293.3 cu. in. (4806 cm ³) |
| Max. engine output as per 80/1269/EEC | 300 hp (220 kW) | 400 hp (294 kW) | 500 hp (368 kW) |
| At engine speed | 6300 rpm | 6500 rpm | 6000 rpm |
| Max. torque as per 80/1269/EEC | 295 ftlb. (400 Nm) | 369 ftlb. (500 Nm) | 516 ftlb. (700 Nm) |
| At engine speed | 3000 rpm | 3500 rpm | 2250–4500 rpm |
| Engine oil consumption | up to 1.5 l/1000 km | up to 1.5 l/1000 km | up to 1.5 l/1000 km |
| Maximum permitted engine speed | 6700 rpm | 6700 rpm | 6700 rpm |

Wheels, Tires

- ▷ Approval of tire and wheel sizes is granted based on extensive testing. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you about the current approval status.
By fitting tires that have been approved by Porsche, you can be sure that you have the best possible tires for your Porsche.
The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "109") and code letter (e.g. "V") for permitted top speed are minimum requirements.
When fitting new tires or changing tires: Please see the chapter "TIRES AND WHEELS" on page 265.
- ▷ Snow chain clearance can only be guaranteed for the tires marked¹⁾. Can only be fitted on the rear wheels when 19/20-inch tires are used. In the case of 18-inch tires, chains can also be fitted on the front axle if chains are fitted on all four positions. Maximum speed: 30 mph (50 km/h). Use only fine-link cross-type or edge chains approved by Porsche. Observe the respective road traffic regulations.

| | Cayenne, Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 18-inch wheel | 8 J x 18, rim offset 53 | - |
| Summer tires | 255/55 R 18 109Y XL | - |
| All-season and winter tires | 255/55 R 18 109V XL ¹⁾ | - |
| 19-inch wheel | 8.5 J x 19, rim offset 59 | 8.5 J x 19, rim offset 59 |
| Summer tires | 265/50 R 19 110Y XL | 265/50 R 19 110Y XL |
| All-season and winter tires | 265/50 R 19 110V XL ¹⁾ | 265/50 R 19 110V XL ¹⁾ |
| 20-inch wheel | 9 J x 20, rim offset 57 | 9 J x 20, rim offset 57 |
| Summer tires | 275/45 R 20 110Y XL | 275/45 R 20 110Y XL |
| All-season and winter tires | 275/45 R 20 110V XL ¹⁾ | 275/45 R 20 110V XL ¹⁾ |
| 21-inch wheel | 10 J x 21, rim offset 50 | 10 J x 21, rim offset 50 |
| Summer tires | 295/35 R 21 107Y XL | 295/35 R 21 107Y XL |
| Spare wheel | 6.5 x 18, rim offset 28 | 6.5 x 19, rim offset 28 |
| Collapsible spare wheel | 195/75-18 106P | 195/75-18 106P |
| Collapsible spare wheel for vehicles Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB) | 195/65-19 106P | 195/65-19 106P |



Improper Tire Size

Installation of sizes not authorized by Porsche may impair driving stability and could result in loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Before mounting new tires check with your authorized Porsche dealer for a current list of approved tires.

Tire Pressure for Cold Tires 68 °F (20 °C)

These tire pressures apply only to the tire makes and types approved by Porsche.

Standard tire pressure

| | Cayenne, Cayenne S | | | | Cayenne Turbo | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| | Part load | | Full load | | Part load | | Full load | |
| | FA | RA | FA | RA | FA | RA | FA | RA |
| Summer tires 255/55 R 18 109Y XL | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 42 psi / 2.9 bar / 290 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | - | - | - | - |
| All-season and winter tires 255/55 R 18 109V XL | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | - | - | - | - |
| Summer tires 265/50 R 19 110Y XL 275/45 R 20 110Y XL | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 42 psi / 2.9 bar / 290 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 42 psi / 2.9 bar / 290 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa |
| All-season and winter tires 265/50 R 19 110V XL 275/45 R 20 110V XL | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa |
| Summer tires 295/35 R 21 107Y XL | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 42 psi / 2.9 bar / 290 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 42 psi / 2.9 bar / 290 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa |
| Spare wheel 195/75-18 106P, 195/65-19 106P | 51 psi / 3.5 bar / 350 kPa | | | | | | | |

- ▷ The load condition of the vehicle must be set on the multi-purpose display. The tire pressure must be changed according to the vehicle load.
Please see the chapter "SELECTING "CHARGE" IN THE TIRE PRESSURE MENU" on page 121.

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle

Comfort tire pressure for summer, snow and all-season tires up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

The **comfort tire pressure speed threshold permitted** for your vehicle depends on the national type standardisation and is displayed under **“Comfort pressure”** in the **“Tire pressure”** menu on the multi-purpose display on the on-board computer.

Comfort tire pressure is only available on vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM).

| Summer, snow and all-season tires | Cayenne, Cayenne S | | | | Cayenne Turbo | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| | Part load | | Full load | | Part load | | Full load | |
| | FA | RA | FA | RA | FA | RA | FA | RA |
| 255/55 R 18 109 XL | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | - | - | - | - |
| 265/50 R 19 110 XL 275/45 R 20 110 XL 295/35 R 21 107 XL | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa | 34 psi / 2.4 bar / 240 kPa | 39 psi / 2.7 bar / 270 kPa | 37 psi / 2.6 bar / 260 kPa | 46 psi / 3.2 bar / 320 kPa |

- ▷ The load condition of the vehicle must be set on the multi-purpose display. The tire pressure must be changed according to the vehicle load.
Please see the chapter “SELECTING “CHARGE” IN THE TIRE PRESSURE MENU” on page 121.

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle

Weights

| | Cayenne | | Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| | Manual transmission | Tiptronic S | Tiptronic S | Tiptronic S |
| Empty weight (depending on vehicle equipment) | | | | |
| per DIN 70020 | 4398–5170 lbs. (1995–2345 kg) | 4475–5247 lbs. (2030–2380 kg) | 4553–5324 lbs. (2065–2415 kg) | 4784–5434 lbs. (2170–2465 kg) |
| per 70/156/EEC ¹⁾ | 4563–5335 lbs. (2070–2420 kg) | 4640–5412 lbs. (2105–2455 kg) | 4718–5489 lbs. (2140–2490 kg) | 4949–5599 lbs. (2245–2540 kg) |
| Maximum axle load, front ²⁾ | 2899 lbs. (1315 kg) | 2910 lbs. (1320 kg) | 2998 lbs. (1360 kg) | 3086 lbs. (1400 kg) |
| Maximum axle load, rear ²⁾ | 3384 lbs. (1535 kg) | 3384 lbs. (1535 kg) | 3384 lbs. (1535 kg) | 3384 lbs. (1535 kg) |
| Maximum gross weight ²⁾ | 6096 lbs. (2765 kg) | 6173 lbs. (2800 kg) | 6261 lbs. (2840 kg) | 6349 lbs. (2880 kg) |
| Towing a trailer up to 60 mph (100 km/h) – USA/Canada | | | | |
| Maximum gross weight | 6096 lbs. (2765 kg) | 6173 lbs. (2800 kg) | 6261 lbs. (2840 kg) | 6349 lbs. (2880 kg) |
| Maximum axle load, front axle | 2899 lbs. (1315 kg) | 2910 lbs. (1320 kg) | 2998 lbs. (1360 kg) | 3086 lbs. (1400 kg) |
| Maximum axle load, rear axle | 3693 lbs. (1675 kg) | 3693 lbs. (1675 kg) | 3693 lbs. (1675 kg) | 3693 lbs. (1675 kg) |
| Roof load | | | | |
| Maximum roof load ³⁾ | 220 lbs. (100 kg) | 220 lbs. (100 kg) | 220 lbs. (100 kg) | 220 lbs. (100 kg) |
| Towing capacity/car and trailer weight | | | | |
| Maximum towing capacity, braked | 5952 lbs. (2700 kg) | 7716 lbs. (3500 kg) | 7716 lbs. (3500 kg) | 7716 lbs. (3500 kg) |
| Maximum towing capacity, unbraked | 1653 lbs. (750 kg) | 1653 lbs. (750 kg) | 1653 lbs. (750 kg) | 1653 lbs. (750 kg) |
| Maximum car and trailer weight | 12048 lbs. (5465 kg) | 13889 lbs. (6300 kg) | 13977 lbs. (6340 kg) | 14065 lbs. (6380 kg) |
| Maximum trailer hitch load | 617 lbs. (280 kg) | 617 lbs. (280 kg) | 617 lbs. (280 kg) | 617 lbs. (280 kg) |

¹⁾ Empty weight includes 165 lbs. (75 kg) driver and baggage share.

²⁾ The maximum gross weight and maximum axle loads must not be exceeded.
Note: If additional accessories are installed, the maximum load will be correspondingly less.

³⁾ Only use roof transport systems from the Porsche Equipment product range for your car or roof transport systems that have been tested and approved by Porsche.

Filling Capacities

Only use fluids and fuels approved by Porsche. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

| | Cayenne | Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|--|--|---|--|
| Engine oil change quantity with oil filter | approx. 7.29 quarts (6.9 liters) | approx. 9.51 quarts (9.0 liters) | approx. 9.51 quarts (9.0 liters) |
| Coolant ¹⁾ | approx. 13.95–18.6 quarts (13.2–17.6 liters) | approx. 19.02–22.19 quarts (18.0–21.0 liters) | approx. 19.02–22.19 quarts (18.0–21.0 liters) |
| Manual transmission | approx. 1.9 quarts (1.8 liters) | - | - |
| Automatic transmission with torque converter | approx. 12.1 quarts (11.45 liters) | approx. 14.21 quarts (13.45 liters) | approx. 14.27 quarts (13.5 liters) |
| Transfer gear | approx. 0.92 quarts (0.875 liter) | approx. 0.92 quarts (0.875 liter) | approx. 0.92 quarts (0.875 liter) |
| Front-axle differential | approx. 0.53 quarts (0.5 liter) | approx. 0.53 quarts (0.5 liter) | approx. 0.53 quarts (0.5 liter) |
| Rear-axle differential | approx. 1.06 quarts (1.0 liters) | approx. 1.06 quarts (1.0 liters) | approx. 1.06 quarts (1.0 liters) |
| Locking rear differential | approx. 1.37 quarts (1.3 liters) | approx. 1.37 quarts (1.3 liters) | approx. 1.37 quarts (1.3 liters) |
| Fuel tank | approx. 22.2 U.S. gallons (85 liters), with a reserve of approx. 4 U.S. gallons (15 liters) (26.4 U.S. gallons (100 liters) optional) | approx. 22.2 U.S. gallons (85 liters), with a reserve of approx. 4 U.S. gallons (15 liters) (26.4 U.S. gallons (100 liters) optional) | approx. 26.4 U.S. gallons (100 liters), with a reserve of approx. 4 U.S. gallons (15 liters) |
| Fuel octane rating | The engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel consumption if unleaded premium fuel with 98 RON/88 MON is used. If unleaded fuels with octane numbers of less than RON 98/MON 88 are used, the engine's "Electronic Oktan TM knock control" automatically adapts the ignition timing. Porsche recommends that you use fuel with at least 95 RON/88 MON in your vehicle. | | |
| Power steering | approx. 1.95 quarts (1.85 liters) of Pentosin CHF 202 hydraulic fluid | | |
| Brake fluid | approx. 1.08 quarts (1.02 liters). Use only Original Porsche brake fluid. | | |
| Windshield/ headlight cleaning system | approx. 4.76 quarts (4.5 liters) or 7.93 quarts (7.5 liters) on vehicles with headlight cleaning system | | |

¹⁾ Depending on equipment.

Driving Performance

The specifications refer to a vehicle with DIN curb weight without performance-reducing additional equipment (e.g. special tires).

| | Cayenne manual transmission | Cayenne Tiptronic S | Cayenne S Tiptronic S | Cayenne Turbo Tiptronic S |
|--|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Top track speed | 143 mph (230 km/h) | 143 mph (230 km/h) | 160 mph (258 km/h) | 173 mph (278 km/h) |
| Acceleration 0–60 mph (96 km/h) | 7.1 seconds | 7.4 seconds | 5.6 seconds | 4.4 seconds |
| Acceleration 0–62 mph (100 km/h) | 7.5 seconds | 7.8 seconds | 5.9 seconds | 4.7 seconds |
| Maximum speed when towing a trailer | Observe country-specific laws for driving with a trailer. | | | |

Dimensions

| | Cayenne, Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Length | 190.8 in. (4846 mm) | 190.7 in. (4845 mm) |
| Width | 76.3 in. (1939 mm) | 76.3 in. (1939 mm) |
| Width with exterior mirrors | 84.8 in. (2155 mm) | 84.8 in. (2155 mm) |
| Height at normal level, 18/19-inch air springs | | |
| Height at normal level | 66.89 in. (1699 mm) | 67.01 in. (1702 mm) |
| Height at normal level (roof rails) | 67.6 in. (1717 mm) | 67.76 in. (1721 mm) |
| Height at normal level (basic roof transport system carrier) | 71.38 in. (1813 mm) | 71.54 in. (1817 mm) |
| Height at normal level with tailgate open | 85.91 in. (2182 mm) | 86.06 in. (2186 mm) |

| | Cayenne, Cayenne S | Cayenne Turbo |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Height at DIN empty weight, steel suspension | | |
| Height at DIN empty weight | 67.13 in. (1705 mm) | - |
| Height at DIN empty weight (roof rails) | 67.87 in. (1724 mm) | - |
| Height at DIN empty weight (basic roof transport system carrier) | 71.65 in. (1820 mm) | - |
| Height at DIN curb weight with tailgate open | 86.26 in. (2191 mm) | - |
| Height at special terrain level | | |
| Height at special terrain level | 69.06 in. (1754 mm) | 69.21 in. (1758 mm) |
| Height at special terrain level (roof rails) | 69.8 in. (1773 mm) | 69.96 in. (1777 mm) |
| Height at special terrain level (basic roof transport system carrier) | 73.58 in. (1869 mm) | 73.74 in. (1873 mm) |
| Height at special terrain level with tailgate open | 88.03 in. (2236 mm) | 88.19 in. (2240 mm) |
| Max. wading depth | 19.69 in. (500 mm) ¹⁾ | 19.69 in. (500 mm) ¹⁾ |
| Wheelbase | 113.98 in. (2895 mm) | 113.98 in. (2895 mm) |
| Overhang, front | 37.8 in. (960 mm) | 37.7 in. (958 mm) |
| Overhang, rear | 39.02 in. (991 mm) | 39.02 in. (991 mm) |
| Turning circle | 468.5 in. (11.9 m) | 468.5 in. (11.9 m) |

¹⁾ Up to 21.85 in. (555 mm) for vehicles with air suspension in special terrain level.

Index

A

| | |
|---|-----|
| ABD (automatic brake differential) | |
| Functional description..... | 190 |
| ABS (anti-lock brake system) | |
| Functional description..... | 192 |
| Off-road ABS, functional description..... | 192 |
| Warning light on the tachometer..... | 192 |
| AC button | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 67 |
| AC MAX button | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 67 |
| ACC | |
| Adaptive cruise control..... | 160 |
| Adaptive cruise control..... | 160 |
| Display principle..... | 162 |
| Exceptions..... | 166 |
| Functional description..... | 160 |
| Interrupting/resuming control..... | 165 |
| Operating principle..... | 161 |
| Operating states..... | 163 |
| Porsche Active Safe..... | 168 |
| Radar sensor..... | 160 |
| Setting the desired distance..... | 164 |
| Setting/changing desired speed..... | 163 |
| Switching on/off..... | 162 |
| Additional door mirrors when towing a trailer..... | 224 |
| Adhesive film, care instructions..... | 258 |
| Adjusting rear seats..... | 40 |
| Adjusting seat position..... | 37 |
| Adjusting the opening height of the powerlift tailgate..... | 28 |
| Aftermarket Alarms..... | 177 |
| Air cleaner, maintenance instructions..... | 248 |
| Air suspension | |
| Lowering the vehicle..... | 196 |
| Lowering the vehicle for loading..... | 196 |
| Overview..... | 195 |
| Raising the vehicle..... | 196 |
| Setting loading level..... | 196 |
| Setting low level..... | 196 |
| Setting normal level..... | 196 |
| Setting special terrain level..... | 196 |
| Setting terrain level..... | 196 |
| Warning message on the multi-purpose display..... | 196 |
| Air vents | |
| Adjusting..... | 75 |
| Opening/closing..... | 75 |

Airbag

| | |
|---|-----|
| Airbag warning light in the instrument panel..... | 49 |
| Automatic deactivation of the passenger airbag..... | 48 |
| Care instructions..... | 260 |
| Disposal..... | 47 |
| Function..... | 47 |
| Passenger airbag warning light..... | 49 |
| Air-conditioning compressor | |
| Information on air-conditioning compressor..... | 69 |
| Air-conditioning system | |
| Automatic load switch-off..... | 69 |
| Brief overview of front control panel..... | 63 |
| Brief overview of rear control panel..... | 64 |
| Child lock..... | 74 |
| Defrosting windshield..... | 68 |
| Extended ventilation panel..... | 75 |
| Front control panel..... | 70 |
| Functional description..... | 70 |
| Heating..... | 66 |
| Information on air-conditioning compressor..... | 69 |
| Parking heater..... | 77 |
| Rear control panel..... | 71 |
| Setting air distribution..... | 73 |
| Setting air quantity..... | 73 |
| Setting automatic air-recirculation mode..... | 69 |
| Setting temperature..... | 72 |
| Switching AC MAX mode on/off..... | 67 |
| Switching AC mode on/off..... | 67 |
| Switching air-conditioning compressor on/off..... | 67 |
| Switching air-recirculation mode on and off..... | 69 |
| Switching automatic mode on/off..... | 71 |
| Switching MONO mode on/off..... | 68 |
| Switching REAR mode on/off..... | 74 |
| Switching REST mode on/off..... | 66 |
| Temperature sensor..... | 65 |
| Using engine residual heat..... | 66 |
| Air-recirculation button | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 69 |
| Alarm button..... | 18 |
| Alarm system | |
| Avoiding false alarms..... | 234 |
| Functional description..... | 234 |
| Hitching a trailer..... | 220 |
| Persons/animals remaining in the locked vehicle..... | 235 |
| Switching off..... | 234 |
| Switching off alarm..... | 234 |
| Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor..... | 235 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Switching off passenger compartment monitoring system..... | 235 |
| Switching on..... | 234 |
| Alcantara, care instructions..... | 260 |
| Alloy wheels | |
| Care instructions..... | 259 |
| Inscription..... | 273 |
| Aluminum rims | |
| Care instructions..... | 259 |
| Inscription..... | 273 |
| Antifreeze | |
| In coolant..... | 245 |
| In washer fluid..... | 246 |
| Anti-lock brake system (ABS) | |
| Functional description..... | 192 |
| Off-road ABS, functional description..... | 192 |
| Warning light on the tachometer..... | 192 |
| Anti-slip regulation (ASR) | |
| Functional description..... | 190 |
| Armrest | |
| Opening rear storage compartment..... | 217 |
| Ashtray | |
| Front..... | 217 |
| Front, emptying..... | 217 |
| Front, opening..... | 217 |
| Rear..... | 218 |
| Rear, emptying..... | 218 |
| Rear, opening..... | 218 |
| ASR (Anti-slip regulation) | |
| Functional description..... | 190 |
| Assembly aids for changing wheel..... | 280 |
| Assigning MFS button..... | 136 |
| Assistance when driving off uphill | |
| Functional description..... | 192 |
| Audio | |
| Tips..... | 176 |
| Audio interface, installation position..... | 178 |
| AUTO (light switch)..... | 91 |
| Automatic driving light assistant..... | 91 |
| AUTO button | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 71 |
| Auto Start Stop function | |
| Display..... | 153 |
| Exceptions..... | 152 |
| Operating principle..... | 152 |
| Preconditions..... | 152 |
| Starting engine automatically..... | 152 |
| Stopping engine automatically..... | 152 |

| | |
|---|----------|
| Switching on and off..... | 153 |
| Automatic (Tiptronic S) | |
| Functional description..... | 180 |
| Gear selector..... | 181 |
| Rocker switches on the steering wheel..... | 57 |
| Automatic brake differential (ABD) | |
| Functional description..... | 190 |
| Automatic Coming Home lights, courtesy lighting | |
| Entry function..... | 93 |
| Welcome Home function..... | 93 |
| Automatic driving light assistant | |
| Automatic headlight leveling, functional description..... | 92 |
| Daytime driving lights..... | 92 |
| Dynamic cornering light..... | 93 |
| Low beam..... | 92 |
| Porsche Dynamic Lighting System (PDLS)..... | 91 |
| Static cornering light..... | 93 |
| Switching on..... | 91 |
| Automatic headlight leveling | |
| Functional description..... | 92 |
| Automatic speed control (cruise control) | |
| Accelerating..... | 158 |
| Decelerating..... | 159 |
| Functional description..... | 158 |
| Interrupting operation..... | 159 |
| Storing speed..... | 158 |
| Switching off..... | 159 |
| Switching on..... | 158 |
| AUX interface, installation position..... | 178 |
| Auxiliary heater | |
| Operation..... | 77 |
| Programming..... | 115 |
| Auxiliary high-beam headlight | |
| Changing bulb..... | 298 |
| Installing headlights..... | 296 |
| Brake pads | |
| Breaking in new brake pads..... | 5 |
| Warning message, brakes..... | 157 |
| Brake pedal..... | 156 |
| Brake wear | |
| Warning message..... | 157 |
| Brakes | |
| Applying/releasing electric parking brake..... | 154 |
| Brake pad warning message..... | 157 |
| Brake pedal..... | 156 |
| Brake wear warning message..... | 157 |
| Break in new brake pads..... | 5 |
| Footbrake..... | 155 |
| Test stand..... | 194, 241 |
| Break in hints..... | 5 |

B

| | |
|---|----------|
| Baby seat | |
| Installing with LATCH system..... | 53 |
| LATCH restraint system..... | 53 |
| Prescribed installation direction (depending on weight of child)..... | 50 |
| Battery..... | 178 |
| Care..... | 291 |
| Changing in car key..... | 294 |
| Charging..... | 293 |
| Emergency starting with jumper cables..... | 292 |
| General information..... | 290 |
| Installation position..... | 290 |
| Jump-lead starting..... | 292 |
| Procedure after connection..... | 292 |
| Replacing..... | 291 |
| Vehicle electrical system voltage indication..... | 107 |
| Winter driving..... | 291 |
| Before driving off..... | 3 |
| Belt tensioner | |
| Functional description..... | 44 |
| Belts | |
| Adjusting the belt height..... | 45 |
| Belt tensioner functional description..... | 44 |
| Care instructions..... | 260 |
| Fastening..... | 45 |
| Opening belt buckle..... | 45 |
| Warning light on the tachometer..... | 44 |
| Bi-Xenon headlight | |
| Changing bulb for auxiliary high-beam headlight..... | 298 |
| Installing headlights..... | 296 |
| Boost pressure gauge (Cayenne Turbo)..... | 106 |
| Brake booster..... | 156 |
| Brake fluid | |
| Changing..... | 246 |
| Warning light on speedometer..... | 246 |
| Brake pads | |
| Breaking in new brake pads..... | 5 |
| Warning message, brakes..... | 157 |
| Brake pedal..... | 156 |
| Brake wear | |
| Warning message..... | 157 |
| Brakes | |
| Applying/releasing electric parking brake..... | 154 |
| Brake pad warning message..... | 157 |
| Brake pedal..... | 156 |
| Brake wear warning message..... | 157 |
| Break in new brake pads..... | 5 |
| Footbrake..... | 155 |
| Test stand..... | 194, 241 |
| Break in hints..... | 5 |

Breaking in

| | |
|---|---|
| Engine..... | 5 |
| Engine oil and fuel consumption during break-in period..... | 5 |
| Hints..... | 5 |
| New brake pads and brake discs..... | 5 |
| New tires..... | 5 |

Brief overview

| | |
|--|----|
| Air conditioning, front control panel..... | 63 |
| Air conditioning, rear control panel..... | 64 |
| Opening and locking from outside..... | 20 |
| Windshield wipers..... | 98 |

Bulbs

| | |
|--|-----|
| Changing bulb for auxiliary high-beam headlight..... | 298 |
| Changing bulb for license plate light..... | 300 |
| Changing bulb for number plate light..... | 300 |

C

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Car and trailer weight..... | 312 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

Car care

| | |
|--|-----|
| Airbags..... | 260 |
| Alcantara..... | 260 |
| Alloy wheels..... | 259 |
| Cleaning the engine compartment..... | 257 |
| Decorative film..... | 256 |
| Fabric linings..... | 260 |
| Headlights, plastic components, adhesive film..... | 258 |
| Laying up your Porsche..... | 260 |
| Leather..... | 259 |
| Paint..... | 257 |
| Safety belts..... | 260 |
| Seals..... | 259 |
| Seat belts..... | 260 |
| Underbody protection..... | 258 |
| Washing the vehicle, instructions..... | 256 |
| Wheel bolts..... | 275 |
| Windows..... | 257 |

Car key (remote control)

| | |
|--|-----|
| Changing battery..... | 294 |
| Emergency operation of key in ignition lock..... | 149 |
| Locking vehicle door..... | 23 |
| Opening/closing slide/tilt roof..... | 86 |
| Opening/closing sliding/lifting roof..... | 84 |
| Opening/closing windows (without Porsche Entry & Drive)..... | 82 |
| Unlocking vehicle door..... | 22 |

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Car Telephone..... | 177 |
|--------------------|-----|

| | | | | | |
|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|
| Care instructions | | Chassis setup | | Control systems | |
| Airbags | 260 | Functional description | 197 | Overview (PTM, PTV Plus, PSM, PASM, PDCC).... | 188 |
| Alcantara..... | 260 | Selecting | 197 | Coolant | |
| Alloy wheels | 259 | Check Engine (emission control) | | Antifreeze | 245 |
| Car washing | 256 | Functional description | 107 | Checking level | 244 |
| Carpet | 260 | Warning light on the tachometer | 107 | Temperature gauge | 105 |
| Cleaning the engine compartment | 257 | Child lock | | Cooling system | |
| Fabric linings | 260 | Enabling/disabling opening of rear doors | | Warning on multi-purpose display | 105 |
| Headlights, plastic components, adhesive film..... | 258 | from inside | 30 | Cornering light | |
| Laying up your Porsche | 260 | Enabling/disabling power windows switches | | Dynamic | 93 |
| Leather | 259 | in the rear doors | 82 | Installing headlights | 296 |
| Mats | 260 | Switching rear control panel on/off | 74 | Static | 93 |
| Paintwork | 257 | Child restraint anchorages..... | 53 | Crankcase ventilation | 249 |
| Safety belts | 260 | Child restraint system | | Crossing obstacles | 202 |
| Seals | 259 | Installing with LATCH system | 53 | Cruise control | |
| Seat belts..... | 260 | LATCH restraint system | 53 | Accelerating | 158 |
| Underbody protection..... | 258 | Child seat | | Decelerating | 159 |
| Wheel bolts | 275 | Installing with LATCH system | 53 | Functional description | 158 |
| Windows | 257 | LATCH restraint system | 53 | Interrupting operation | 159 |
| Cargo management system | | Prescribed installation direction | | Storing speed | 158 |
| Inserting and adjusting the strap reel | 205 | (depending on weight of child) | 50 | Switching off | 159 |
| Inserting and adjusting the telescopic bar | 205 | Child seat bracket..... | 53 | Switching on | 158 |
| Inserting and adjusting tie-down rings | 207 | Cigarette lighter..... | 218 | Cupholder | 216 |
| Overview | 205 | Front, using | 218 | In rear armrest, opening..... | 217 |
| Carpet, care instructions..... | 260 | Cleaning the engine compartment..... | 257 | | |
| Catalytic converter | 250 | Closing | | D | |
| Check Engine (Emission control)..... | 107 | Closing sliding/lifting roof | 83 | Data bank for vehicle data, position | 307 |
| Center armrest | | Closing tailgate automatically | 27 | Daytime driving lights | 92 |
| Opening rear storage compartment..... | 217 | Locking vehicle door from inside | 29 | Decorative film, cleaning instructions..... | 256 |
| Center differential lock | | Persons/animals remaining in the vehicle | 23 | Defrosting windshield | 68 |
| Engaging | 185 | Tailgate | 25 | Air-conditioning system | 68 |
| Central locking | | Vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 23 | Differential locks | |
| Locking the tailgate..... | 25 | Vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless) . | 23 | Engaging center differential lock | 185 |
| Locking vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 23 | Cockpit | | Engaging rear differential lock | 185 |
| Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive .. | 23 | Adjusting lighting | 93 | Dimensions | 314 |
| Opening and locking vehicle door from inside..... | 29 | Engine oil temperature gauge..... | 105 | Dimming | |
| Unlocking and opening tailgate..... | 24 | Multi-purpose display | 105 | Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting | 93 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with car key | | Odometer | 106 | Adjusting brightness of interior lighting | 96 |
| (remote control) | 22 | Speedometer | 105 | Direction indicator light, front | |
| Unlocking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive | 22 | Tachometer | 105 | Installing headlights | 296 |
| Central locking system | | Cockpit Canada models | | Direction indicator pilot light, front | |
| Functional description..... | 19 | Warning and indicator lights, overview..... | 104 | Installing headlights | 296 |
| Changing bulb for license plate light..... | 300 | Cockpit USA Model | | Direction indicator, stalk | 94 |
| Changing bulb for side marker light | 299 | Warning and indicator lights, overview..... | 103 | Displacement, Technical data | 308 |
| Changing button assignment on multi-function steering | | Collapsible spare wheel in the luggage compartment..... | 283 | Display on multi-purpose display | |
| wheel | 136 | Comfort memory | 38 | Overview of warning messages..... | 139 |
| Changing wheels | 275 | Comfort pressure | | Displaying average fuel consumption | 113 |
| Chassis control systems | | Selecting | 122 | | |
| Overview (PTM, PTV Plus, PSM, PASM, PDCC) | 188 | Speed warning | 122 | | |
| Chassis number, position | 307 | Compass on the dashboard..... | 108 | | |

| | | | | | |
|---|-----|--|-----|---|----------|
| Door | | Driving through water, tips on driving..... | 201 | Filler opening..... | 244 |
| De-icing door lock | 256 | Driving with a trailer | 224 | General information..... | 241, 242 |
| Locking if persons/animals are remaining in vehicle | 23 | DVD | | OilLevel warning on the multi-purpose display | 242 |
| Locking with car key (remote control) | 23 | Installation location | 178 | Pressure gauge | 106 |
| Locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)..... | 23 | Navigation | 178 | Temperature gauge..... | 105 |
| Switching child lock for rear doors on/off | 30 | Player | 178 | Entry & Drive | |
| Unlocking with car key (remote control)..... | 22 | Dynamic cornering light..... | 93 | Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive .. | 23 |
| Unlocking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)..... | 22 | E | | Switching off interior surveillance with Porsche Entry & Drive | 235 |
| Door locking, automatic | 23 | Electric parking brake | | Unlocking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive 22 | |
| Door mirror | | Automatic parking brake release upon driving off 154 | | Error messages | |
| Adjusting | 55 | Emergency braking function | 154 | Overview of warning messages..... | 139 |
| Adjusting as parking aid..... | 56 | Operating | 154 | Exhaust pipes | 2 |
| Folding in..... | 55 | Releasing | 154 | External audio source, interface | 178 |
| Folding out | 55 | Testing on brake test stand | 241 | F | |
| Storing settings (memory)..... | 55 | Warning light | 154 | Fabric linings (care instructions) | 260 |
| Door mirror heating | | Emergency key | 19 | Fastening points in luggage compartment | 204 |
| Switching on/off | 76 | Emergency operation | | Faults | |
| Door mirrors | | Ignition key in ignition lock..... | 149 | Emergency operation of ignition key in ignition lock..... | 149 |
| Additional door mirrors when towing a trailer | 224 | Panorama roof system..... | 88 | Emergency operation of powerlift tailgate | 29 |
| Driving with a trailer | 224 | Powerlift tailgate | 29 | Emergency operation of sliding/lifting roof | 88 |
| Switching heating on/off..... | 56 | Selector lever for Tiptronic S..... | 184 | Emergency operation of tailgate | 32 |
| When towing a trailer..... | 224 | Sliding/lifting roof | 88 | Emergency operation of Tiptronic gear selector . | 184 |
| Door opening in an emergency situation | 23 | Tailgate..... | 32 | Emergency unlocking of the filler flap | 253 |
| Drawbar load | 312 | Emergency spare wheel, general information | 284 | Overview of warning messages..... | 139 |
| Drive-Off Assistant | 192 | Emergency starting with jumper cables for flat battery.... | 292 | ParkAssist..... | 227 |
| Driver memory | 38 | Emergency starting with jumper cables, external power supply..... | 292 | Power windows | 83 |
| Driving | | Emergency unlocking | | Sliding/lifting roof | 88 |
| Load | 223 | Filler flap..... | 253 | When opening and locking | 32 |
| Trailer | 224 | Emission control (Check Engine) | | Filler flap | |
| Driving off | | Functional description | 107 | Emergency unlocking | 253 |
| Assistance when driving off uphill | 192 | Warning light on the tachometer | 107 | Filling capacities | |
| Automatic parking brake release upon driving off 154 | | Engine | | Coolant | 313 |
| Driving off-road | | Break in hints | 5 | Engine oil | 313 |
| Crossing obstacles..... | 202 | Checking oil level..... | 113 | Overview | 313 |
| Driving off-road on downhill gradients, tips on driving | 200 | Cooling system | 105 | Overview of fluids and fuels | 313 |
| Driving off-road on on uphill gradients, tips on driving | 200 | OilLevel gauge | 113 | Washer fluid | 313 |
| Driving systems for off-road driving..... | 199 | Starting | 151 | Filter | |
| Driving through water, tips on driving | 201 | Starting automatically (Auto Start Stop function)..... | 152 | Air cleaner, maintenance instructions | 248 |
| Engaging center differential lock | 185 | Starting manually (Auto Start Stop function)..... | 152 | Particle filter, maintenance instructions..... | 248 |
| Engaging rear differential lock..... | 185 | Stopping | 151 | Fire extinguisher, storage location | 42 |
| Rules for driving..... | 199 | Stopping automatically (Auto Start Stop function)..... | 152 | First aid kit (storage location)..... | 264 |
| Sand, tips on driving..... | 202 | Technical data | 308 | Floor mats, care instructions..... | 260 |
| Setting special terrain level | 196 | Engine drag torque control (MSR) | | Fluids and fuels | |
| Setting terrain level | 196 | Functional description | 190 | Coolant | 313 |
| Track ruts, tips on driving | 202 | Engine oil | 241 | Engine oil | 313 |
| Driving off-road on on uphill gradients, tips on driving | 200 | Change quantity | 313 | Fuel | 313 |
| Driving performance, Technical data | 314 | Choosing the right oil | 242 | Washer fluid | 313 |
| Driving programs for on-road and off-road driving..... | 184 | Consumption..... | 308 | | |
| | | Engine oil pressure | 139 | | |

| | |
|---|--------|
| Fog lights | |
| Switching on..... | 91 |
| Folding wedges to prevent rolling | 276 |
| Footbrake | |
| Safety notes | 155 |
| Front seat | |
| Adjusting | 37 |
| Adjusting seat position | 37 |
| Retrieving settings (memory)..... | 39 |
| Storing settings (memory) | 39 |
| Front seats | 35, 37 |
| Front windshield wipers | |
| Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity | 100 |
| Switching on rain sensor..... | 99 |
| Windshield wiper/washer system..... | 100 |
| Windshield, fast wiping | 100 |
| Windshield, slow wiping | 99 |
| Wiping windshield once (one-touch operation)..... | 100 |
| Fuel | |
| Economy | 250 |
| Evaporation control..... | 254 |
| Fuel can | 253 |
| Fuel gauge | 107 |
| Fuels containing ethanol | 254 |
| Octane rating..... | 251 |
| Portable fuel containers..... | 3 |
| Quality | 251 |
| Recommendation | 254 |
| Refueling | 251 |
| Refuelling | 251 |
| Tank capacity | 313 |
| Fuel can..... | 253 |
| Fuel containers, portable | 3 |
| Fuel reserve..... | 252 |
| Fuse | |
| Changing fuses..... | 286 |
| G | |
| Garage door opener | |
| Deleting programmed signals | 230 |
| Functional description..... | 229 |
| Operating | 230 |
| Programming signal (changeable code system) .. | 231 |
| Programming signal (fixed code system) | 230 |
| Gear display for Tiptronic S..... | 181 |
| Gear selector (Tiptronic S) | |
| Automatic..... | 181 |
| Changing the selector-lever position | 180 |
| Display on the multi-purpose display | 181 |
| Emergency operation | 184 |
| Selector-Lever Positions | 181 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Glove box | |
| Locking | 215 |
| Opening..... | 215 |
| Glove compartment | |
| Cooling..... | 75 |
| Gross weight | 221 |
| H | |
| Handbrake (electric parking brake) | |
| Operating | 154 |
| Releasing..... | 154 |
| Headlight beam adjustment | 224 |
| Headlight leveling (automatic) | |
| Functional description | 92 |
| Headlights | |
| Adjusting | 301 |
| Before driving with a trailer | 224 |
| Care instructions | 258 |
| Changing bulb for auxiliary high-beam headlight .. | 298 |
| Installing | 296 |
| Operating washer system..... | 101 |
| Headrests | |
| Adjusting | 35 |
| Removing and installing | 36 |
| Heated rear window | |
| Switching on/off..... | 76 |
| Heating, air conditioning..... | 66 |
| Height adjustment | |
| Lowering the vehicle..... | 196 |
| Overview | 195 |
| Raising the vehicle..... | 196 |
| Warning message on the multi-purpose display .. | 196 |
| High beam headlight | 94 |
| Installing headlights | 296 |
| Stalk | 94 |
| High-beam headlight | |
| Changing bulb (auxiliary high-beam headlight) .. | 298 |
| Hillholder (Drive-off Assistant) | |
| Functional description | 192 |
| HOLD function | |
| Functional description | 192 |
| HomeLink (garage door opener) | |
| Deleting programmed signals | 230 |
| Functional description | 229 |
| Operating | 230 |
| Programming signal (changeable code system) .. | 231 |
| Programming signal (fixed code system) | 230 |
| Hot exhaust pipes..... | 2 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| I | |
| Identification number, position..... | 307 |
| Ignition lock | |
| Emergency operation of the key | 149 |
| Functional description | 148 |
| Immobilizer | |
| Functional description | 237 |
| Switching on/off | 237 |
| Inclination sensor | |
| Function indication | 236 |
| Switching off with button in door handle (Porsche Entry & Drive) | 235 |
| Switching off with car key..... | 235 |
| Indicator lights Canada models | 104 |
| Indicator lights USA model | 103 |
| Inserting and adjusting tie-down rings (cargo management system) | 207 |
| Instrument cluster | |
| Adjusting lighting | 93 |
| Engine oil temperature gauge | 105 |
| Multi-purpose display | 105 |
| Odometer | 106 |
| Speedometer | 105 |
| Tachometer | 105 |
| Instrument cluster Canada models | |
| Warning and indicator lights, overview | 104 |
| Instrument cluster USA model | |
| Warning and indicator lights, overview | 103 |
| Instrument panel | |
| Adjusting lighting | 93 |
| Engine oil temperature gauge | 105 |
| Multi-purpose display | 105 |
| Odometer | 106 |
| Speedometer | 105 |
| Tachometer | 105 |
| Instrument panel Canada models..... | 104 |
| Warning and indicator lights, overview | 104 |
| Instrument panel USA model | 103 |
| Warning and indicator lights, overview | 103 |
| Interior mirror | |
| Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on/off .. | 56 |
| Interior surveillance | 236 |
| Switching off with button in door handle (Porsche Entry & Drive)..... | 235 |
| Switching off with car key..... | 235 |
| iPod®/USB interface, installation position..... | 178 |

J

| | |
|---|-----|
| Jack | |
| Information on raising vehicles with | |
| air suspension | 197 |
| Safety information on raising the vehicle | 279 |
| Storage location in luggage compartment | 274 |
| Jump-lead starting for flat battery | 292 |
| Jump-lead starting, external power supply | 292 |

K

| | |
|--|--------|
| Key | |
| Changing battery | 294 |
| Emergency operation, ignition lock | 149 |
| Locking vehicle door | 23 |
| Opening/closing sliding/lifting roof | 84, 86 |
| Removing emergency key | 19 |
| Replacement keys | 18 |
| Unlocking vehicle door | 22 |
| Keys | 18 |

L

| | |
|---|-----|
| Lane Change Assist (LCA) | 170 |
| Operating principle | 172 |
| Setting display brightness on door mirror | 131 |
| Switching on and off | 171 |
| Large roof | |
| Functional description | 85 |
| Opening/closing roll-up sunblind | 87 |
| Roller blind cleaning position | 88 |
| LATCH system | 53 |
| Fastening | 53 |
| Installing a child seat | 53 |
| Prescribed installation direction of child seat (depending on weight of child) | 50 |
| Leather, care instructions | 259 |
| Level control | |
| Lowering the vehicle | 196 |
| Lowering the vehicle for loading | 196 |
| Overview | 195 |
| Raising the vehicle | 196 |
| Setting loading level | 196 |
| Setting low level | 196 |
| Setting normal level | 196 |
| Setting special terrain level | 196 |
| Setting terrain level | 196 |
| Warning message on the multi-purpose display .. | 196 |

Light

| | |
|--|----|
| Headlight flasher | 94 |
| Switching on Welcome Home function | 93 |

Light switch

| | |
|---------------------|----|
| AUTO function | 91 |
| Overview | 91 |

Lights

| | |
|--|-----|
| Care instructions | 258 |
| Replacing Bulbs | 294 |
| Switching front/rear reading lights on/off | 96 |
| Switching interior lights on/off automatically | 97 |
| Switching on when leaving the vehicle | 93 |
| When towing a trailer | 224 |

Load

| | |
|--|----------|
| General information on loading | 221 |
| Installing luggage compartment cover | 209 |
| Luggage compartment cover, pulling out/retracting | 208 |
| Position of tie-down rings | 204 |
| Removing luggage compartment cover | 209 |
| Stowing | 223, 224 |

Loading

| | |
|--|-----|
| General information | 221 |
| Installing luggage compartment cover | 209 |
| Lowering the vehicle for loading | 196 |
| Luggage compartment cover, pulling out/retracting | 208 |
| Luggage safety net | 209 |
| Position of tie-down rings | 204 |
| Removing luggage compartment cover | 209 |
| Setting loading level | 196 |

Loadspace

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Cargo management system | 205 |
| Closing the floor | 204 |
| Opening floor | 204 |
| Overview | 204 |
| Position of tie-down rings | 204 |
| Setting loading level | 196 |

Lock, child lock

| | |
|--|----|
| Enabling/disabling opening of rear doors from inside | 30 |
| Enabling/disabling power windows switches in the rear doors | 82 |
| Switching rear control panel on/off | 74 |

Locking

| | |
|---|--------|
| Locking the tailgate | 25 |
| Locking vehicle door from inside | 29 |
| Locking vehicle door with car key (remote control) .. | 23 |
| Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive .. | 23 |
| Persons/animals remaining in the vehicle | 23 |
| Tailgate | 25 |
| Vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 21, 23 |
| Vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless) .. | 23 |

Locks

| | |
|---|-----|
| Engaging center differential lock | 185 |
| Engaging rear differential lock | 185 |

Low beam

| | |
|------------------------|----|
| Switching on/off | 91 |
|------------------------|----|

Low beam headlight

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Installing headlights | 296 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

Luggage

| | |
|--|-----|
| General information on loading | 221 |
| Luggage compartment cover, pulling out/retracting | 208 |
| Position of tie-down rings | 204 |

Luggage compartment

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Cargo management system | 205 |
| Closing the floor | 204 |
| Closing the tailgate | 25 |
| Opening floor | 204 |
| Overview | 204 |
| Position of tie-down rings | 204 |
| Setting loading level | 196 |
| Tailgate | 24 |

Luggage compartment cover

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| Installing | 209 |
| Pulling out | 208 |
| Removing | 209 |
| Retracting | 208 |

M**Maintenance work**

| | |
|---|----------|
| Adding washer fluid | 246 |
| Changing air cleaner | 248 |
| Changing particle filter | 248 |
| Checking engine oil level | 242 |
| Checking the coolant level and adding coolant ... | 244 |
| Notes on maintenance | 239, 262 |
| Topping Up Engine Oil | 242 |

Make-up mirror

| | |
|-------|----|
| | 60 |
|-------|----|

Malfunctions

| | |
|---|-----|
| Emergency operation of ignition key in ignition lock | 149 |
| Emergency operation of powerlift tailgate | 29 |
| Emergency operation of sliding/lifting roof | 88 |
| Emergency operation of tailgate | 32 |
| Emergency unlocking of the filler flap | 253 |
| Overview of warning messages | 139 |
| ParkAssist | 227 |
| Power windows | 83 |
| Powerlift tailgate | 29 |
| Tiptronic selector lever emergency operation | 184 |
| When opening and locking | 32 |

| | |
|---|----------|
| Manual headlight beam adjustment | 224 |
| Manual transmission | |
| Shift pattern | 179 |
| Maximum permitted engine speed | 179 |
| Memory | 38 |
| Retrieving seat settings | 39 |
| Retrieving vehicle settings | 39 |
| Storing seat settings | 39 |
| Storing vehicle settings | 39 |
| Memory buttons | 39 |
| Minor repairs | |
| In the event of a flat tire | 276 |
| Jack in the luggage compartment | 274 |
| Securing the vehicle against rolling | 276 |
| Storage location of first aid kit | 264 |
| Mirrors | 224 |
| Additional door mirrors when towing a trailer | 224 |
| Adjusting door mirrors | 55 |
| Adjusting door mirrors as parking aid | 56 |
| Automatic anti-dazzle door mirrors | 56 |
| Folding in door mirrors | 55 |
| Folding out door mirrors | 55 |
| Make-up mirror | 60 |
| Storing door mirror settings (memory) | 55 |
| Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off | 56 |
| Switching door mirror heating on/off | 56 |
| Vanity mirror | 60 |
| MONO button | |
| Air-conditioning system | 68 |
| Motion sensor (interior surveillance) | |
| Switching off with button in door handle (Porsche Entry & Drive) | 235 |
| Switching off with car key | 235 |
| Multi-function steering wheel | |
| Assigning MFS button | 136 |
| Functional description | 59 |
| MFS button | 109 |
| Telephone function | 59 |
| Multi-purpose display | 105 |
| Activating functions, opening menus and viewing options | 110 |
| Browsing through long lists | 110 |
| Checking oil level | 113 |
| Display areas | 110 |
| Gear display for Tiptronic S | 181 |
| Operating navigation system | 116 |
| Operating principle | 108 |
| Operating with multi-function steering wheel | 109 |
| Operating with steering wheel lever | 110 |
| Overview of warning messages | 139 |
| Retrieving vehicle information | 112 |
| Selecting a radio station | 116 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring | 119 |
| Tire pressure warnings | 124 |
| Trip information | 118 |
| Using the telephone | 117 |
| N | |
| Navigation system | 178 |
| Operating via multi-purpose display | 116 |
| O | |
| Octane rating | 254 |
| Octane rating, petrol | 251 |
| Odometer | |
| Display | 106 |
| Resetting | 106 |
| Off delay | |
| Switching on | 93 |
| Off-road | |
| Crossing obstacles | 202 |
| Driving off-road on downhill gradients, tips on driving | 200 |
| Driving off-road on uphill gradients, tips on driving | 200 |
| Driving systems for off-road driving | 199 |
| Driving through water, tips on driving | 201 |
| Engaging center differential lock | 185 |
| Engaging rear differential lock | 185 |
| Rules for off-road driving | 199 |
| Sand, tips on driving | 202 |
| Setting special terrain level | 196 |
| Setting terrain level | 196 |
| Track ruts, tips on driving | 202 |
| Off-road ABS, functional description | 192 |
| Off-road driving | |
| Crossing obstacles | 202 |
| Driving off-road on downhill gradients, tips on driving | 200 |
| Driving off-road on uphill gradients, tips on driving | 200 |
| Driving through water, tips on driving | 201 |
| Engaging center differential lock | 185 |
| Engaging rear differential lock | 185 |
| Rules for driving | 199 |
| Sand, tips on driving | 202 |
| Track ruts, tips on driving | 202 |
| Off-road PSM functional description | 190 |
| Oil | 241 |
| Change quantity | 313 |
| Checking level | 113 |
| Choosing the right oil | 242 |
| Consumption | 5 |
| General information | 241, 242 |
| Level gauge | 113 |
| Oil pressure | 139 |
| Oil-level warning on the multi-purpose display | 242 |
| Pressure gauge | 106 |
| Temperature gauge | 105 |
| On-board computer | |
| Gear display for Tiptronic S | 181 |
| Measuring oil level | 113 |
| Multi-purpose display | 108 |
| Operating principle | 108 |
| Overview of warning messages | 139 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring | 119 |
| Opening and closing | |
| Closing tailgate automatically | 27 |
| Engine compartment lid | 31 |
| Loadspace floor | 204 |
| Luggage compartment floor | 204 |
| Roll-up sunblind for Panorama roof system | 87 |
| Slide/tilt roof | 83 |
| Opening and closing engine compartment lid | 31 |
| Opening and closing the engine compartment lid | 31 |
| Opening and locking | |
| Locking vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 23 |
| Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive .. | 23 |
| Opening and locking vehicle door from inside | 29 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 22 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive .. | 22 |
| Operating in other countries | 251 |
| Operating overview | |
| Air-conditioning system, front | 70 |
| Operating the horn | 57 |
| Oxygen sensor | 249 |
| P | |
| Paintwork | |
| Care instructions | 257 |
| Polishing | 257 |
| Preserving | 257 |
| Removing spots and stains | 257 |
| Repairing damage | 257 |
| Panic button | 18 |

| | | | |
|---|--------|--|--|
| REAR button | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 74 | | |
| Rear fog light | | | |
| Switching on..... | 91 | | |
| Rear seat backrests | | | |
| Folding forward..... | 41 | | |
| Rear shelf | | | |
| Installing..... | 209 | | |
| Pulling out..... | 208 | | |
| Removing..... | 209 | | |
| Retracting..... | 208 | | |
| Rear window wiper | | | |
| Switching on intermittent operation..... | 101 | | |
| Window wiping..... | 101 | | |
| Rear-axle load..... | 221 | | |
| Rearview camera..... | 228 | | |
| Rearview camera, care instructions..... | 258 | | |
| Refueling..... | 253 | | |
| Relays | | | |
| Replacing..... | 286 | | |
| Remote control..... | 18 | | |
| Changing battery..... | 294 | | |
| Locking vehicle door..... | 23 | | |
| Opening/closing sliding/lifting roof..... | 84, 86 | | |
| Unlocking vehicle door..... | 21 | | |
| Replacement keys..... | 18 | | |
| REST button | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 66 | | |
| Restraint systems for children | | | |
| Installing with LATCH system..... | 53 | | |
| LATCH restraint system..... | 53 | | |
| Prescribed installation direction (depending on weight of child)..... | 50 | | |
| Reversing camera..... | 228 | | |
| Roll stabilization | | | |
| Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC)..... | 198 | | |
| Roll-up blind..... | 61 | | |
| Cleaning function..... | 88 | | |
| For Panorama roof system, opening/closing..... | 87 | | |
| Roll-up sunblind | | | |
| Cleaning function..... | 88 | | |
| For Panorama roof system, opening/closing..... | 87 | | |
| Raising/lowering for rear side windows..... | 61 | | |
| Roof load..... | 312 | | |
| Roof system (Panorama roof system) | | | |
| Functional description..... | 85 | | |
| Opening/closing roll-up sunblind..... | 87 | | |
| Roll-up sunblind cleaning position..... | 88 | | |
| Roof transport system | | | |
| Functional description..... | 212 | | |
| Roof load..... | 312 | | |
| Safety notes..... | 212 | | |
| Weights..... | 312 | | |
| Running in | | | |
| Tires..... | 5 | | |
| S | | | |
| Safety belts..... | 44 | | |
| Adjusting the belt height..... | 45 | | |
| Belt tensioner functional description..... | 44 | | |
| Care instructions..... | 260 | | |
| Fastening..... | 45 | | |
| Opening belt buckle..... | 45 | | |
| Warning light on the tachometer..... | 44 | | |
| Safety button in the armrest | | | |
| Disabling rear control panel and power windows... .. | 74 | | |
| Safety compliance sticker..... | 307 | | |
| Sealant/sealing set | | | |
| For defective tires..... | 277 | | |
| Seals, care instructions..... | 259 | | |
| Seat belts..... | 44 | | |
| Adjusting the belt height..... | 45 | | |
| Care instructions..... | 260 | | |
| Fastening..... | 45 | | |
| Opening belt buckle..... | 45 | | |
| Warning light on the tachometer..... | 44 | | |
| Seat heating..... | 43 | | |
| Switching off..... | 43 | | |
| Switching on..... | 43 | | |
| Seat memory..... | 38 | | |
| Seat ventilation..... | 43 | | |
| Switching off..... | 43 | | |
| Switching on..... | 43 | | |
| Seats..... | 37 | | |
| Adjusting seat position..... | 37 | | |
| Adjusting the front seat..... | 37 | | |
| Child restraint system..... | 50 | | |
| Front..... | 35 | | |
| Retrieving settings (memory)..... | 39 | | |
| Storing settings (memory)..... | 39 | | |
| Selecting off-road driving program..... | 185 | | |
| Selecting on-road driving program..... | 185 | | |
| Setting air quantity | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 73 | | |
| Setting automatic air-recirculation mode | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 69 | | |
| Setting fan | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 73 | | |
| Setting loading level..... | 196 | | |
| Setting temperature | | | |
| Air-conditioning system..... | 72 | | |
| Setting the date..... | 129 | | |
| Setting the time..... | 129 | | |
| Settings | | | |
| Adjusting on multi-purpose display..... | 126 | | |
| Storing vehicle settings..... | 38 | | |
| Shift pattern | | | |
| Manual transmission..... | 179 | | |
| Side lights | | | |
| Installing headlights..... | 296 | | |
| Switching on..... | 91 | | |
| Side marker light | | | |
| Changing bulb..... | 299 | | |
| Side roll-up blind..... | 61 | | |
| Ski bag..... | 211 | | |
| Loading and securing..... | 211 | | |
| Stowing..... | 211 | | |
| Slide/tilt roof | | | |
| Functional description..... | 83 | | |
| Sliding/lifting roof | | | |
| Emergency operation..... | 88 | | |
| Malfunctions..... | 88 | | |
| Opening/closing with car key (remote control)..... | 84 | | |
| Snow chains | | | |
| General information..... | 272 | | |
| Snow tires..... | 271 | | |
| Socket (12 V)..... | 286 | | |
| Spacers | | | |
| Fitting..... | 283 | | |
| General information..... | 274 | | |
| Removing..... | 281 | | |
| Spare wheel | | | |
| Collapsible spare wheel in the luggage compartment..... | 283 | | |
| General information..... | 284 | | |
| Removing from spare wheel bracket..... | 284 | | |
| Spare wheel/collapsible spare wheel in the luggage compartment..... | 283 | | |
| Spare wheel in the luggage compartment..... | 283 | | |
| Speed code letter on tire..... | 272 | | |
| Speed control (cruise control) | | | |
| Accelerating..... | 158 | | |
| Decelerating..... | 159 | | |
| Functional description..... | 158 | | |
| Interrupting operation..... | 159 | | |
| Storing speed..... | 158 | | |
| Switching off..... | 159 | | |
| Switching on..... | 158 | | |
| Speed limit..... | 272 | | |

| | | | |
|--|----------|--|--|
| Speedometer | | | |
| Digital speedometer | 106 | | |
| Speedometer, digital | 105 | | |
| Sport button | | | |
| Functional description, Sport mode | 186 | | |
| Switching Sport mode on and off | 187 | | |
| Sport mode | | | |
| Functional description | 186 | | |
| Switching on/off | 187 | | |
| SportDesign package | 3 | | |
| Sports exhaust system | | | |
| Switching on/off | 186 | | |
| Stainless steel tailpipes | | | |
| Care instructions | 259 | | |
| Standstill management | | | |
| Functional description | 192 | | |
| Start Stop function | 152 | | |
| Starting | | | |
| Engine | 151 | | |
| Starting engine automatically (Auto Start Stop function) | 152 | | |
| Steering column lock | | | |
| With Porsche Entry & Drive | 237 | | |
| Without Porsche Entry & Drive | 237 | | |
| Steering wheel | | | |
| Adjustment | 58 | | |
| Airbag unit | 57 | | |
| Multi-function steering wheel with telephone function | 59 | | |
| Multi-function steering wheel, functional description | 59 | | |
| Operating the horn | 57 | | |
| Steering lock | 148 | | |
| Switching Easy Entry function on/off | 40 | | |
| Switching heating on/off | 57 | | |
| Tiptronic transmission shift buttons | 57 | | |
| Stopping | | | |
| Engine | 151 | | |
| Stopping engine automatically (Auto Start Stop function) | 152 | | |
| Storage | | | |
| Glove compartment | 215 | | |
| Opening cupholder in rear armrest | 217 | | |
| Opening storage compartment in front armrest .. | 216 | | |
| Storage compartment | | | |
| Glove compartment | 215 | | |
| In front armrest, opening | 216 | | |
| Storage | 215 | | |
| Storage compartment in non-smoker vehicles | 217 | | |
| Stowing luggage | 223 | | |
| When towing a Trailer | 224 | | |
| Strap reel (cargo management system) | | | |
| Inserting and adjusting | 205 | | |
| Strap reel storage location | 205 | | |
| Summer tires | | | |
| Changing tires | 280 | | |
| Storage | 270 | | |
| Sun visor | 60 | | |
| Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off | 56 | | |
| Switching child protection on/off | | | |
| Disabling rear control panel and power windows ... | 74 | | |
| Switching emergency flasher on/off | 94 | | |
| Switching hazard warning lights on/off | 94 | | |
| Switching MONO mode on/off | | | |
| Air-conditioning system | 68 | | |
| Switching off operational readiness | | | |
| Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive | 22 | | |
| Switching on air-recirculation mode | | | |
| Air-conditioning system | 69 | | |
| Switching on parking light | 94 | | |
| T | | | |
| Tachometer | | | |
| Display | 105 | | |
| Tailgate | 24 | | |
| Closing (vehicles without powerlift tailgate) | 25 | | |
| Closing automatically | 27 | | |
| Opening (vehicles without powerlift tailgate) | 24 | | |
| Powerlift tailgate | 25 | | |
| Tailpipes | | | |
| Stainless steel, care instructions | 259 | | |
| Tank | | | |
| Ventilation system | 254 | | |
| Technical data | | | |
| Driving performance | 314 | | |
| Engine | 308 | | |
| Tire pressure (bar/psi) | 310 | | |
| Tires, wheels | 309 | | |
| Weights | 312 | | |
| Technical modifications to the vehicle, information | 240 | | |
| Telephone | 177 | | |
| Telescopic bar (cargo management system) | | | |
| Inserting and adjusting | 205 | | |
| Test stands | | | |
| Brake test | 194, 241 | | |
| Performance test | 241 | | |
| Theft protection | 17 | | |
| Tie-down | | | |
| Equipment | 223 | | |
| Tie-down rings, fastening points in luggage compartment | 204 | | |
| Tiptronic S | | | |
| Functional description | 180 | | |
| Gear display on the multi-purpose display | 181 | | |
| Gear selector | 181 | | |
| Tiptronic transmission | | | |
| Rocker switches on the steering wheel | 57 | | |
| Tire | | | |
| Care | 269 | | |
| Life | 268 | | |
| Traction | 266 | | |
| Wear | 268 | | |
| Tire pressure | | | |
| Air pressure (bar/psi) | 310 | | |
| Data (bar/psi) | 310 | | |
| Fill info | 121 | | |
| Selecting comfort pressure | 122 | | |
| Speed warning | 122 | | |
| System learning | 124 | | |
| Warnings | 124 | | |
| When towing a trailer | 224 | | |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) | 119 | | |
| Tire pressure plate | 307 | | |
| Tire sealant/sealing set | | | |
| For defective tires | 277 | | |
| Tires | | | |
| Breaking in new tires | 5 | | |
| Changing | 280 | | |
| Damage | 269 | | |
| Fixing a flat tire | 276 | | |
| General information | 265 | | |
| Inflating | 285 | | |
| Inscription on radial tire | 272 | | |
| Removing spare wheel from spare wheel bracket | 284 | | |
| Removing/fitting spacers | 281 | | |
| Replacing | 269 | | |
| Sealant | 277 | | |
| Setting type and size | 123 | | |
| Sidewall | 272 | | |
| Snow chains (general information) | 272 | | |
| Spare wheel (general information) | 284 | | |
| Storage | 270 | | |
| Valves | 270 | | |
| Winter tires (general information) | 271 | | |
| Tool kit | | | |
| Jack | 274 | | |
| Wedges | 276 | | |
| Tools | | | |
| Jack | 274 | | |
| Wedges | 276 | | |
| Torque, Technical data | 308 | | |

| | |
|---|----------|
| Towing | |
| Capacity | 221 |
| Screwing in towing hook | 304 |
| TPM (Tire Pressure Monitoring) | 119 |
| Trailer | |
| Coupling | 220 |
| Definitions | 221 |
| Effects on ParkAssist | 228 |
| Electrical connection | 220 |
| Hitching | 220 |
| Operation | 220 |
| Retrofitting | 220 |
| Tips on driving | 224 |
| Unhitching | 220 |
| Trailer load | 312 |
| Transmission | |
| Shift pattern | 179 |
| Transmission and chassis control systems | |
| Overview (PTM, PTV Plus, PSM, PASM, PDCC) | 188 |
| Transport (on car trains, ferries, etc.) | |
| Securing the vehicle | 197, 305 |
| Switching off inclination sensor | 235 |
| Transverse lock | |
| Engaging | 185 |
| Trip counter | |
| Display | 106 |
| Resetting | 106 |
| Trip information | 118 |
| Turn signal indicator light, front | |
| Installing headlights | 296 |
| Turn signal light, front | |
| Installing headlights | 296 |
| Turn signal, stalk | 94 |
| U | |
| Underbody protection, care instructions | 258 |
| Universal audio interface, installation position | 178 |
| Unlocking | |
| Tailgate | 24 |
| Unlocking and opening tailgate | 24 |
| Unlocking vehicle door from inside | 30 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with car key | 22 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with car key (remote control) | 22 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive | 22 |
| Unlocking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless) | 22 |
| Upshift indicator | 106 |
| USB interface, installation position | 178 |
| Using engine residual heat | 66 |
| Air-conditioning system | 66 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| V | |
| Vanity mirror | 60 |
| Vehicle | |
| Battery | 178 |
| Keys | 18 |
| Vehicle door | |
| Locking from inside | 29 |
| Locking with car key (remote control) | 23 |
| Locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless) | 23 |
| Switching child lock for rear doors on/off | 30 |
| Unlocking with car key (remote control) | 22 |
| Unlocking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless) | 22 |
| Vehicle information | |
| Retrieving on multi-purpose display | 112 |
| Vehicle key (remote control) | |
| Changing battery | 294 |
| Emergency operation of key in ignition lock | 149 |
| Locking vehicle door | 23 |
| Opening/closing slide/tilt roof | 86 |
| Opening/closing sliding/lifting roof | 84 |
| Opening/closing windows (without Porsche Entry & Drive) | 82 |
| Unlocking vehicle door | 22 |
| Vehicle settings | |
| Adapting multi-purpose display | 126 |
| Adjusting on multi-purpose display | 126 |
| Adjusting volume of warning and information tones | 137 |
| Air-conditioning settings | 135 |
| Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel | 136 |
| Changing the language | 138 |
| LCA settings | 131 |
| Light and visibility settings | 132 |
| Locking settings | 134 |
| Porsche Active Safe settings | 131 |
| Resetting to factory settings | 126 |
| Selecting Settings menu | 126 |
| Setting date and time | 129 |
| Setting units | 137 |
| Storing on person buttons | 38 |
| Storing on the key | 38 |
| Vents | |
| Adjusting | 75 |
| Opening/closing | 75 |
| Vertical coupling load | 221 |
| Voice control | 179 |

| | |
|---|----------|
| W | |
| Warning lights Canada models | 104 |
| Warning lights USA model | 103 |
| Warning messages on multi-purpose display | |
| Overview | 139 |
| Warning triangle | 263 |
| Washer fluid | |
| Antifreeze | 246 |
| Filling capacity | 313 |
| Topping up | 246 |
| Warning message on the multi-purpose display | 246 |
| Washing the vehicle, instructions | 256 |
| Wedges to prevent rolling | 276 |
| Wedges to secure the vehicle against rolling | 276 |
| Weights, Technical data | 312 |
| Welcome Home function | |
| Switching on | 93 |
| Wheel alignment | 270 |
| Wheel change | 271 |
| Wheels | |
| Adjusting | 270 |
| Changing | 275, 280 |
| Fixing a flat tire | 276 |
| General information | 265 |
| Inflating tires | 285 |
| Inscription on alloy wheels | 273 |
| Inscription on radial tire | 272 |
| Overview | 309 |
| Removing spare wheel from spare wheel bracket | 284 |
| Removing/fitting spacers | 281 |
| Replacing tires (general information) | 269 |
| Rim offset | 309 |
| Security wheel bolt (wrench socket) | 275 |
| Size | 309 |
| Snow chains (general information) | 272 |
| Spare wheel (general information) | 284 |
| Storage | 270 |
| Tire sealant | 277 |
| Wheel balancing | 270 |
| Wheel bolts (care instructions) | 275 |
| Winter tires (general information) | 271 |
| Windows | |
| Adjusting after connecting battery | 83 |
| Care instructions | 257 |
| Closing with button in door handle (with Porsche Entry & Drive) | 82 |
| Opening/closing with car key (remote control) | 82 |
| Opening/closing with rocker switch | 80 |
| Windshield heating | |
| Switching on and off | 76 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Windshield washer system | |
| Adding washer fluid | 246 |
| Antifreeze | 246 |
| Filling capacity | 313 |
| Windshield wiper, washer stalk..... | 99 |
| Rain sensor adjustment | 100 |
| Switching on rain sensor | 99 |
| Windshield wiper/washer system | 100 |
| Windshield, fast wiping | 100 |
| Windshield, slow wiping | 99 |
| Wiping windshield once (one-touch operation) | 100 |
| Windshield wiper/washer stalk | |
| Rear window wiping..... | 101 |
| Switching on intermittent operation of rear window wiper | 101 |
| Windshield wipers | |
| Brief overview | 98 |
| Care instructions | 258 |
| Rain sensor adjustment | 100 |
| Rear window wiping..... | 101 |
| Stalk | 99 |
| Switching on intermittent operation of rear window wiper | 101 |
| Switching on rain sensor | 99 |
| Windshield wiper/washer system | 100 |
| Windshield, fast wiping | 100 |
| Windshield, slow wiping | 99 |
| Wiping windshield once (one-touch operation) | 100 |
| Winter driving | 291 |
| Winter tires | |
| Changing tires | 280 |
| General information | 271 |
| Storage..... | 270 |
| Wiper blades | |
| Care instructions | 258 |
| Wrench socket (security wheel bolt) | 275 |

X

| | |
|--|-----|
| Xenon headlights | |
| Changing bulb for auxiliary high-beam headlight .. | 298 |
| Installing headlights | 296 |